This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Plane & Solid GEOMETRY

Shutts

REVISED EDITION

Educ T 149.13.485

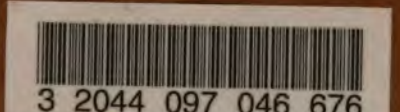
Harvard College Library

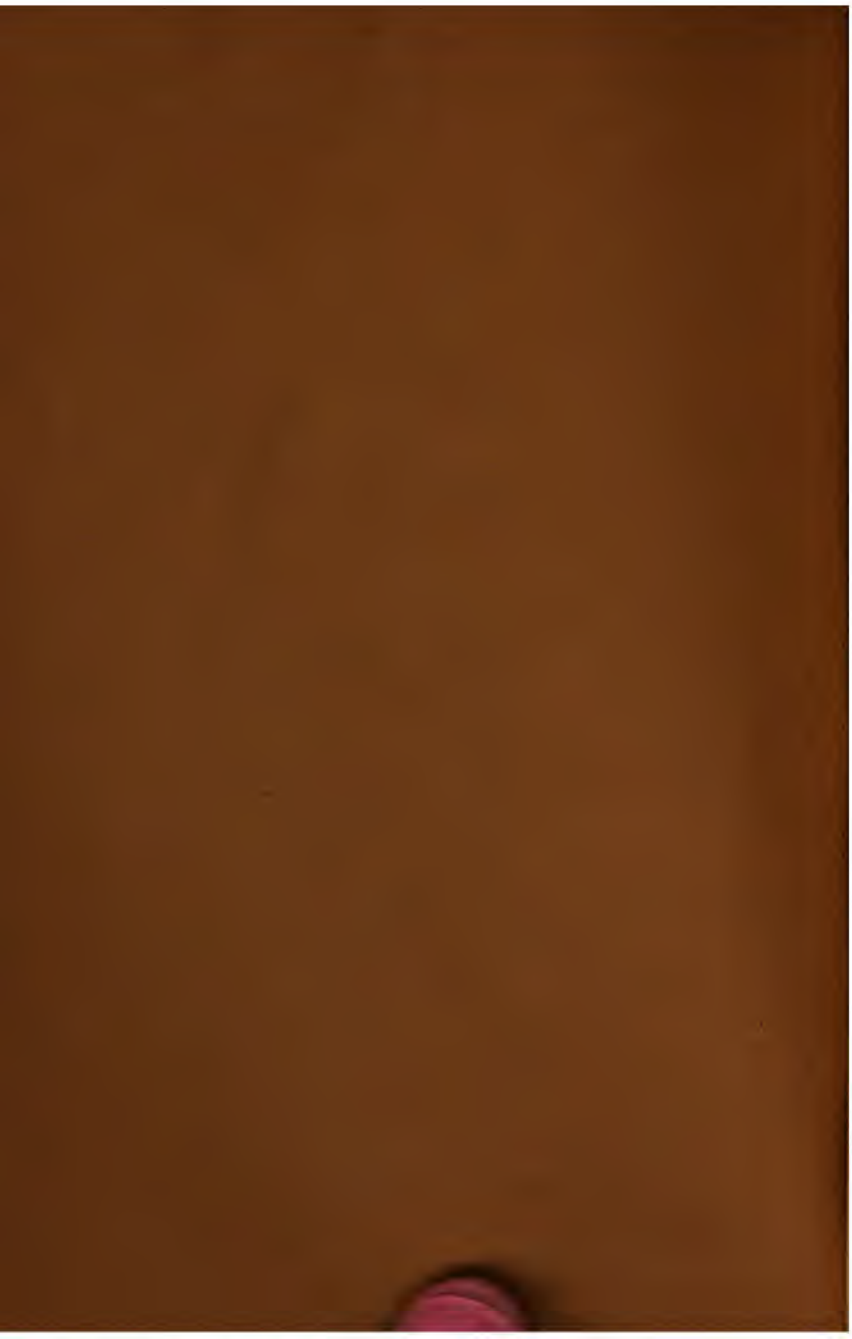
LIBRARY OF THE

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS
CONTRIBUTED BY THE PUBLISHERS

TRANSFERRED
TO
HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY


3 2044 097 046 676



Plane and Solid
Geometry

Revised Edition

Plane and Solid
Geometry

Suggestive Method

REVISED EDITION

By

George C. Shutts

Instructor in Mathematics, State Normal School
Whitewater, Wisconsin

Atkinson, Mentzer & Company

Boston New York Chicago Dallas

1913

I 10.8309
Educ T 149.13.785
J
30 Jy 1914
Harvard University
Dept. of Education Library
Gift of the Publishers
TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
APR 16 1921

Copyright, 1912 and 1913
BY GEORGE C. SHUTTS

PREFACE.

In this revision the suggestive features of former editions have been retained, and it is hoped improved. The principal value in the study of geometry lies in the power developed by the individual student in working out as much as possible his own demonstrations.

Pupils in their early study of the subject of geometry sometimes fail to see the need of some of the steps in a rigorous deductive demonstration and, to satisfy the demands of the class room, resort to formal memory of text as a substitute for logical thinking. This text has been prepared, not so much to illustrate a logical development of mathematical science as to arrange and adapt the mathematical data herein contained to the comprehension and growth of the pupil. In the introduction of various subjects theorems are stated as postulates or preliminary propositions which in a strictly logical development would require proof. Many of these statements are of so fundamental a nature, have so long been accepted as obvious facts by the pupil, and yet are so difficult of demonstration, that the chief value in the use of them lies not so much in their demonstration as in the comprehension and use of them in the demonstration of truths based upon them. Theorems have been chosen for the earlier demonstrations such that the course of reasoning will appeal to the logical ability of the pupils at that stage of their reasoning power.

The protractor, T square, parallel rulers, etc., have been brought into use before the principles upon which their construction is based have been developed, that through a mechanical construction of the various forms, the pupil may get a better understanding of their meaning than he usually gets from abstract definitions.

The rigor of the demonstrations has in no case been minimized and constructions, when the principles upon which they depend have been developed, as usual require the use of straight edge and dividers only.

The subject of measurement and proportion has been simplified, and the incommensurable cases placed in the latter part of the text in plane geometry, with the intent that in a short course in plane geometry this phase may be omitted if the teacher deems it wise to do so.

Many practical applications of the principles of geometry have been introduced in the exercises, but have been selected with reference to the interests of all the pupils, rather than the few who desire to enter technical occupations. Many of the old geometrical puzzles have been omitted and numerical problems of interest introduced. It is not expected that any given class or pupil will work all of the exercises, but the number is large enough and the variety sufficiently great to furnish interesting recreation and drill for the variety of tastes in any class of students. Many exercises follow the propositions to which they are related for application and drill, but many others are scattered throughout the text more or less unrelated to serve the purpose of review and test the pupil's power of independent thought.

The one suggestion the author would make to the teacher is that success depends upon letting the rate of

progress be determined by the thorough comprehension by the pupils of the subject matter. The amount of text covered is not so important as the real development of the pupils.

The author wishes to acknowledge for their scholarly assistance, his obligation to H. D. Merrill of the chair of mathematics of the Evanston High School, who has made valuable suggestions throughout; to A. W. Smith, Professor of Mathematics of Colgate University, Hamilton, N. Y., to T. H. McCormick head of the department of mathematics, of the Fort Wayne High and Manual-Training School, who assisted in the revision and read the proof, and to many students who through conscientious work in the class room have given valuable suggestions. To these old friends and to the prospective students, to whom it is hoped these pages will furnish inspiration, this work is dedicated.

GEORGE C. SHUTTS.

Whitewater, Wis., Aug. 1, 1913.

THE CONTENTS

PLANE GEOMETRY

Page

INTRODUCTION 9

CHAPTER I.

RECTILINEAR FIGURES 29

CHAPTER II.

CIRCLES 101

CHAPTER III.

MEASUREMENT AND PROPORTION 131

CHAPTER IV.

AREA OF POLYGONS 221

CHAPTER V.

REGULAR POLYGONS 249

CHAPTER VI.

INCOMMENSURABLE MAGNITUDES 275

SOLID GEOMETRY

CHAPTER VII.

LINES AND PLANES 289

CHAPTER VIII.

POLYHEDRONS 349

CHAPTER IX.

THE THREE ROUND BODIES 399

PLANE GEOMETRY

INTRODUCTION

1. PHYSICAL SOLID. Any material object is a *physical solid*, for example, a block of wood or a ball.

2. GEOMETRIC SOLID. A limited portion of space is a *geometric solid*. A block of wood is a physical solid but the portion of space occupied by it is a geometric solid. Two reasons are suggested for this definition of a geometric solid: first, geometry is not concerned with the material of which an object is made but with its size and its shape; second, such solids can be made to coincide in whole or in part.

3. SURFACE. That which has length and breadth without thickness is a *surface*.

The boundaries of a solid are surfaces but these surfaces are not a part of the solid which they bound any more than one's shadow on a wall is a part of the wall. A surface may pass through a solid or another surface and may be unlimited in extent.

4. LINE. That which has length without breadth or thickness is a *line*.

A line may pass through a solid, a surface, or another line and may be unlimited in extent.

5. POINT. That which has position without dimensions is a *point*.

6. MAGNITUDES. Lines, surfaces, and solids are *geometric magnitudes.*

7. MAGNITUDES GENERATED. The path of a moving point is a line, or a point in motion *generates* a line. A line in motion (except upon itself) generates a surface. A surface in motion (except upon itself) generates a solid.

8. MAGNITUDES, LIMITED OR BOUNDED. Solids are limited or bounded by surfaces, surfaces by lines, lines by points, unless in accordance with the definitions given above they are unlimited.

9. GEOMETRIC FIGURES. Any combination of points, lines, surfaces, and solids is a *geometric figure.* Geometric figures are mental images only. They cannot be constructed and the drawings used are but representations. For example, a point may be represented by a crayon or pencil dot, a line by a pencil mark or the edge of a ruler, a surface by a table top or the surface of a blackboard, etc.

10. STRAIGHT LINE. A line is *straight* if any part of it will lie wholly in any other part when its extremities lie in that part, or if, when revolved with two points kept stationary, it occupies the same position as before. A straight line may be thought of as extending indefinitely in both directions. The first test may be applied to a pencil mark representing a straight line by using tracing paper to apply "any part" to "any other part" of it or by putting together the edges of two rulers as representing two parts of a straight line. The second test may well be illustrated with a piece of *straight* wire.

11. LINE SEGMENT. A limited portion of a line is a *line segment.*

A line-segment is sometimes called a *sect.*

12. RAY. A portion of a line limited at one end only is a *ray.* The limiting point of a ray is its *origin.* A segment differs from a ray in that it has two limiting points instead of one.

13. NOTATION. A point is read by naming a capital letter placed near it. A line is read by naming the letters which mark any two of its points. Lines, rays, and line-segments are at times indicated by single small letters instead of two capitals indicating points. For example in the following figures one reads: point A, line BC or l, segment DE or s, ray FG or r.

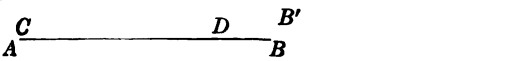
14. EQUAL SEGMENTS. If two line segments can be so placed that their extremities coincide, the segments are said to be *equal.*

15. ADDITION AND SUBTRACTION OF SEGMENTS.

(a) Two segments are added by placing them end to end. The resulting segment is called the sum.

(b) Two segments are subtracted by placing the shorter *upon* the longer so that one pair of end points coincide. That portion of the longer not covered by the shorter is called the *difference.*

For example, to find the sum of segment AB and segment CD, draw an indefinite line $A'X$ and



on it lay off $A'B'$ equal to AB and $B'D'$ equal to CD. Then $A'D'$ is the sum of AB and CD or as it may be written in symbols, $AB + CD = A'D'$. To find the difference between AB and CD lay CD upon AB with point C on A. The difference is the segment DB. The relation is here written as $AB - CD = DB$.

The measurements here necessary may be made with a ruler or scale or better yet with a pair of dividers.

16. BROKEN LINE. A line made up of successive segments not forming a straight line is a *broken line.*

17. CURVED LINE. A line no part of which is straight is a *curved line* or simply a *curve.*

18. PLANE. A surface such that a straight line through any two of its points lies wholly in the surface is a *plane.* A plane is sometimes spoken of as a flat surface and portions of a plane may be enclosed by broken lines or curves.

19. PLANE FIGURES. A figure all parts of which lie in the same plane is a *plane figure.*

(a) A figure all lines of which are straight is a *rectilinear figure.*

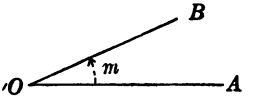
(b) A portion of a plane entirely enclosed by a broken line is a plane polygon or simply a *polygon.*

(c) A curve enclosing a portion of a plane in such a manner that every point of the curve is at the same distance from a point within is a *circle,* the point within is the *center,* the distance from the center to the *circle* is the *radius,* and any portion of the *circle* is an *arc.*

20. PLANE GEOMETRY. That part of geometry which treats of plane figures is called *plane geometry.*

21. ANGLE. Two rays proceeding from the same point contain or make an *angle.* The rays are the *sides* of the angle and the point of meeting is the *vertex* of the angle.

An angle may be read by naming the letters which designate its sides, the vertex letter being read between the others, as the angle *AOB.* If no confusion results, an angle may be read by naming its vertex letter alone, as the angle *O*, or by naming a single small letter, as angle *m.*



22. TURNING A LINE THROUGH AN ANGLE. If a line coincident with one side of an angle be revolved about the vertex as a pivot until it coincides with the other side of the angle, *the line turns through the angle.* This turning is usually conceived to be counter-clockwise.

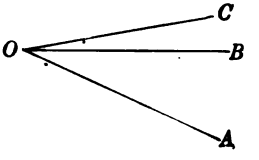
23. SIZE OF ANGLE. The size of an angle is the amount of revolution necessary to turn a line through it. It bears no relation to the length of the sides.

24. EQUAL ANGLES. If two angles can be placed so that their vertices coincide and the sides of the one lie upon the sides of the other the angles coincide and the turning through both angles is effected at the same time. Such angles are said to be equal.

A pair of dividers may be used to represent an angle, the size of the angle depending upon the extent to which the dividers are opened. They may be used to compare two angles by placing them upon one of the angles with the legs of the dividers lying along the sides of the angle and then placing them upon the other angle, noticing whether or not it is necessary to open or close them

in order that they fit the second angle. A similar comparison may be made by drawing one angle on a piece of tracing paper and placing it upon the other angle so that the vertex and one side of the trace lie upon the vertex and one side of the second angle. The relative position of the remaining sides of the two angles shows which is the larger.

25. ADJACENT ANGLES. Two angles that have the same vertex and one common side between them are *adjacent angles.*

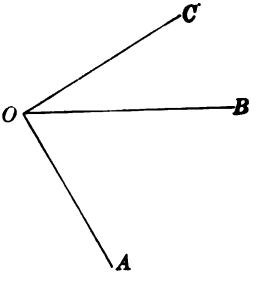


The angles AOB and BOC are adjacent.

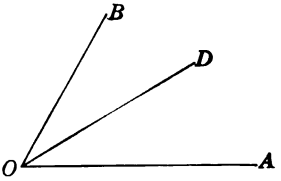
26. ADDITION AND SUBTRACTION OF ANGLES.

(a) Two angles are added by so placing them as to form adjacent angles. The sum is the large angle thus formed.

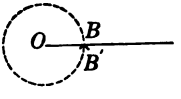
(b) Two angles are subtracted by placing the smaller within the larger so that they have one side and the vertex in common. The angle adjacent to the smaller is the difference. For example, the sum of angles AOB and BOC is $\angle AOC$ and the difference between $\angle AOB$ and $\angle DOB$ is $\angle AOD$.



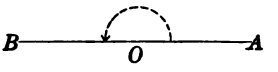
Are these results consistent with the statement in § 23? By means of tracing paper obtain the sum of the angles AOB of § 21 and BOC of § 25.



27. PERIGON. The total angular magnitude about a point in a plane is a *perigon.* A line has turned through a perigon when it has made a complete revolution about a point as BOB'.

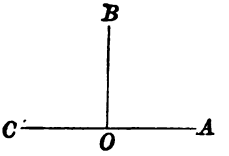


28. STRAIGHT ANGLE. An angle the sides of which lie in a straight line and on opposite sides of the vertex is a *straight angle*, as angle AOB. A straight angle is one half a perigon. The student must distinguish between the straight line AOB and the straight angle AOB.



Let the student turn a ray through the angle AOB.

29. RIGHT ANGLE. If a ray meets a line so that the two angles formed are equal, each angle is a *right angle*, as $\angle AOB$ and $\angle BOC$.



(a) A right angle is one half of a straight angle.

(b) A right angle is one fourth of a perigon.

30. DEGREE. One ninetieth part of a right angle is a *degree*.

(a) One sixtieth part of a degree is a *minute* and one sixtieth part of a minute is a *second*.

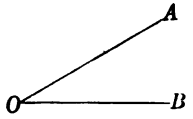
(b) Degrees, minutes, and seconds are denoted by the symbols °, ′, ″ respectively, as 14° 27′ 30″.

(c) The degree is a unit of measure for angles. A protractor is sometimes used in constructing and measuring angles. It consists of a semicircular scale with degrees from 0° to 180° marked on it. To use the protractor in measuring an angle place the center O at the vertex of the angle and the zero of the protractor upon one side of the angle. The number of degrees and minutes in the angle is the number indicated upon the

protractor at the point where the second side of the angle projects beyond the protractor. The protractor can also be used in constructing an angle of a given number of degrees or one that is equal to a given angle.

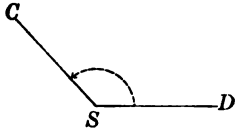
With the protractor construct a right angle, cut it out, and test the accuracy of the construction by superposing it upon a known right angle. See illustration page 477.

31. ACUTE ANGLE. An angle less than a right angle is an *acute angle.*



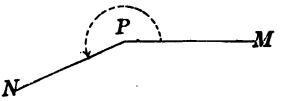
With a protractor construct acute angles of 20°, 70°, 65°, 40°, 28°, 53′, etc.

32. OBTUSE ANGLE. An angle greater than a right angle and less than a straight angle is an *obtuse angle.*



With a protractor construct obtuse angles of 95°, 115°, 170°. Add angles of 82° and 32°; of 47° and 53°.

33. REFLEX ANGLE. An angle greater than a straight angle andless than a perigon is a *reflex angle.*



Reflex angles are seldom considered in elementary geometry.

With a protractor or tracing paper add angles of 98° and 71°; of 120° and 92°; of 72° and 65°. What kind of angles are the sums?

34. OBLIQUE ANGLES. Acute and obtuse angles are *oblique angles.*

35. COMPLEMENTS. Two angles the sum of which is one right angle are *complements* of each other.

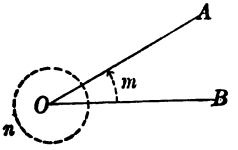
With a protractor construct the complements of 60°, 50°, 75°, 49°. Measure each and test the results.

36. SUPPLEMENTS. Two angles the sum of which is a straight angle are *supplements* of each other. The complement or supplement of a given angle need not be adjacent to it.

Construct the supplement of 18°, 24°, 96°, 125°. Which are acute and which obtuse? Test the accuracy of the results with the protractor.

37. CONJUGATES. Two angles the sum of which is a perigon are *conjugates*.

Two rays proceeding from a point really form two angles, as the angles m and n. These angles are conjugates.

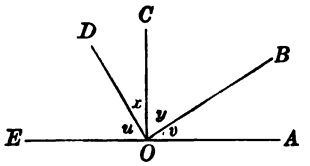


Measure the degrees in m and n and test the result by this definition.

In referring to an angle the smaller of the two conjugates is meant unless otherwise stated.

The student should provide himself with a ruler, a protractor, a pair of dividers, parallel rulers, and if convenient a T square and drawing board.

1. In the adjacent figure AE is a straight line and CO is perpendicular to AE. Read a straight angle, two right angles, four acute angles, two obtuse angles.



2. Read nine pairs of adjacent angles in the above figure.

3. What is the sum of angles x and u? Of angles y and v? Of angles u and x? Of angles y and x?

4. Read two pairs of complementary angles in the above figure.

5. Read three pairs of supplementary angles in the above figure.

6. A perigon is equal to how many straight angles? A straight angle is equal to how many right angles? A perigon is equal to how many right angles? Compare

a straight angle with a perigon; a right angle with a perigon; a right angle with a straight angle.

7. How many degrees are there in a straight angle? in a perigon?

8. How many degrees in the supplement of a right angle? In the supplement of two-thirds of a right angle? In the complement of three-fourths of a right angle?

9. Find the supplement and the complement of 54° 27′; of 57° 35′ 42″.

10. How many degrees in the smaller angle formed by the hands of a clock at 1 o'clock? At 5 o'clock? How many degrees are generated by the minute hand of a clock from two o'clock to twenty minutes past two?

11. A perigon is divided into six equal angles. How many degrees are there in each? Illustrate with a figure.

12. A perigon is divided into three angles, the second being twice the first and the third three times the first. Find the number of degrees in each angle. Illustrate with a figure.

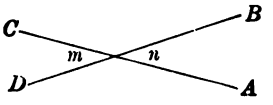
Suggestion: Let x equal the number of degrees in the first.

13. Write an equality that will say that angles x and y are complements; that they are supplements.

14. Angles x and y are supplements and their difference is 50°. Find angle x and angle y. With a protractor draw x and y and check the results.

15. How can the supplement of an angle be found? Draw an angle, as x, with the protractor and find its supplement.

38. Vertical Angles. When the sides of one angle are extensions of the sides of another angle, the two angles are *vertical angles.*



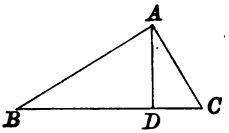
16. The supplement of an angle x is three times the complement of x. Find the angle x.

17. In the figure of example 1 measure with a protractor the angles x, y and v; add them and test the result by measuring angle AOD.

18. Draw a straight angle. Divide it by a ray into two oblique angles. Measure each angle and add them. How many degrees should their sum be?

19. Divide a perigon into five angles and measure each. Test the accuracy of the work by adding the results.

20. Measure angle BAC and angle CAD. Subtract $\angle$CAD from $\angle$ BAC and test the accuracy of the work by measuring angle DAB.



21. Draw a line-segment 1 inch long. Draw another one and one-half inches long so as to include between them an angle of 45°. Then measure the distance between the free ends of the segments. Make the construction a second time and with tracing paper test whether the two figures are congruent. § 64.

22. Draw an angle of 25°, 18°, 72°, 126°, 175°.

23. Draw a reflex angle of 197°, 240°, 315°, 345°.

39. PERPENDICULAR LINES. If two lines form a right angle, each line is *perpendicular* to the other. The word perpendicular is used also as a noun.

40. OBLIQUE LINES. If two lines form an oblique angle, each line is oblique to the other.

41. BISECTOR. If a figure is divided into two equal parts it is *bisected*.

In plane geometry the bisector of a segment may be a point, a segment, a ray, or a line. The bisector of an angle may be a segment, a ray, or a line.

42. PROOF. To prove a statement is to show by a logical course of reasoning that it must be true by means of other statements that have been accepted. In general the proof of a statement involves other statements which in turn require proof. Evidently as a foundation for reasonings some statements must be accepted without proof.

43. AXIOM. A statement admitted without proof to be true and not limited to geometric figures is an *axiom*.

44. POSTULATE. A statement admitted without proof and limited to geometric figures is a *postulate*.

45. THEOREM. A statement that is to be proved is a *theorem*.

46. PROBLEM. The statement of a geometric construction to be made is a *problem*.

47. PROPOSITION. Theorems and problems are *propositions*.

48. COROLLARY. A proposition easily deduced from another proposition is a *corollary*.

49. AXIOMS. In the following axioms the equalities and inequalities concerned are unconditional.

(1) Quantities that are equal to the same quantity, or to equal quantities, are equal to each other.

(2) If equals are added to or subtracted from equals the results are equal.

(3) If equals are multiplied or divided by equals (division by zero being excluded) the results are equal.

(4) If equals are added to or subtracted from unequals the results are unequal in the same order.

(5) If unequals are multiplied or divided by positive equals the results are unequal in the same order.

(6) If unequals are added to unequals in the same order the results are unequal in that order.

(7) If unequals are subtracted from equals the results are unequal in the reverse order.

(8) If the first of three quantities is greater than the second and the second is greater than the third, then the first is greater than the third.

(9) In considerations involving size only, the whole is greater than any of its parts and is always equal to the sum of its parts.

(10) Either of two equals may be substituted for the other in any process.

(11) Every magnitude, however small, can be divided into two or more parts.

50. POSTULATES.

(1) If two straight lines have two points in common they are one and the same straight line.

Between two points there is one and only one straight line.

(2) The shortest path between two points is the straight line segment joining them.

(3) A line-segment has one and but one mid-point. An angle has one and only one bisector.

(4) A figure can be moved without altering its size or its shape.

(5) Magnitudes which coincide are equal.

(6) All perigons are equal.

(7) A circle or an arc can be constructed with any radius and any given point as center.

(8) A straight line can be drawn between two points; a straight line can be terminated at any point; a sect can be extended any distance.

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

The symbols $+$, $-$, $\times$, $\div$ are used as in algebra.

$\angle$ angle.
$\doteq$ approaches as a limit
§ article.
$\odot$ circle.
$\because$ since.
$\cong$ is congruent to.
$=$ is equal to.
$>$ is greater than.
$<$ is less than.
$\asymp$ is measured by.
$\sim$ is similar to.
$\parallel$ parallel.
$\square$ parallelogram.
$\perp$ perpendicular.
$\square$ rectangle.
$\therefore$ therefore.
$\triangle$ triangle.

The symbols, $\angle$, $\triangle$, $\square$, $\square$, $\odot$ have the plural forms $\measuredangle$, $\blacktriangle$, $\boxed{S}$, $\boxed{S}$, $\circledcirc$.

Adj. adjacent.
Alt. alternate.
Auth. authority.
Ax. axiom.
Const. construction.
Cor. corollary.
Def. definition.
Ex. exercise.
Ext. exterior.
Fig. figure.
Hyp. hypothesis.
Iden. identity.
Int. interior.
Post. postulate.
Prop. proposition.
Sug. suggestion.
Sup. supplementary.
rt. right.
st. straight.

PRELIMINARY THEOREMS. The following are some important preliminary theorems:

51. THEOREM. 1. *Straight angles are equal.*

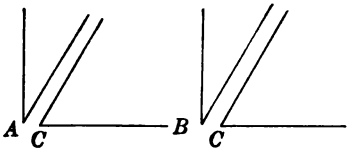
SUG. § 28, Post. 6, and Ax. 3.

52. THEOREM. 2. *Right angles are equal.*

SUG. § 29 and Ax. 3.

53. THEOREM. 3. (a) *Complements of equal angles are equal.* (b) *Supplements of equal angles are equal.*

(a). **Given** angles A and B, each being a complement of $\angle C$. To prove $\angle A$ and $\angle B$ equal.



SUG. 1. How does the sum of $\measuredangle A$ and C compare with the sum of $\measuredangle B$ and C? Th. 2 and Ax. 1.

2. Compare $\angle A$ and $\angle B$. Ax. 2.

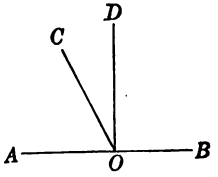
Therefore—

(b). Follow the method of demonstration used for theorem 3 (a).

Note.—Before looking up references in the suggestions the pupil should endeavor to determine the authorities for himself.

54. THEOREM 4. *Two right angles are supplements of each other.*

55. THEOREM 5. *Only one line can be drawn perpendicular to a line at a given point on the line.*



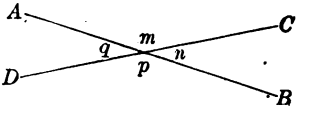
SUG. Can both OD and OC be $\perp$ to AB at point O? § 29, § 39 and § 50 (3).

56. THEOREM 6. *Two lines that intersect can have but one point in common.*

SUG. If they had two points in common, what would be true? Post. 1.

57. THEOREM 7. *If two straight lines intersect the vertical angles are equal.*

Given AB and CD intersecting with vertical angles m and p.



To prove $\angle m = \angle p$.

SUG 1. What relation does $\angle m$ bear to $\angle n$? § 36.

2. What relation does $\angle p$ bear to $\angle n$? § 36.

3. Compare $\angle m$ and $\angle p$. § 53 (b).

Therefore —

Compare angles q and n.

24. Draw two supplementary adjacent angles and bisect each. How many degrees in the angle of the bisectors? Use the protractor and straight edge.

25. How many degrees in the angle formed by the bisectors of two complementary adjacent angles? By the bisectors of two adjacent angles of 63° and 70° respectively? Of 26° and 84° respectively?

26. If two lines intersect and one of the angles is a right angle, prove the others are right angles.

27. If one angle formed by two intersecting lines is 70° how many degrees are there in each of the others? If one angle is 50° how many degrees in each of the others?

28. The difference between two complementary angles is 12°. What are the angles? If the angles are supplementary, what are they?

29. Solve problem 28 if the difference is 40°;75°;82° 16′.

30. The ratio of two complementary angles is 4:5. What are the angles? Solve if the ratio is 3:6, $3\frac{1}{2}:5\frac{1}{2}$, etc.

31. Solve problem 30 with the supposition that the angles are supplementary.

32. What is the complement of 100°? The supplement of 212°? Of 198° 27′? If the student by use of algebra derives these results from the definitions of complements and supplements, he will have angles with the negative sign. The interpretation is this: Angles which are generated by counter-clockwise rotation are called positive and those generated by a clockwise rotation are called negative. This plan is of great use whenever it is necessary to distinguish between these two ways of generating an angle.

58. SUMMARY.

1. Two angles are equal.

   (a) if they can be made to coincide;

   (b) if they are equal to the same angle or to equal angles;

   (c) if they can be obtained by adding equal angles to equal angles or by subtracting equal angles from equal angles;

   (d) if they are doubles or halves of the same angle or of equal angles;

   (e) if they are straight angles, right angles, or vertical angles;

   (f) if they are complements or supplements of the same angle or of equal angles.

2. Two angles are complements if their sum is a right angle or 90°.

3. Two angles are supplements if their sum is a straight angle, two right angles, or 180°.

4. An angle is a right angle.
   (a) if it is one of two equal adjacent angles formed by two straight lines;
   (b) if it is one half of a straight angle or contains 90°;
   (c) if its sides are perpendicular to each other;
   (d) if it is one of two equal supplementary angles.

5. An angle is a straight angle
   (a) if its sides form a straight line;
   (b) if it is the sum of two right angles or 180°;
   (c) if it is one half of a perigon.

6. Two lines are perpendicular to each other if they form a right angle.

7. Two lines form one straight line
   (a) if they have two points in common;
   (b) if they are the sides of a straight angle;
   (c) if they are perpendicular to the same line at the same point.

8. Line segments or sects can be proved equal by means of axioms 1, 2, 3 or by showing that they can be so placed that their end points coincide.

9. Angles or line segments can be proved unequal by means of axioms 4-9 inclusive.

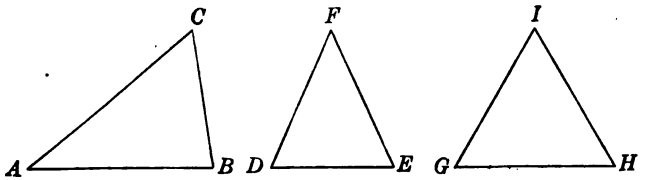
CHAPTER I.

RECTILINEAR FIGURES.

59. TRIANGLE. A portion of a plane bounded by three sects is a *triangle*. The line-segments are the *sides* of the triangle, their intersections are the vertices, their sum is the *perimeter*, the angles formed by the sides are the *angles* of the triangle, and the three sides and three angles are the parts of the triangle.

60. TRIANGLES CLASSIFIED AS TO SIDES. A triangle no two of the sides of which are equal is a *scalene triangle*. One with two equal sides is an *isosceles triangle*. One with three equal sides is an *equilateral triangle*. In the accompanying figures $\triangle ABC$ is scalene, $\triangle DEF$ is isosceles, and $\triangle GHI$ is equilateral.

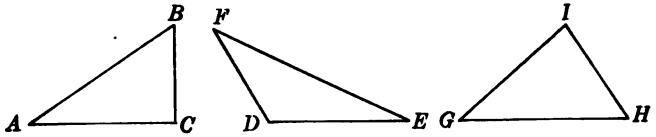
Measure to verify.



61. TRIANGLES CLASSIFIED AS TO ANGLES. A triangle one of the angles of which is a right angle is a *right triangle.* One with an obtuse angle is an *obtuse triangle.* If all the angles are acute the triangle is an *acute triangle.* If all the angles are equal the triangle is *equiangular.*

$\triangle ABC$ is right, $\triangle DEF$ is obtuse, $\triangle GHI$ is acute.

Verify with a protractor.



62. BASE OF A TRIANGLE. Unless otherwise stated, the *base* of an isosceles triangle is the side which is not one of the two equal sides. In other cases the base of a triangle is that side upon which it is conceived to stand.

63. VERTEX ANGLE OF A TRIANGLE. The angle opposite the base of a triangle is the *vertex angle* and the vertex of this angle is the *vertex of the triangle.*

64. CONGRUENT FIGURES. Two figures that can be made to coincide throughout are *congruent.* Congruent means of the same shape and size, while *equal* means of the same size only.

1. Draw a triangle with two sides 2 and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches respectively and included angle 75°. [30, (c)]. Draw another with the same conditions. Use tracing paper to compare them or cut one out and compare them by superposition. Are they congruent?

2. Draw a triangle at random. Measure two sides and the included angle. Construct another using the measurements obtained from the first and compare them by superposition.

3. Draw a triangle with two angles of 85° and 65° respectively with the included side 2 inches. Draw another with the same conditions. Compare them by superposition. What is the conclusion?

4. Draw a triangle at random. Measure two angles and the included side. Construct another triangle from these measurements and compare them by superposition.

5. Draw a straight line $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches long. With the dividers take lines respectively $\frac{3}{4}$ and $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches and from the ends of the first line describe arcs that intersect. Connect the point of intersection with the ends of the first line. Take the same three lines in any order and construct a triangle. Compare these triangles as regards congruence.

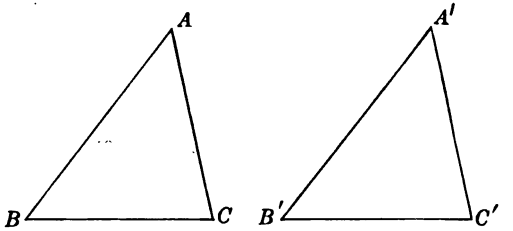
State conclusions of exercises 2-5 as to conditions of congruence of triangles.

6. Construct a triangle in which the sides are 2, 3, and 4 inches respectively. Try to construct a triangle with lines of $1\frac{1}{2}$, $1\frac{3}{4}$, and 4 inches respectively. Try again with lines of 2, 2, and 4 inches respectively; 2, 3, and 7; 4, 5, and 6.

7. State the conclusions of Ex. 6 as to the possibility of constructing a triangle of given sides.

PROPOSITION I.

65. THEOREM. *Two triangles are congruent if two sides and the included angle of the one are equal respectively to two sides and the included angle of the other.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$ with $BA = B'A'$, $BC = B'C'$, and $\angle B = \angle B'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. Place $\triangle ABC$ upon $\triangle A'B'C'$ so that point B will fall on B' and BC will lie along $B'C'$.

Then C will fall on C' for $BC = B'C'$.

BA will fall along $B'A'$ for $\angle B = \angle B'$.

A will fall on A' for $BA = B'A'$.

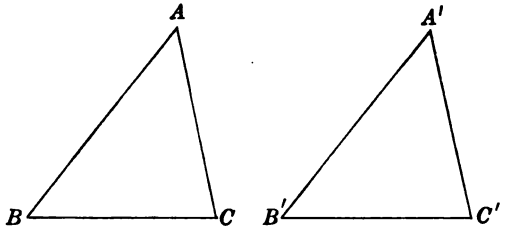
Since C falls on C' and A falls on A', line AC will coincide with $A'C'$ for only one straight line can be drawn through two given points.

$\therefore \triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$ for they can be made to coincide.

Therefore, Two triangles are congruent if two sides and the included angle of the one are equal respectively to two sides and the included angle of the other.

PROPOSITION II.

66. THEOREM. *Two triangles are congruent if two angles and the included side of the one are equal to two angles and the included side respectively of the other.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$ with $\angle B = \angle B'$, $BC = B'C'$, $\angle C = \angle C'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. Place $\triangle ABC$ upon $\triangle A'B'C'$ so that B shall fall on B' and BC shall fall along $B'C'$.

Then C will fall on C' for BC is given equal to $B'C'$.

BA will fall along $B'A'$ for $\angle B = \angle B'$.

$\therefore A$ will fall on $B'A'$ or $B'A'$ produced.

Also CA will fall along $C'A'$ for $\angle C = \angle C'$.

$\therefore A$ will fall on $C'A'$ or $C'A'$ produced.

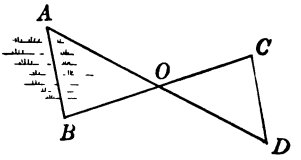
$\therefore A$ must fall on A', the intersection of $B'A'$ and $C'A'$. Why?

$\therefore \triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$ for they can be made to coincide.

Therefore, Two triangles are congruent if two angles and the included side of the one are equal to two angles and the included side respectively of the other.

67. APPLICATION OF PROPOSITIONS I AND II. If two triangles are congruent the angles are equal respectively and the sides are equal respectively. It is important to keep this in mind for usually the purpose in proving triangles congruent is to prove that a pair of angles or line-segments are equal. In congruent triangles pairs of equal sides lie opposite pairs of equal angles and pairs of equal angles lie opposite pairs of equal sides. The pairs of equal parts are called *corresponding* or *homologous parts.*

8. To find the distance across an impassable marsh: Stake off two lines AD and BC that cross at an accessible point O. Measure distances OD equal to OA and OC equal to OB. Then the required distance AB is equal to CD. Why?



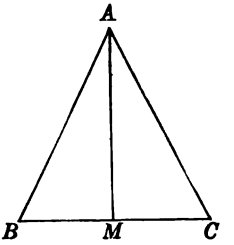
9. In the school grounds or elsewhere drive three stakes for $A, B,$ and O of example 8. Make the remaining measurements and test the accuracy of the work by comparing AB and CD.

10. Draw a triangle at random and with a straight edge and protractor construct a second triangle having two sides and their included angle of the same dimensions as the corresponding parts of the first. Why must the triangles be congruent? Compare the two, using tracing paper, as a test for accuracy of construction.

11. Two right triangles are congruent if the sides of the right angle of the one are equal respectively to the sides of the right angle of the other.

PROPOSITION III.

68. THEOREM. *If two sides of a triangle are equal, the angles opposite those sides are equal.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with $AB = AC$.

To Prove $\angle B = \angle C$.

Proof. Draw AM to represent the bisector of $\angle A$ and extend it to meet BC as at M. $\measuredangle B$ and C will be proved equal if it can be shown that $\triangle AMB$ and AMC are congruent. A comparison of the two triangles shows

$AB = AC$ by hyp.

$\angle MAB = \angle MAC$ since AM bisects $\angle A$.

AM is common to the two triangles.

$\therefore \triangle AMB \cong \triangle AMC$, two sides and the included angle of the one being equal to two sides and the included angle of the other.

$\angle B$ is in $\triangle AMB$ and is opposite to side AM.

$\angle C$ is in $\triangle AMC$ and is opposite side AM.

$\therefore \angle B = \angle$ C, being homologous angles in congruent triangles.

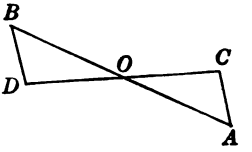
Therefore, If two sides of a triangle are equal, the angles opposite those sides are equal.

REMARK. Observe that $\angle B$ is an angle in each of two triangles. In $\triangle AMB$ it lies opposite the side AM, in $\triangle ABC$ it lies opposite side AC. Likewise $\angle C$ is an angle in each of two triangles.

69. COROLLARY. *An equilateral triangle is equiangular.*

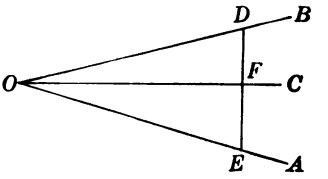
Proof. Use proposition III.

12. Lines AB and CD *bisect each other* at O.



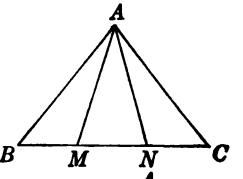
Prove $\triangle AOC \cong \triangle BOD$ and $AC = BD$.

13. OC bisects $\angle AOB$ and $DE \perp OC$ at F.

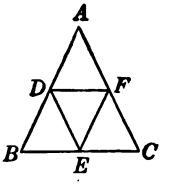


Prove $\triangle OFD \cong \triangle OFE$, $OD = OE$, and $\angle ODF = \angle OEF$.

14. In $\triangle ABC$, $AB = AC$ and $\angle BAM = \angle CAN$. Prove $\triangle BAM \cong \triangle CAN$ and $\triangle AMN$ is isosceles.

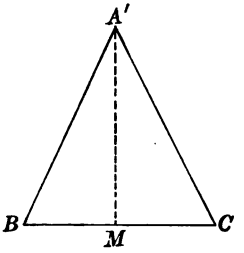


15. In $\triangle ABC$, $AB = AC$ and D, E, F are the mid-points of AB, BC, and CA respectively. Prove $\triangle DEF$ isosceles.



PROPOSITION IV.

70. THEOREM. *The bisector of the vertex angle of an isosceles triangle bisects the base and is perpendicular to the base.*



Given $\triangle ABC$, with $AB = AC$ and $\angle MAB = \angle MAC$.

To Prove $BM = MC$ and $AM \perp BC$.

1. **To Prove** $BM = CM$.

Left to student.

2. **To Prove** $AM \perp BC$.

$\angle AMB = \angle AMC$, being homologous angles in congruent triangles.

$\therefore$ $\measuredangle AMB$ and AMC are right angles. Why?

$\therefore$ $AM \perp BC$. Why?

Therefore, The bisector of the vertex angle of an isosceles triangle bisects the base and is perpendicular to the base.

COR. The bisector of the vertex angle of an isosceles triangle bisects the triangle.

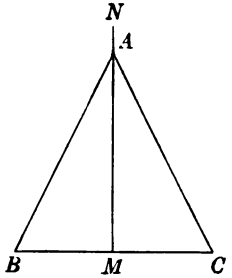
71. DISTANCE. The length of the sect joining two points is the *distance* between these points.

It is to be noted that *distance* is always measured on the shortest line.

72. PERPENDICULAR BISECTOR. A perpendicular erected at the mid-point of a line-segment is the *perpendicular bisector* of that segment.

PROPOSITION V.

73. THEOREM. *Any point in the perpendicular bisector of a line-segment is equidistant from the extremities of the segment.*



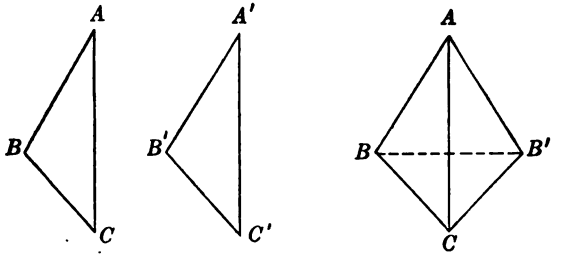
Given segment BC with $BM = MC$, $MN \perp BC$ and A any point in MN.

To Prove $AB = AC$.

Proof. SUG. If $\triangle BMA$ and $\triangle CMA$ can be proved congruent, segments AB and AC will be seen to be equal. Search the conditions given to see if there are enough elements equal to make the triangles congruent by Prop. I or II. See method of § 70. Compare AB and AC, giving authorities.

PROPOSITION VI.

74. THEOREM. *Two triangles are congruent if the sides of the one are equal respectively to the sides of the other.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$, $AB = A'B'$, $BC = B'C'$, and $CA = C'A'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$.

SUG. 1. The conclusion follows at once if it can be shown that $\angle A = \angle A'$, $\angle B = \angle B'$, or $\angle C = \angle C'$.

2. Place $\triangle A'B'C'$ so that a side, as $A'C'$ coincides with its equal AC, the two points B and B' being on opposite sides of AC.

3. Draw BB'.

4. $\angle ABB' = \angle AB'B$. Why?

5. $\angle CBB' = \angle CB'B$. Why?

6. $\therefore \angle ABC = \angle AB'C$. Why?

7. $\therefore \triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$. Why?

Demonstrate the theorem again, placing a second pair of equal sides in coincidence.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION VII.

75. THEOREM. *Any point which is equidistant from the extremities of a line-segment is in the perpendicular bisector of the segment.*

The figure is to be constructed by the pupil.

Given the segment AB with mid-point C, and D any point such that $DA = DB$ and ME the line through C and D.

To Prove $ME \perp AB$ at C.

SUG. Compare $\triangle ACD$ and BCD and also the two adjacent angles at C.

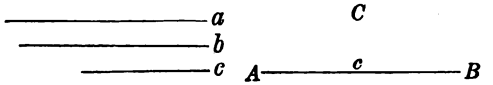
76. COROLLARY. *Any two points each equidistant from the extremities of a line-segment determine the perpendicular bisector of the segment.*

SUG. How many points determine a line? § 50 (1).

77. PARTS OF A THEOREM. From the propositions studied thus far it is seen that in a theorem certain conditions are given and a certain thing is to be proved. The conditions given constitute the *hypothesis* and the truth to be established is the *conclusion*. The course of reasoning by means of which the conclusion is established is the *proof* or *demonstration*. Each statement in a proof must be justified by reference to the hypothesis or to definition, axiom, postulate, or former proposition.

PROPOSITION VIII.

78. PROBLEM. *Construct a triangle when the three sides are given.*



Given sides of a triangle as a, b, c.

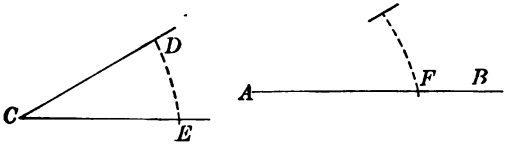
To Construct the triangle.

SUG. 1. Draw a line with dividers lay off upon it one of the sides as $AB = c$.

2. With the dividers find a point C that is the distance a from B and the distance b from A. § 50 (7). $\triangle ABC$ is the required triangle.

PROPOSITION IX.

79. PROBLEM. *Construct upon a given ray an angle equal to a given angle.*



Given ray AB and $\angle C$.

To Construct and $\angle$ upon AB equal to $\angle C$ with its vertex at A.

SUG. 1. With dividers measure equal distances as CD and CE on the sides of $\angle C$.

2. Find F on AB so that $AF = CE$.

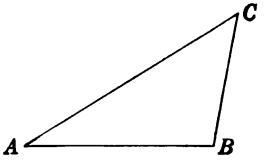
3. With the dividers find point X so that $AX = CD$ and $FX = ED$.

4. Then $\angle XAF = \angle DCE$ or $\angle C$.

For the $\triangle AXF$ and CDE have the three sides respectively equal.

PROPOSITION X.

80. PROBLEM. *Construct a triangle congruent to a given triangle.*



Given $\triangle ABC$.

To Construct a $\triangle$ congruent to $\triangle ABC$. **Make three constructions.**

SUG. 1. Use the problem § 78.

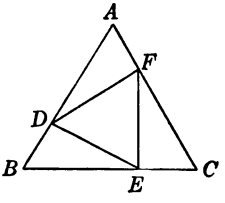
2. Use § 65.

3. Use § 66.

In these problems use a straight edge and dividers only.

16. The straight lines which bisect the equal angles of an isosceles triangle and terminate in the opposite sides are equal.

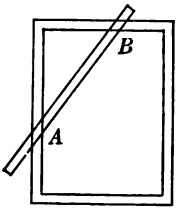
17. $\triangle ABC$ is equilateral and $AD = BE = CF$. Prove $\triangle DEF$ equilateral.



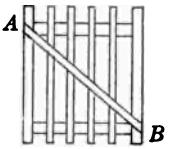
18. Nail together with one nail at each vertex three narrow strips of wood so as to form a triangle. Can it be racked out of shape without loosening the joints? Why?

19. Remove the bottom from a chalk box. Can the box now be racked out of shape? Nail a strip across two adjacent sides. Can it still be racked out of shape? Give authorities for your answers.

20. Why does the stay-lath AB which the carpenter nails across a window or door frame hold it in a fixed shape?



21. Observe at the next opportunity the board nailed obliquely across the studding as they are erected in putting up the frame of a building or the diagonal strip on a gate, as AB in the figure.



22. Name at least five other applications of Prop. VI for insuring stability in mechanical constructions.

23. If the perpendicular bisector of the base of a triangle passes through the vertex, the triangle is isosceles. Use fig. of § 70.

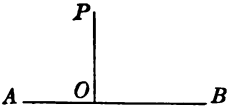
In ex. 23 $\triangle ABC$ is isoceles if $AB=AC$. $AB=AC$ if $\triangle ABM \cong \triangle A \triangle ACM$ ▲ have been proven congruent Theorems I, II, VI, and Ex. 11. Which of these can be used to prove $\triangle ABM \cong \triangle ACM$? Which cannot? Why? Compare the hypotheses of Theorem V with the hypotheses in Ex. 23. Can proposition V be used to prove Ex. 23? Which is the best method of proving Ex. 23?

24. Prove the theorem of § 74, using two scalene triangles with a pair of the shorter sides coincident.

25. Upon a given segment as a base construct an equilateral triangle.

26. Construct the perpendicular bisector of a given line-segment. Sug. § 76.

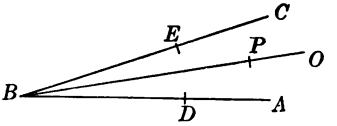
27. Let O be a given point in AB. Construct the perpendicular to AB through O.



Sug. If P be a point in this perpendicular, how may P be obtained? Why must line OP when thus determined be the required perpendicular?

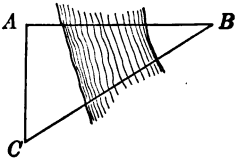
28. Solve example 27 assuming that O is outside AB.

29. Required to bisect a given angle, $\angle ABC$.



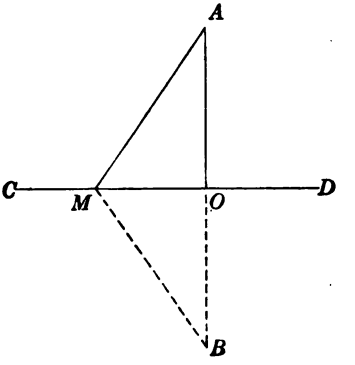
Sug. Obtain a point P such that when BP is drawn, $\angle DBP = \angle EBP$. § 74.

30. To measure a distance AB across a river. From A take any convenient line, AC, of known length, measure angles A and C. In some convenient place construct a $\triangle$ congruent to $\triangle ABC$ and measure the side corresponding to AB. State the authority for the conclusion. Sug. § 66.



PROPOSITION XI.

81. THEOREM. *Only one perpendicular can be drawn from a given point to a given line.*



Given line CD with A a point not in CD, $AO \perp CD$, and AM any other line from A to CD.

To Prove AM not perpendicular to CD.

SUG. 1. Produce AO to B, making $OB = OA$. Connect M and B.

2. Since AOB is a straight line by construction, AMB is not a straight line. Why?

3. $\therefore \angle AMB$ is not a straight angle.

4. Compare $\triangle AOM$ and $\triangle BOM$. Auth.

5. Compare $\angle AMO$ with $\angle BMO$.

6. $\therefore \angle AMO$ is one half of $\angle AMB$.

7. $\therefore \angle AMO$ cannot be a right angle.

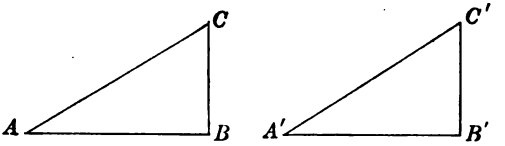
8. $\therefore AM$ is not perpendicular to CD.

9. $\therefore AO$ is the only perpendicular from A to CD, since AM represented all other lines from A to CD.

82. HYPOTENUSE. The side of a right triangle opposite the right angle is the *hypotenuse*. The other sides are usually called the *sides* or *legs*.

PROPOSITION XII.

83. THEOREM. *Two right triangles are congruent if the hypotenuse and an adjacent angle of the one are equal respectively to the hypotenuse and an adjacent angle of the other.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$ with $\angle B$ and $\angle B'$ right angles, $AC = A'C'$, and $\angle C = \angle C'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. Place $\triangle ABC$ upon $\triangle A'B'C'$ so that A falls on A' and AC falls along $A'C'$. Where will C fall and why?

Also CB will fall along $C'B'$ for $\angle C = \angle C'$.

B will fall on $C'B'$ or $C'B'$ produced. Why?

Since A falls on A' and BC falls along $B'C'$, AB is the perpendicular from A' to $B'C'$.

But $A'B'$ is by hyp. perpendicular to $B'C'$. Why?

$\therefore AB$ must fall along $A'B'$. Why?

$\therefore B$ falls on B'. Why?

$\therefore \triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$. Why?

Therefore—

31. The perpendiculars from the extremities of the base of an isosceles triangle to the opposite sides are equal.

32. Discuss exercise 31, when the vertex angle is obtuse; when it is right.

33. The perpendiculars drawn from the mid-point of the base of an isosceles triangle to the other sides are equal.

34. In $\triangle ABC$, D is the mid-point of BC. BE and CF are perpendiculars drawn from B and C respectively to AD (AD being produced through D). Prove $BE = CF$.

35. Discuss exercise 34, if $\triangle ABC$ is isosceles with $AB = AC$.

36. Upon a given segment as a base construct an isosceles triangle.

37. If two isosceles triangles have their bases coincident and their vertices on opposite sides of the common base, prove:

a. The entire figure is divided into two congruent triangles by a line connecting the opposite vertices.

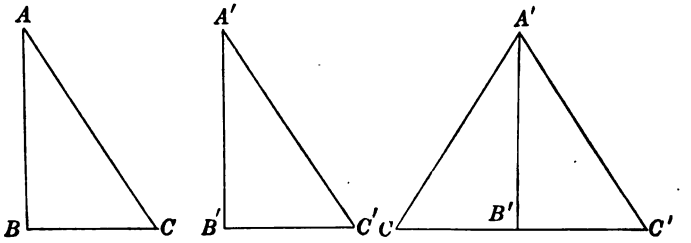
b. This line is the perpendicular bisector of the common base.

c. How can example 37 be used to construct a perpendicular bisector of a line segment?

38. If in example 37 the vertices are assumed to be on the same side of the common base, are the above conclusions true?

PROPOSITION XIII.

84. THEOREM. *Two right triangles are congruent if the hypotenuse and a side of the one are equal respectively to the hypotenuse and a side of the other.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$, with $\angle B$ and $\angle B'$ right angles, $AC = A'C'$, and $AB = A'B'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. The triangles are congruent provided $\angle C = \angle C'$ or $\angle A = \angle A'$. § 83.

2. Place the triangles so that A' falls on A, $A'B'$ along AB, and C and C' on opposite sides of AB.

3. Where will B' fall and why?

4. $CB'C'$ is a straight line. Why?

5. Figure $A'CC'$ is a triangle. Why?

6. What kind of a triangle is $A'CC'$? Why?

7. Compare $\angle C$ and $\angle C'$. Auth.

8. Compare $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$. Auth.

Therefore—

Why is it necessary to prove $CB'C'$ a straight line?

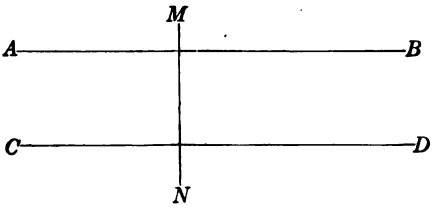
85. Cor. *The perpendicular from the vertex to the base of an isosceles triangle bisects the base and the vertex angle.*

86. Parallel Lines. Straight lines that lie in the same plane and cannot meet however far produced are *parallel lines.*

87. Postulate. Through a given point only one line can be drawn parallel to a given straight line.

PROPOSITION XIV.

88. Theorem. *Two lines in the same plane and perpendicular to the same line are parallel.*



Given AB and CD in the same plane and each perpendicular to MN.

To Prove $AB \parallel CD$.

Proof. Suppose AB and CD not parallel, i.e. suppose they meet if sufficiently produced. Then from this point of meeting there will be two perpendiculars to the line MN, viz. AB and CD. But this is impossible for only one perpendicular can be drawn from a given point to a given line. § 82.

Hence the supposition that AB and CD meet is false.

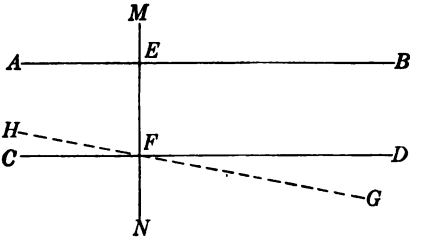
$\therefore AB \parallel CD$, for they are in the same plane and do not meet.

Therefore—

89. INDIRECT PROOF. The proof in § 88 is an example of *indirect proof*. In this method the theorem is assumed to be *not true* and the assumption is then shown to be false in that it leads to the contradiction of known facts. § 90 is another example of indirect proof.

PROPOSITION XV.

90. THEOREM. *If one of two parallel lines is perpendicular to a given line, the other is perpendicular to the same line.*



Given $AB \parallel CD$, $AB \perp MN$ at E and CD intersecting MN at F.

To Prove $CD \perp MN$.

Proof. Suppose that CD is *not* perpendicular to MN. Let HG represent the line which is perpendicular to MN at F.

Then $HG \parallel AB$. Why?

But $CD \parallel AB$. Hyp.

Then through F there are two lines parallel to AB.

This contradicts the postulate, § 87.

$\therefore$ the supposition that CD is not perpendicular to MN is false.

$\therefore CD \perp MN$.

Therefore—

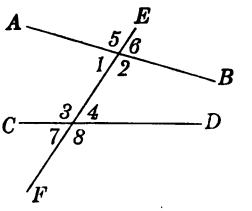
91. DISCUSSION. Observe that *HG* is given the property which *CD* is *assumed* not to possess. This is legitimate since it is known that through point *F* there is a line perpendicular to *MN* and if *CD* is not this perpendicular we may represent it by *HG*.

DIRECT PROOF. Without making any supposition as to *CD*, draw a perpendicular to *MN* through *F*. Then as before both *HG* and *CD* are parallel to *AB*. Whence *HG*, if correctly drawn, *must coincide with CD* for otherwise there would be two lines through a given point parallel to the same line.

Since $HG \perp MN$ by construction and *CD* coincides with *HG*, then $CD \perp MN$.

92. TRANSVERSAL. A line that cuts two or more lines is a *transversal* or *secant* line.

93. CLASSIFICATION OF ANGLES MADE BY A TRANSVERSAL. The angles made by two lines and a transversal are classified as follows:



1. The angles 1, 2, 3, and 4 are *interior* angles.

2. The angles 5, 6, 7, and 8 are *exterior* angles.

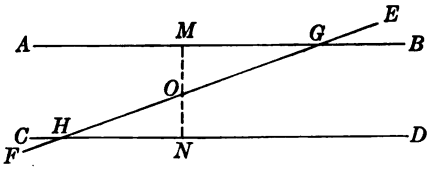
3. The pairs 1, 4 and 2, 3 are *alternate-interior* angles.

4. The pairs (5,8) and (6,7) are *alternate-exterior* angles.

5. The pairs (1, 7), (2, 8), (6, 4), and (5, 3) are corresponding angles.

PROPOSITION XVI.

94. THEOREM. *If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal the alternate-interior angles are equal.*



Given $AB \parallel CD$ and cut by the transversal EF at points G and H respectively.

To Prove $\angle AGF = \angle DHE$ and $\angle BGF = \angle CHE$.

SUG. 1. Through O, the mid-point of GH, draw $ON \perp CD$ and extend it to AB at M.

2. What relation does MN sustain to AB and why?

3. Compare $\triangle OMG$ and $\triangle ONH$. Auth.

4. Compare $\angle AGF$ and $\angle DHE$.

5. Compare $\angle BGF$ and $\angle CHE$.

Therefore—

REMARK. In answering Sug. 4 observe that it is not known that OM and ON are equal. How then can it be shown that $\angle AGF$ and $\angle DHE$ are homologous angles in congruent triangles?

39. By how much does the supplement of an acute angle exceed the complement of the same angle?

The pupil is expected to make detailed proofs of the following three corollaries.

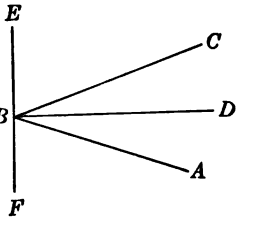
95. COR. I. *If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, the corresponding angles are equal.*

96. COR. II. *If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, the alternate-exterior angles are equal.*

97. COR. III. *If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, the interior angles on the same side of the transversal are supplementary.*

40. If one of two supplementary adjacent angles is bisected, the perpendicular to this bisector at the vertex bisects the other angle.

41. BD bisects $\angle ABC$ and $EF \perp BD$ at B. Prove FE makes equal angles with BA and BC.

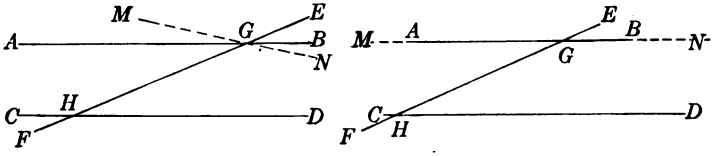


42. If two straight line segments bisect each other at right angles any point in either is equidistant from the extremities of the other.

43. If the bisectors of two adjacent angles are perpendicular to each other the angles are supplementary. Compare with exercise 40.

PROPOSITION XVII.

98. THEOREM. *If two lines in the same plane are cut by a transversal and the alternate-interior angles are equal, the lines are parallel.*



Given AB and CD cut by the transversal EF at G and H respectively with $\angle AGF = \angle DHE$.

To Prove $AB \parallel CD$.

SUG. 1. Suppose AB not parallel to CD and let MN represent that line through G which is parallel to CD.

2. Compare $\angle MGF$ with $\angle DHE$. Auth.

3. Compare $\angle AGF$ with $\angle DHE$. Auth.

4. Compare $\angle MGF$ with $\angle AGF$. Auth.

5. Compare this conclusion with the facts.

6. What of the supposition that AB is not parallel to CD?

7. What is the true relation between AB and CD?

Therefore—

Prove this proposition by the direct method. See § 91.

REMARK. The second of the above figures will be useful if chalks of different colors are used to represent the lines AB and MN.

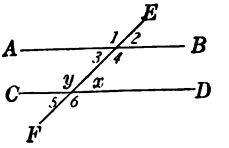
99. Cor. I. *If two lines in the same plane are cut by a transversal and the corresponding angles are equal, the lines are parallel.*

100. Cor. II. *If two lines in the same plane are cut by a transversal and the interior angles on the same side of the transversal are supplementary, the lines are parallel.*

101. Converse. If two propositions are so related that a condition of the first is the conclusion of the second and the conclusion of the first is a condition of the second, each proposition is called the *converse* of the other. For example, Prop. XVII is the converse of Prop. XVI for in the first of these the hypothesis is $AB \parallel CD$ and the conclusion is $\angle AGF = \angle DHE$, in the second the hypothesis is $\angle AGF = \angle DHE$ and the conclusion is $AB \parallel CD$. It is to be noted that there is one condition common to the two propositions, viz: two lines and a transversal are given.

The converse of a true statement is not always true. For example, all right angles are equal but not all equal angles are right angles.

44. If $AB \parallel CD$ and $x = 70°$, how many degrees in each one of the various angles in the figure?

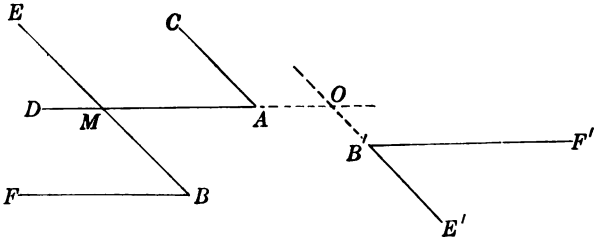


45. If $AB \parallel CD$ and $y - x = 80°$, how many degrees in each of the various angles. How many if $x = \frac{2y}{7}$? $\frac{y}{8}$? $\frac{2y}{3}$? $\frac{2y}{5}$?

46. Two angles are complementary and their difference is 38°. How many degrees in each?

PROPOSITION XVIII.

102. THEOREM. *Two angles the sides of which are respectively parallel and extend in the same or in opposite directions from the vertices are equal.*



Given $\measuredangle A$, B, B' with $AC \parallel BE$, $AD \parallel BF$ and extending in the same directions from the vertices A and B and with $AC \parallel B'E'$, $AD \parallel B'F'$ and extending in opposite directions from the vertices A and B'.

To Prove $\angle A = \angle B = \angle B'$.

SUG. 1. Extend AD and $B'E'$ until they meet at O. (Why must they meet?)

2. Compare $\measuredangle A$ and B'.

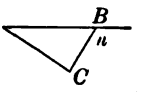
3. Extend AD and BE until they meet at M.

4. Compare $\measuredangle A$ and B.

Therefore—

In what kind of triangles does the bisector of the vertex angle coincide with the perpendicular from the vertex to the base and with the median to the base? The line from the vertex to the mid-point of the base is called the *median to the base.*

103. EXTERIOR ANGLE. An angle formed by one side of a rectilinear figure and an adjacent side extended is an *exterior angle*. In the figure n is an exterior angle of the triangle ABC.



104. OPPOSITE INTERIOR ANGLE. In the above figure with respect to the exterior angle n, A and C are the *opposite interior angles*.

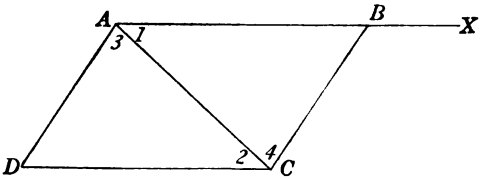
47. Given a line AB and a point C not on AB. Construct a line through C and parallel to AB. Sug. Try to reproduce the conditions of Prop. XVII or of one of its corollaries.

48. Two lines in the same plane, each parallel to a third line in that plane, are parallel. Sug. Draw a transversal, a line perpendicular to the third line, or use the indirect method.

49. Two lines perpendicular to two intersecting lines respectively cannot be parallel. Sug. Use indirect proof.

50. Two angles are supplementary and their difference is 65°. Find the angles.

51. State all methods thus far given for proving two lines parallel.

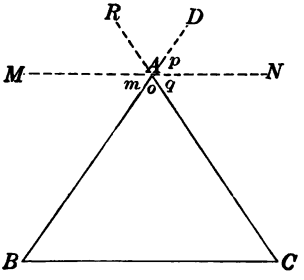


51a. In figure $ABCD$, $AB=DC$, $AD=BC$.

Prove:—(1.) $AB \parallel CD$. (2.) $AD \parallel BC$.
(3.) $\angle B = \angle D$. (4.) $\angle DAB = \angle BCD$.

PROPOSITION XIX.

105. THEOREM. *An exterior angle of a triangle is equal to the sum of the opposite interior angles.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with exterior angle DAC.
To Prove $\angle DAC = \angle B + \angle C$.

SUG. 1. Through the vertex A draw line $MN \parallel BC$.

2. Compare $\angle p$ with $\angle B$. Auth.

3. Compare $\angle q$ with $\angle C$. Auth.

4. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

52. Draw through B of the figure of § 105 a line parallel to AC and prove Prop. XIX.

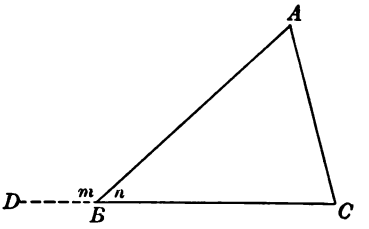
53. Extend side CA through A to a point R and prove Prop. XIX, using the angles p, RAD, RAM.

54. Make the constructions of exercises 52 and 53 for exterior angles at B and C and prove Prop. XIX.

55. The bisector of one of two vertical angles is the bisector of the other.

PROPOSITION XX.

106. THEOREM. *The sum of the interior angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles.*



Given $\triangle ABC$.

To Prove $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = 2$ rt. $\measuredangle$.

SUG. 1. Extend one side as CB.

2. Compare $\angle m + \angle n$ with $\angle n + \angle A + \angle C$.

Therefore—

107. COR. I. *A triangle can have at most one obtuse or one right angle, and the remaining angles are acute.*

108. COR. II. *The acute angles of a right triangle are complementary.*

56. The bisectors of two vertical angles are in the same straight line. Sug. Prove that the bisectors form a straight angle. Try indirect method.

57. The bisectors of two supplementary adjacent angles are perpendicular to each other.

58. How many degrees in each angle of an equilateral triangle?

59. Construct an angle of 60°; an angle of 30°; an angle of 45°. Use dividers and straight edge.

PROPOSITION XXI.

109. THEOREM. *If two triangles have two angles of the one equal respectively to two angles of the other, the third angles are equal.*

Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$ with $\angle A = \angle A'$ and $\angle B = \angle B'$.

To Prove $\angle C = \angle C'$.

SUG. Use § 106.

110. COR. *If two right triangles have an acute angle of the one equal to an acute angle of the other, the remaining angles are equal.*

60. Construct a right triangle with acute angles of 60° and 30°.

61. Trisect a right angle.

As a *general* problem the trisection of an angle is impossible by the use of dividers and straight edge only. The pupil should note that this example is a *particular* case of the unsolved general problem.

62. How many degrees in each angle at the base of an isosceles right triangle?

63. The vertex angle of an isosceles triangle is 34° 40′. How many degrees in each angle at the base of the triangle?

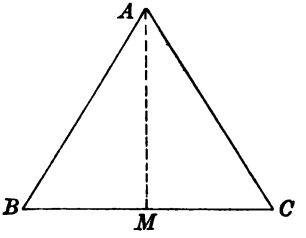
64. An exterior angle at the base of an isosceles triangle is 100°. Find each angle of the triangle.

65. The angles of a triangle are $5x°$, $25x°$, and 30°. Find the unknown angles.

66. The acute angles of a right triangle are $x°$ and $8x°$. Find them.

PROPOSITION XXII.

111. THEOREM. *If two angles of a triangle are equal, the sides opposite are equal and the triangle is isosceles.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with $\angle B = \angle C$.
To Prove $AB = AC$.

SUG. 1. Drop a perpendicular from A to BC, as AM.

2. Compare $\angle BAM$ and $\angle CAM$. Auth.

3. Compare $\triangle BAM$ and $\triangle CAM$. Auth.

4. Compare AB and AC.

Therefore—

67. The difference between the acute angles of a right triangle is 26°. Find them.

68. An exterior angle to one of the acute angles of a right triangle is 140°. Find the angles of the triangle.

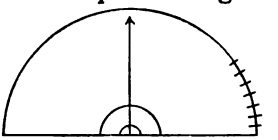
69. The vertex angle of an isosceles triangle is $\frac{1}{4}$ of an angle at the base. Find the angles of the triangle.

70. The angles of a triangle are denoted by $3x$, $7x$, and $5x$. Find each angle.

71. Two right triangles are congruent if a side and the opposite angle of the one are equal respectively to a side and the opposite angle of the other.

72. Perpendiculars to the sides drawn from any point in the base of an isosceles triangle make equal angles with the base.

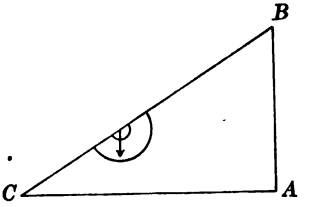
73. Construct a protractor of wood or thick cardboard having a six to nine inch radius. To do this, place the small protractor upon the material to be used and extend the radii to the required length. Fasten a pendulum or marker at the center. This can be used to take vertical angles. (See Ex. 76).



74. The acute angles of a right triangle have the ratio 2 : 5. Find them.

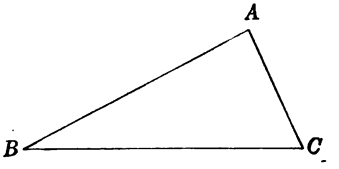
75. The angles of a triangle are x, y, z, with $x + y = 80°$ and $z - y = 50°$. Find x, y, z.

76. To find the height of a flag staff, measure back from the base of the staff on level ground a convenient distance as AC. From C sight along the straight edge of the protractor to B. The marker swinging freely will indicate upon the protractor the angle at B. (Why?) Then find $\angle C$ (How?) and on some convenient place construct a rt. triangle having the parts B, C, AC, and measure the side homologous to AB.



PROPOSITION XXIII.

112. THEOREM. *Any side of a triangle is less than the sum of the two other sides and greater than their difference.*



Given $\triangle ABC$.

To Prove $AB < BC + CA$ and $AB > BC - CA$.

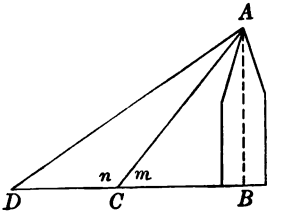
SUG. 1. $AB < BC + CA$. Why?

2. $AB + CA > BC$. Why?

3. $\therefore AB > BC - CA$. § 49 (4).

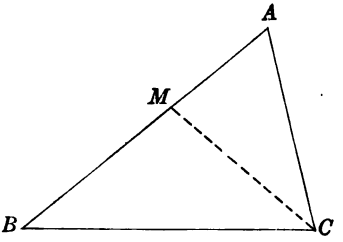
Therefore—

77. To find the height of a tower when the point directly under the top of the tower cannot be obtained. Measure $\angle m$ at some convenient point on level ground and then find $\angle n$. Measure a distance CD, the line BCD being straight, and at D determine the angle. On convenient ground construct a triangle with the given parts $\angle n$, $\angle D$, and side CD. Extend the side DC until it meets the perpendicular dropped to it from the point corresponding to A. The length of this perpendicular is the height of the tower.



PROPOSITION XXIV.

113. THEOREM. *If two angles of a triangle are unequal, the sides opposite these angles are unequal and the side opposite the greater angle is the greater.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with $\angle C > \angle B$.

To Prove $AB > AC$.

SUG. 1. Draw CM from C to AB so that $\angle BCM = \angle B$. Show that this is possible.

2. M must fall between A and B. Why?

3. Compare $CM + MA$ with AC. Auth.

4. Compare CM and BM. Auth.

5. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

78. Two sides of a triangle are 6 ft. and 8 ft. respectively. What are the limits to the length of the third side?

114. COR. I. *The hypotenuse is the longest side of a right triangle.*

115. COR. II. *The perpendicular from a point to a line is shorter than any other line-segment drawn from that point to the same line.*

116. DISTANCE. The length of the perpendicular from a point to a line is the *distance from the point to the line.*

117. ALTITUDE OF A TRIANGLE. The distance from the vertex of a triangle to the base (produced if necessary) is the *altitude of the triangle.* The word "altitude" is often used to indicate the line itself as well as its length. Since any one of the sides of a triangle may be considered as the base, every triangle has any one of three possible altitudes.

118. MEDIAN OF A TRIANGLE. The sect connecting the vertex of a triangle with the mid-point of the opposite side is a *median of the triangle.* There are in every triangle three medians.

79. Any point in the bisector of an angle is equidistant from the sides of the angle. (See § 116.)

80. If a line is drawn from any point in the bisector of an angle parallel to one side of the angle and is extended to meet the other side, an isosceles triangle is formed.

81. $\triangle ABC$ is a right triangle with the vertex of the right angle at C. Draw CD to AB so that $\angle ACD = \angle A$. Prove that D is the mid-point of AB.

SUG. Prove $AD = CD = BD$.

82. Prop. XXII is the converse of what proposition?

83. What relation does the mid-point of the hypotenuse of a right triangle sustain to the three vertices of the triangle? See example 81.

84. Any point equidistant from the sides of an angle is in the bisector of the angle.

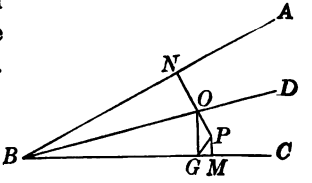
85. Any point not in the bisector of an angle is not equidistant from the sides.

SUG. Draw $PM \perp BC$ and $PN \perp BA$. Let PN meet the bisector in O. Draw $OG \perp BC$. Then $OG = ON$. Why?

$PG < PO + OG$.

$\therefore PG < PN$. $PM < PG$.

$\therefore PM < PN$.



Give the reason for each of these steps.

86. Demonstrate example 85 by the indirect method.

87. Prove that $AC > BC - AB$ in figure § 112. Why was the proof as given sufficient to cover this problem?

88. Using the dividers only show that $BC < AB + AC$.

89. Can a triangle be constructed with sides of 7 ft., 5 ft., and 13 ft.? Of 7 ft., 5 ft., and 12 ft.? Of 3 ft., 8 ft., and 10 ft.? Use the dividers in the construction.

PROPOSITION XXV.

119. THEOREM. *If two sides of a triangle are unequal, the angles opposite these sides are unequal and the angle opposite the greater side is the greater.*

Given $\triangle ABC$ with $AB > AC$.

To Prove $\angle C > \angle B$.

Proof. If $\angle C$ is not greater than $\angle B$ then $\angle C = \angle B$ or $\angle C < \angle B$.

Suppose $\angle C = \angle B$. What conclusion follows as to sides AB and AC? Auth.

What then of the supposition?

Suppose $\angle C < \angle B$. What conclusion as to the sides AB and AC? Auth.

What then of this supposition?

What possibility remains?

Therefore—

Discussion. Observe that one of three relations *must* exist between $\angle B$ and $\angle C$ and the true relation was determined by proving the impossibility of the two others. The argument does not differ from other indirect arguments that have been used except that there are three possible situations to be considered instead of two, as heretofore.

Prove Prop. XXV by a direct proof.

SUG. On AB lay off $AM = AC$ and draw CM.

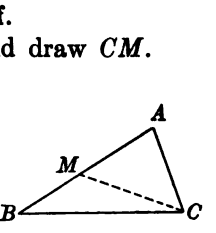
$\therefore \angle AMC = \angle ACM$. Why?

$\angle AMC > \angle B$. Why?

$\therefore \angle ACM > \angle B$.

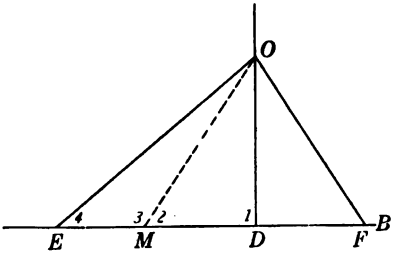
$\angle ACB > \angle ACM$.

$\therefore \angle ACB > \angle B$. Why?



PROPOSITION XXVI.

120. THEOREM. *If sects are drawn from the same point in a perpendicular to a line and meet the line at unequal distance from the foot of the perpendicular, the sects are unequal and the more remote is the greater.*



Given $OD \perp EB$ with O any point in OD and $ED > DF$.

To Prove $OE > OF$.

SUG. 1. Lay off $MD = DF$. M will lie between E and D. Why?

2. Draw OM. Then $OM = OF$. Why?

3. $\angle 1$ is a rt. angle. $\therefore \angle 2$ is acute. Why?

4. $\therefore \angle 3$ is obtuse. Why?

5. $\therefore \angle 4$ is acute. Why?

6. $\therefore \angle 3 > \angle 4$. Why?

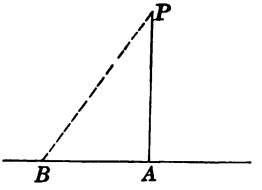
7. $\therefore OE > OM$. Why?

8. $\therefore OE > OF$. Why?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXVII.

121. THEOREM. *The shortest line from a point to a straight line is the perpendicular from the point to the line.*



Let PA represent the shortest line from P to line AB.

To Prove $PA \perp AB$.

Proof. If PA is not perpendicular to AB then some other line through P is perpendicular to AB. But by § 115 this new line would be shorter than PA, hence contrary to hypothesis.

Therefore—

90. A line drawn from one end of the base of an isosceles triangle perpendicular to the opposite side makes with the base an angle equal to one-half ot the vertex angle.

Suppose the vertex angle is obtuse.

Suppose the vertex angle is a right angle.

90a. What follows in case a line is drawn in an isosceles triangle:—

(1.) Bisecting the vertex angle?

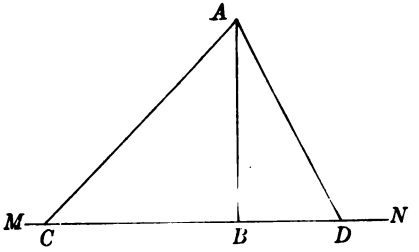
(2.) From the vertex to the mid point of the base?

(3.) From the vertex perpendicular to the base?

90b. How many converses in 90a?

PROPOSITION XXVIII.

122. THEOREM. *Two unequal line segments drawn from the same point in the perpendicular to a given line meet the line at unequal distances from the foot of the perpendicular, the longer segment meeting it at the greater distance.*



Given $AB \perp MN$ and $AC > AD$.

To Prove $BC > BD$.

SUG. 1. If CB is not greater than BD then $CB = BD$ or else $CB < BD$.

2. Suppose $CB = BD$, how does AC compare with AD? Why?

3. Suppose $CB < BD$, how does AC compare with AD? Why?

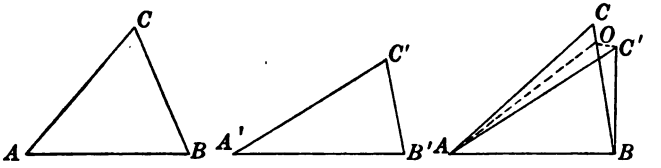
4. What then is the true relation of CB to BD?

Therefore—

Of what theorem is this the converse?

PROPOSITION XXIX.

123. THEOREM. *If two triangles have two sides of the one equal respectively to two sides of the other and the included angles unequal, the remaining sides are unequal and that side is the greater which is opposite the greater of the included angles.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$ with $AB = A'B'$, $AC = A'C'$, and $\angle A > \angle A'$.

To Prove $BC > B'C'$.

SUG. 1. Place $\triangle A'B'C'$ upon $\triangle ABC$ so that $A'B'$ coincides with AB. Then since $\angle A > \angle A'$ side $A'C'$ will lie between AB and AC. The point C' may fall within $\triangle ABC$, on line BC, or beyond line BC.

The student should construct the figures for the first and second cases lettering them like the figure.

2. Bisect $\angle CAC'$ and extend the bisector to meet BC at O.

3. Compare $\triangle AOC$ with $\triangle AOC'$ and OC with OC'. Auths.

4. Compare BC' with $BO + OC'$.

5. Compare $BO + OC'$ with $BO + OC$ or its equal BC.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXX.

124. THEOREM. *If two triangles have two sides of the one equal respectively to two sides of the other and the third sides unequal, the included angles are unequal and that angle is the greater which is opposite the greater side.*

Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$, with $AB = A'B'$, $AC = A'C'$, and $BC > B'C'$.

To Prove $\angle A > \angle A'$.

SUG. 1. What three possible relations are there for $\angle A$ and A'?

2. Test each of these as was done in Prop. XXV.

3. Which is the only one not contradicted by the hypothesis?

Therefore—

125. QUADRILATERAL. A portion of a plane bounded by four sects is a *plane quadrilateral.*

126. QUADRILATERALS CLASSIFIED. A quadrilateral is a *parallelogram* if its opposite sides are parallel, a *trapezoid* if but one pair of opposite sides is parallel, a *trapezium* if no two sides are parallel. A trapezoid the non-parallel sides of which are equal is *isosceles.*

127. PARALLELOGRAMS CLASSIFIED. A parallelogram is a *rectangle* if all its angles are right angles, a *rhomboid* if all its angles are oblique, a *square* if it is an equilateral rectangle, a *rhombus* if it is an equilateral rhomboid.

The *locus* of a point is defined as the line or group of lines to which a point is limited, any point of which satisfies the given conditions. The locus of a point is both inclusive and exclusive. It includes all the points which satisfy the given condition and excludes all points which do not.

165. Locus Generated. The locus of a point may be regarded as the path of a point which moves according to a given law or condition. For example, the *law* in the illustration used in the preceding section is that the point must keep at the distance of four inches from the given line. The expressions, *locus of a point* and *locus of points* are both used.

166. To Verify Locus Conditions. To prove that a given line (or lines) is the *locus of points* satisfying a given condition it is necessary to prove two things; first—any point in the line satisfies the given condition and second—no point outside the line satisfies the given condition. For an example, see § 167.

Discuss without formal proof the following loci:

125. What is the locus of a ship at sea 20° N. Latitude?

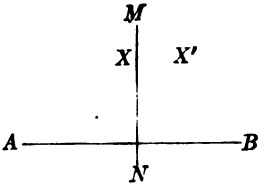
126. A man lives one block west of the north and south street which passes the school house. What is the locus of his house?

127. A man is $\frac{1}{2}$ mile from the street or road in front of the school. What is his locus?

128. An article was lost ten feet west of the outer edge of a straight side walk. Where should one look for it, i.e. what is its locus?

PROPOSITION XLV.

167 THEOREM. *The locus of points equally distant from the extremities of a given line segment is the perpendicular bisector of the line segment.*



Given line segment AB, with MN the perpendicular bisector of AB.

To Prove MN the locus of points equidistant from A and B.

SUG. 1. See Prop. V.

2. Let X' be a point not on MN. Compare $X'A$ and $X'B$. Auth.

3. Apply definition of locus.

Therefore—

168. COR. *The locus of points equidistant from two given points is the perpendicular bisector of the sect joining them.*

129. In example 128 change the words "west of" to "from." What is the locus?

130. What is the locus of the center of the headlight of a locomotive when in motion?

131. A farm is in range seven, what is its locus? In township fifteen, what is its locus?

PROPOSITION XLVI.

169. THEOREM. *The locus of points equidistant from the sides of an angle is the bisector of the angle.*

See examples 84 and 85 on p. 66, and ex. 79 on p. 65.

170. COR. *The locus of points equidistant from two intersecting lines is the pair of lines that bisect the angles formed by the given lines.*

What relation do these locus lines bear to each other?

PROPOSITION XLVII.

171. THEOREM. *The locus of points at a given distance from a given line is the pair of lines parallel to the given line and at the given distance from it.*

SUG. 1. At any point in the given line erect a perpendicular to the line, locate the two points which are at the required distance from the given line and through these points draw lines parallel to the given line.

2. What two facts must be established in order to prove these two constructed lines to be the desired locus?

Therefore—

132. What is the locus of the tip of the pendulum of a clock?

133. What is the locus of the hub of a wheel on a moving auto?

134. If the opposite angles of a parallelogram are bisected by the diagonals, the figure is equilateral.

SUG. Draw one diagonal.

PROPOSITION XLVIII.

172. THEOREM. *The locus of points equally distant from two parallel lines is the line parallel to them and midway between them.*

SUG. 1. Construct a segment perpendicular to and intercepted by the parallel lines.

2. Construct the perpendicular bisector of this segment.

3. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

173. USE OF LOCI. A common method of locating a point in a plane is to establish two loci of the point, the intersection of which is the required point. To use this method of attack successfully the student must bear in mind that two statements are made when a line, as AB, is said to be the locus of an unknown point X, viz: any point in AB can be X and no point outside of AB can be X, i.e. X must be in AB.

135. Find point X if it is to be in a given line and equally distant from two points.

Given line CD and the points A and B (which may lie, one or both, on CD). *To find* point X in CD and equally distant from A and B.

SUG. 1. What is the locus of points equally distant from A and B?

2. Where then must X lie?

3. What position of the points A and B with respect to CD would make the problem impossible?

136. Find point X if it is in a given line and equally distant from two intersecting lines.

SUG. 1. What is the locus of points equally distant from two intersecting lines?

2. Complete the solution.

3. Is this problem ever impossible? What is the condition?

4. What relative position of the given lines would admit of an unlimited number of positions for point X?

137. Find point X if it is equally distant from two intersecting lines and equally distant from the extremities of a given line-segment. Is there any arrangement of the given lines which will make this problem impossible?

138. Find point X if equally distant from the sides of a given angle and equally distant from two parallel lines.

139. Find point X if equally distant from two points and equally distant from two parallel lines.

140. Find point X if it lies in one given line and is at a given distance from another given line. Are there conditions which make the problem impossible?

141. Find X if it is equally distant from two intersecting lines and also a given distance from a third line.

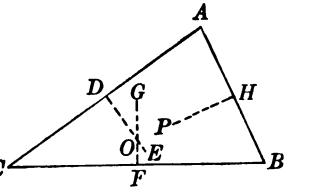
In general, how many such points are there? What is the least possible number? What is the greatest possible number?

174. CONCURRENT LINES. Two or more lines having one point in common are *concurrent lines.*

The construction of loci is a useful method of proving certain lines concurrent. Name the concurrent lines in the above exercises.

142. The perpendicular bisectors of the sides of a triangle are concurrent.

SUG. 1. Two of the bisectors as DE and FG must intersect as at O. Why? What loci are here involved?



2. $OA = OC$ and $OC = OB$. Why?

3. Therefore O is equidistant from B and A. Why?

4. In what third line must O then lie? Why?

143. The bisectors of the angles of a triangle are concurrent.

SUG. 1. Two of the bisectors must intersect. Why? What loci are involved?

2. Prove their intersection to be in the third bisector.

175. Summary of Book I.

State all the authorities by which

(*a*) two triangles may be proved congruent.

(*b*) two line segments may be proved equal.

(*c*) two lines may be proved parallel.

(*d*) two lines may be proved perpendicular to each other.

(*e*) two angles may be proved unequal.

(*f*) two line segments may be proved unequal.

(*g*) a quadrilateral may be proved a parallelogram.

(*h*) a locus has been established.

These authorities should be carefully arranged, written out in a note book, and memorized. They are the "tools" to be used in future constructions and demonstrations. Geometry is not half learned if the student is unable to recall the various hypotheses which are available for deducing any desired conclusion.

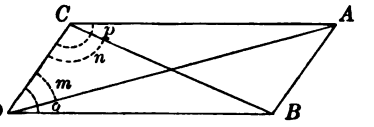
144. The bisectors of the angles at the base of an isosceles triangle together with the base form another isosceles triangle.

145. The perimeter of a triangle is less than twice the sum of the medians.

146. The bisector of an angle of a triangle and the bisectors of the exterior angles of the two other vertices meet in a point which is equidistant from the sides of the triangle. Use loci.

147. To measure a distance between two points, A and B, both of which are inaccessible.

Sug. 1. Lay off a convenient line CD and measure CD, $\angle o$, $\angle p$, $\angle m$, and $\angle n$.



2. On CD as base construct $\triangle ACD$ and $\triangle BCD$.

3. This fixes two points corresponding to A and B, giving the required distance. It is to be noted that in this problem the method requires the construction of triangles which, if the distances are large, may be impracticable.

148. If a line intersects the sides of an isosceles triangle at equal distances from the vertex, it is parallel to the base.

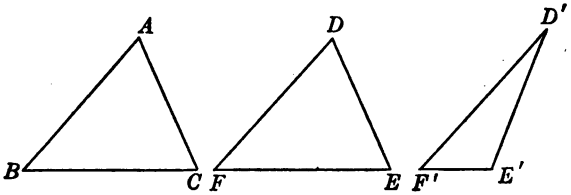
149. The line joining the feet of the perpendiculars from the extremities of the base of an isosceles triangle to the sides is parallel to the base.

150. Two angles having their sides respectively parallel, one pair of parallel sides having the same direction and the other pair having opposite directions, are supplementary.

151. Two triangles having two angles and a side opposite one of them in the first equal respectively to two angles and a corresponding side in the other are congruent.

152. Two isosceles triangles having equal bases and equal vertex angles are congruent.

153. Two triangles having two sides and an angle opposite one of them in the one triangle equal to two sides and an angle opposite one of them respectively in the other triangle may or may not be congruent.



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle DEF$ or $\triangle D'E'F'$, with $AB = DF = D'F', AC = DE = D'E', \angle B = \angle F = \angle F'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ but not congruent to $\triangle D'E'F'$.

It is to be noted that of the two triangles DEF and $D'E'F'$ one is acute and one is obtuse, and each have the required parts. Obviously $\triangle ABC$ is congruent to but one. The student should give detailed proof for the figures as drawn.

154. The sum of the exterior angles at the base of a triangle is equal to two right angles plus the vertex angle.

155. In $\triangle ABC$, $\angle C$ is twice the sum of $\angle A$ and $\angle B$ and $\angle B$ is twice $\angle A$. Find A, B, C.

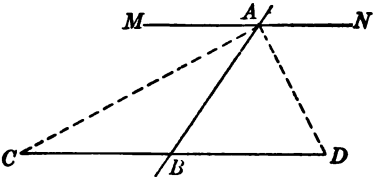
156. The exterior angles formed by producing the sides of an isosceles triangle beyond the base are equal.

157. Given a square $ADBC$. Draw the diagonal CD and on CD lay off $CE = CB$. Draw $EF \perp CD$ at E and extend to DB as at F. Prove $DE = EF = BF$.

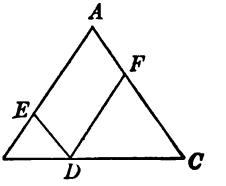
158. A straight line segment intercepted between parallels is bisected and another straight line is drawn through the point of bisection. Prove that the segment of this line intercepted between the parallels is bisected.

159. Find the sum of the interior angles of a concave polygon of 13 sides.

160. A segment is intercepted between two parallels and the adjacent angles formed by the segment and one of the parallels are bisected. Prove that the segments on the other parallel are equal.



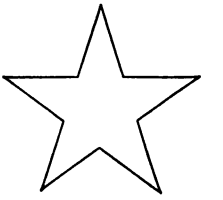
161. ABC is an isosceles triangle. DE and DF are parallel to AC and AB respectively. Prove the perimeter of $AFDE$ equal to $AB + AC$.



162. If the legs of a trapezoid are equal, they make equal angles with the parallel sides.

163. Prove the converse of Ex. 162.

164. Prove that the sum of the angles at the vertices of the conventional five pointed star is equal to two right angles. Use the figure as drawn.



165. Connect the vertices of the star and give a different demonstration.

166. How many right angles in the sum of the vertex angles of a six pointed star? Of an eight pointed star?

167. If the vertex angle of an isosceles triangle is one-half as great as an angle at the base, the bisector of a base angle divides the given triangle into two isosceles triangles.

168. How many equiangular triangles can have a common vertex? How many rectangles? How many equiangular pentagons? Hexagons? Equiangular figures of a still greater number of sides?

169. Which of the above figures will exactly fill up the space about the common vertex?

170. Which of the above figures can be used for a patch work quilt or a mosaic design?

The following propositions will be needed frequently in the next chapter. They are placed here for ready reference.

Two lines are equal if:

(1) The lines are corresponding parts of congruent triangles. Art. 67. (2) Art. 70. (3) Art. 73. (4) Art. 85. (5) Art. 111. (6) Ex. 79 (7) Art. 133. (8) Art. 134. (9) Art. 135. (10) Art. 139. (11) Art. 149. (12) Art. 150. (13) Art. 152. (14) Art. 154.

Two lines are perpendicular to each other if:

(1) Art. 70. (2) Art. 76. (3) Art. 90. (4) Art. 145.

One line is greater than another:

(1) Art. 113. (2) Art. 114. (3) Art. 115. (4) Ex. 85. (5) Art. 120. (6) Art. 121. (7) Art. 122. (8) Art. 123.

Two lines are parallel:

(1) Art. 88. (2) Art. 98. (3) Art. 99. (4) Art. 126. (5) Art. 153.

Two angles are equal:

(1) Art 67. (2) Art. 68. (3) Art. 69. (4) Art. 85. (5) Art. 94. (6) Art. 95. (7) Art. 96. (8) Art. 102. (9) Art. 109. (10) Art. 138. (11) Art. 144.

One angle is greater than another if:

(1) Art. 119. (2) Art. 124.

Two triangles are congruent:

(1) Art. 65. (2) Art. 66. (3) Art. 74. (4) Art. 83. (5) Art. 84. (6) Art. 133.

This list does not include axioms.

CHAPTER II.

CIRCLES.

176. CIRCLE. In a plane a closed curve all points of which are the same distance from a fixed point in the plane is a *circle*. The fixed point is the *center* of the circle. The circle completely encloses a portion of the plane. Thus a *circle* is the locus of points in a plane at a given distance from a fixed point in the plane.

It has been more or less customary for writers on geometry to define the circle as the portion of the plane enclosed by the curve and to call the curve the *circumference* of the circle. The above use of the term is more convenient and accords more perfectly with its general use.

177. LENGTHS OF A CIRCLE. The length of the curve is called the *length of the circle*.

178. RADIUS. A straight sect joining the center and any point of the circle is a *radius*.

179. CHORD. A straight sect terminated at both ends by the circle is a *chord*.

180. DIAMETER. A chord which passes through the center is a *diameter*.

181. ARC. Any portion of a circle is an *arc*.

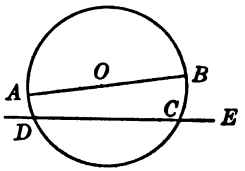
An arc which is half of a circle is a *semicircle*. An arc less than a semicircle is a *minor arc* and one which is greater than a semicircle is a *major arc*.

182. CENTRAL ANGLE. An angle the vertex of which is the center of a circle and the sides of which are radii is a *central angle.*

183. SECANT. A straight line that intersects a circle twice is a *secant.*

A secant is a chord produced.

OA and *OB* are radii, *AB* is a diameter, *CD* is a chord, and *ED* is a secant.



184. SUBTENDS. A chord *subtends* the two arcs which have the same extremities as itself. Unless otherwise stated the arc subtended by a chord is understood to be the minor arc.

185. PRELIMINARY THEOREMS AND ASSUMPTIONS.

1. All radii of a circle are equal.
2. The diameter of a circle is twice the radius.
3. All diameters of a circle are equal.
4. The distance from any point in the plane to the center of a circle is greater than, equal to, or less than a radius according as the point is outside the circle, on the circle, or within the circle.
5. If the radii or diameters of two circles are equal the circles are equal. Since all circles are of the same shape this implies congruence as well.
6. If two circles are equal, the radii and the diameters of the two are equal.
7. An unlimited straight line that lies partly within a circle cuts the circle in two points.
8. If the end points of two minor arcs or two major arcs on the same or on equal circles can be made to coincide the arcs can be made to coincide.

9. If two arcs of two circles are equal the circles are equal.

186. POSTULATE. *A circle may be constructed about any given point in the plane as center with any given sect as radius.*

The actual construction of such a circle is done by aid of the dividers.

187. COR. *A circle may be constructed upon any given sect as diameter.*

SUG. What must be done to the given diameter to find the center of the required circle?

188. PROBLEM. *Given an arc of a circle, to find the center.*

SUG. 1. If from the given arc MC two loci of the center can be determined, the center can be found.

2. Draw two chords as AB and AC. Where must the center lie with respect to A and B? With respect to A and C?

3. Construct the loci of points which satisfy these respective conditions. What can be said of the intersection of these loci?

4. A circle about this point O as a center with radius OA will pass through points A, B, C and therefore by § 185 (8) will embrace the given arc.

Therefore point O is the required center.

189. PROBLEM. *To draw a circle through three points not in the same straight line.*

SUG. Make the construction from § 188, with A, B, C as given points in required.

190. COR. I. *A circle cannot be drawn through three points which are in a straight line.*

191. COR. II. *Only one circle can be drawn through three points not in a straight line.*

SUG. It was seen in § 189 that at least one such circle can be drawn. From § 185 (8) it follows that there cannot be more than one. Why? Or, take a point X as any other center. Can X be equally distant from A and B? From A and C?

1. How many circles can be drawn through two points?

2. Two circles can intersect in two points at most.

3. Given arc M, find the center.

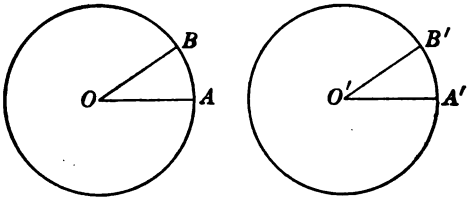
4. How can a carpenter test the accuracy of his "square" without using a previously made right angle?

5. A diameter is greater than any other chord.

SUG. Draw any chord not a diameter and draw radii to its extremities. Compare the chord with the sum of the radii.

PROPOSITION I.

192. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, equal central angles intercept equal arcs.*



Given circle O equal to circle O' and $\angle AOB = \angle A'O'B'$.

To Prove arc AB = arc $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Place $\odot O$ on $\odot O'$ with O on O'. Then the two circles will coincide, having a common center and equal radii.

2. Rotate $\odot O$ about O' until point A falls on A'.

3. Then since $\angle AOB = \angle A'O'B'$ the radii OB and $O'B'$ will coincide and B fall on B'.

4. Hence the arcs AB and $A'B'$ coincide. § 185 (8).

Therefore—

COR. The bisector of a central angle is the perpendicular bisector of the chord of the intercepted arc, and also bisects the intercepted arc.

NOTE: Most converses can be easily proved by the indirect method. Keep this in mind in the following pages.

PROPOSITION II.

193. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, equal arcs subtend equal central angles.*

Given $\odot O$ and $\odot O'$ with arc AB = arc $A'B'$. (Use fig. Prop. I.)

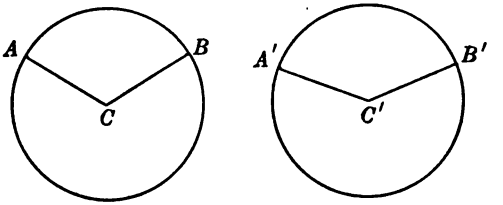
To Prove $\angle AOB = \angle A'O'B'$.

SUG. Place the circles together as in Prop. I and show that the two angles can be made to coincide.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION III.

194. THEOREM. *If, in the same or in equal circles, two central angles are unequal, the greater angle intercepts the greater arc.*



Given $\odot C$ equal to $\odot C'$ and $\angle ACB < \angle A'C'B'$.

To Prove arc $AB <$ arc $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Place $\odot C$ upon $\odot C'$ as in Prop. I and rotate it until CA coincides with $C'A'$.

2. Where will CB fall with reference to $\angle A'C'B'$? Why?

3. Where will B fall with reference to the arc $A'B'$? Why?

4. Compare arcs $A'B$ and $A'B'$; arcs AB and $A'B'$.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION IV.

195 THEOREM. *If two arcs, in the same or in equal circles, are unequal, the greater arc subtends the greater central angle.*

Given $\odot C$ equal to $\odot C'$ and arc $AB <$ arc $A'B'$. (Use fig. of Prop. III.)

To Prove $\angle ACB < \angle A'C'B'$.

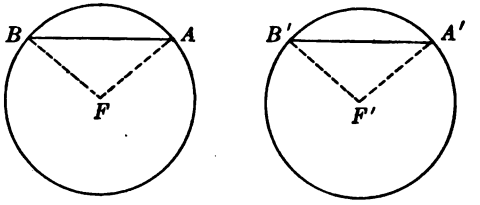
Proof. SUG. Place $\odot C$ upon $\odot C'$ as in Prop. III and show that $\angle ACB$ equals a part of $\angle A'C'B'$.

Therefore—

Try indirect method.

PROPOSITION V.

196. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, equal chords subtend equal arcs.*



Given $\odot F$ and $\odot F'$ equal with chord AB = chord $A'B'$.

To Prove arc AB = arc $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw the radii FA, FB, $F'A'$, $F'B'$.

2. The arcs are equal provided $\angle F = \angle F'$. Why?

3. Prove these angles equal and complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION VI.

197. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, chords which subtend equal arcs are equal.*

Given two equal ⊙, F and F' with arc AB = arc $A'B'$. (Use fig. of Prop. V.)

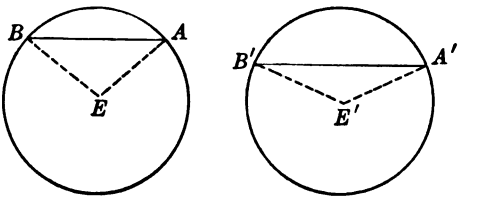
To Prove chord AB = chord $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. Compare the central angles F and F' and complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION VII.

198. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, two chords which subtend unequal minor arcs are unequal and the greater chord subtends the greater arc.*



Given equal ⊙ E and E' with arc AB < arc $A'B'$.

To Prove chord AB < chord $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw radii EA, EB, $E'A'$, $E'B'$.

2. Compare $\angle E$ and E'. Auth.?

3. Compare chords AB and $A'B'$.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION VIII.

199. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, two arcs which subtend unequal chords are unequal and the greater arc subtends the greater chord.*

Given equal ⊙ E and E' with chord AB < chord $A'B'$. (Use fig. of Prop. VII.)

To Prove arc AB < arc $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare $\measuredangle E$ and E'. By what theorem?

2. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

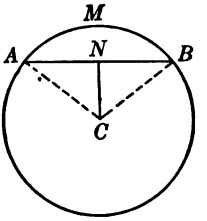
6. Napoleon and his engineer in exploring came to a river. Napoleon asked its width. The engineer sighted from the rim of his cap to the opposite side, swung upon his heel, and sighted to a point on the land, then paced to the point and said, "Ten rods, Sire." Upon what proposition did his computation depend?

7. If the mid-points of the three sides of a triangle be joined by straight lines, the triangle is divided into four congruent triangles.

8. If the mid-points of two opposite sides of a quadrilateral be joined to the mid-points of the diagonals, the joining lines form a parallelogram. As one particular case let the quadrilateral be a parallelogram. Is this case an exception?

PROPOSITION IX.

200. THEOREM. *A radius perpendicular to a chord bisects the chord.*



Given $\odot C$ with chord AB and radius $CN \perp AB$ at N.

To Prove $AN = NB$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw radii CA and CB. Why?

SUG. 2. What kind of $\triangle$ is ACB?

Auth.

3. Compare AN and NB. Auth.

Therefore—

201. COR. I. *A radius perpendicular to a chord bisects the arc subtended by the chord.*

SUG. Compare the two arcs by means of the subtended central angles.

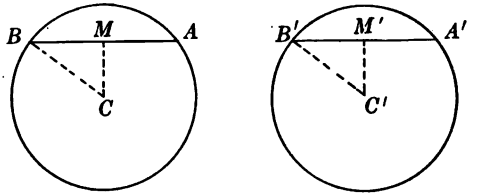
202. COR. II. *A radius which bisects a chord is perpendicular to the chord.*

203. COR. III. *The perpendicular bisector of a chord of a circle bisects the arc subtended by the chord.*

204. COR. IV. *The perpendicular bisector of a chord of a circle passes through the center of the circle.*

PROPOSITION X.

205. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, equal chords are equally distant from the center.*



Given equal ⊙ C and C' with chord AB = chord $A'B'$.

To Prove AB and $A'B'$ equally distant from C and C' respectively.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw $CM \perp AB$ and $C'M' \perp A'B'$. Why? Also draw CB and $C'B'$. Why?

2. It is necessary to prove $CM = C'M'$. Why?

3. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XI.

206. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, chords which are equally distant from the center are equal.*

Given ⊙ C and C' with chords AB and $A'B'$ such that their distances CM and $C'M'$ from the respective centers are equal. (Use fig. of Prop. X.)

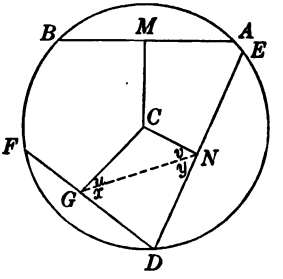
To Prove chord AB = chord $A'B'$.

Proof. SUG. Compare MB and $M'B'$. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XII.

207. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, unequal chords are unequally distant from the center and the shorter chord is at the greater distance from the center.*



Given $\odot C$ with chord $AB <$ chord ED, CM and CN being the respective distances of the chords from the center.

To Prove $CM > CN$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw chord $FD = AB$ and $CG \perp FD$. Connect G and N.

2. Compare $\angle x$ with $\angle y$. Auth.

3. Hence $\angle u < \angle v$. Why?

4. $\therefore CG > CN$. Why?

5. $\therefore CM > CN$. Why?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XIII.

208. THEOREM. *In the same circle, or in equal circles, chords which are unequally distant from the center are unequal and that chord which is at the greater distance is the shorter.*

Given $\odot C$, CM and CN being the respective distances of two chords AB and ED from the center. Also $CN < CM$. (Use fig. of Prop. XII.)

To Prove $AB < ED$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What three possibilities exist as to the relative sizes of AB and ED?

2. Assume each in turn to be true. Which is the only one which does not by a former theorem lead to a conclusion contradictory to the hypothesis?

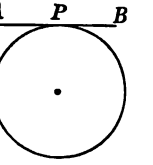
Therefore—

Prove prop. § 208 by direct method (use fig. § 207).

9. If the straight line connecting the mid-points of two chords of a circle passes through the center, the two chords are parallel.

10. The radius drawn to the mid-point of an arc is the perpendicular bisector of the subtended chord.

11. In a right triangle with acute angles of 30° and 60° respectively, one side is one-half the hypotenuse.

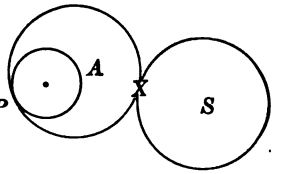


209. TANGENT LINE. A line that touches a circle at one point only and does not cut the circle is a *tangent line.*

210. POINT OF TANGENCY. The point which is common to the circle and a tangent line is the *point of tangency.*

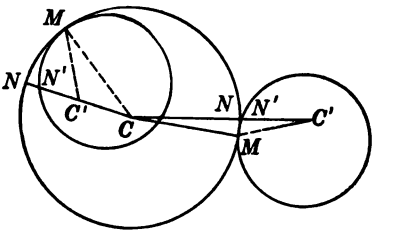
211. TANGENT CIRCLE. If two circles have but one point in common they are *tangent circles.*

If one circle is within the other they are tangent *internally.* If they are without each other they are tangent *externally.*



PROPOSITION XIV.

212. THEOREM. *The straight sect joining the centers of two tangent circles passes through the point of tangency.*



Given two circles C and C', tangent at M.

To Prove line CC' to pass through M.

Proof. CASE I. *Internal tangency.*

SUG. 1. Assume that CC' does not pass through M.

Join C to M and C' to M. Extend CC' to meet $\odot C$ at N and $\odot C'$ at N'.

The pupil will note that the figure is distorted for the sake of the argument. The points C and C' are not the true centers.

2. $CM < CC' + C'M$. Why?
3. $C'N' = C'M$. Auth.?
4. $CM < CC' + C'N'$. Why?
5. $CC' + C'N' = CN'$.
6. $CM < CN'$.
7. What of the assumption in Sug. 1?

CASE II. *External tangency.*

SUG. 1. Make the same assumption as in case I.

2. $CC' < CM + C'M$. Why?
3. $CC' = C'N + CN$.
4. $C'N + CN < CM + C'M$. Why?
5. $CN = CM$.
6. $\therefore C'N < C'M$. (Ax. 4.)
7. What of the assumption in Sug. 1?

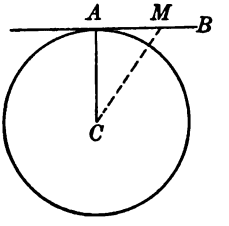
Therefore—

12. If the hypotenuse of a right triangle is equal to twice one of the sides the acute angles are 30° and 60° respectively.

13. The mid-point of the hypotenuse is equidistant from the three vertices.

PROPOSITION XV.

213. THEOREM. *A straight line perpendicular to a radius at its outer extremity is tangent to the circle.*



Given $\odot C$ with line $AB \perp CA$ at its outer extremity A.

To Prove AB tangent to $\odot C$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What must be known to prove AB tangent?

2. How much of this is included in the hypothesis?

3. What remains to be proved?

4. Let M represent any point on AB other than A and draw CM.

5. Compare CA and CM as to length.

6. Where then is point M with respect to $\odot C$?

Therefore—

214. COR. I. *A line which is tangent to a circle is perpendicular to the radius at the point of contact.*

SUG. Prove that the radius is the shortest line from the center to the tangent.

215. Cor. II. *The perpendicular to a tangent at the point of contact passes through the center of the circle.*

Sug. Indirect proof.

216. Cor. III. *The perpendicular dropped from the center of a circle to a tangent meets it at the point of tangency.*

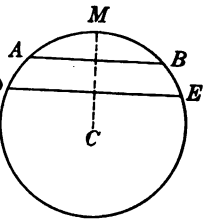
217. Cor. IV. *At any point on a circle one and only one tangent can be drawn.*

218. Cor. V. *If two circles are tangent, a line tangent to one at their point of contact is tangent to the other.*

PROPOSITION XVI.

219. Theorem. *Arcs of a circle intercepted by parallel lines are equal.*

Given $\odot C$, with two parallel chords AB and DE intercepting arcs EB and AD.



To Prove arc EB = arc AD.

Proof. Sug. 1. Drop a $\perp$ from C to DE, extending it to meet the circle as at M. Why?

2. How does CM lie with reference to AB?

3. Where does CM meet the arcs subtended by the two chords?

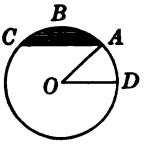
4. Complete the demonstration.

5. Assume one of the two parallel lines to be tangent to the circle and complete the demonstration.

6. Assume both lines to be tangents and complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

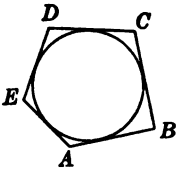
220. SEGMENT OF A CIRCLE. A portion of the plane enclosed by an arc and its subtended chord is a *segment of the circle.*



ABC is a minor segment and *CDA* is a major segment. By segment is usually meant the minor segment and it is indicated by its arc alone.

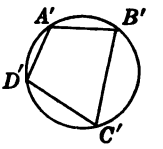
221. SECTOR OF A CIRCLE. A portion of the plane enclosed by two radii and the intercepted arc is a *sector of the circle.* *DOA* is a sector.

222. CIRCUMSCRIBED POLYGON. A polygon is *circumscribed* about a circle if all of its sides are tangent to the circle, as polygon *ABCDE.*



When a polygon is circumscribed about a circle, the circle is *inscribed in the polygon.*

223. INSCRIBED POLYGON. A polygon is *inscribed* in a *circle* if each of its sides is a chord of the circle, as *A'B'C'D'.*



When a polygon is inscribed in a circle, the circle is *circumscribed about the polygon.*

224. INSCRIBED ANGLE. An angle is *inscribed* in a circle when its vertex is on the circle and its sides are chords.

225. ANGLE INSCRIBED IN A SEGMENT. An angle is *inscribed in a segment* when it is subtended by the chord of the segment and its vertex is on the arc of the segment.

226. Whenever it is established that a certain relation of points and lines is possible, the rigor of a demonstration is not impaired by using a representation of that relation without performing the actual construction. This has been done directly in previous demonstrations and indirectly by the use of instruments, such as the protractor, the construction of which required the results of theorems at that time not proven. This has been done in order that the pupil may at as early a stage as possible learn to make careful constructions and more fully visualize the relations under consideration.

Plane geometry deals only with figures composed of straight lines and circles, the construction of which may usually be effected by means of the straight edge and the dividers. The postulates involving the simple use of these tools are restated below. Problems of construction are in no sense Pure Geometry but are applications of principles demonstrated in Pure Geometry.

Since constructions are based on previously demonstrated theorems some problems can be solved by several methods according as one or another theorem is used. For example, several methods for determining a perpendicular have already been indicated as well as for parallel lines. In the following problems it will be of added interest to make use of as many methods as possible in each.

14. If the median drawn from the vertex angle of a triangle to the base equals half the base, the vertex angle is a right angle. Of which exercise is this the converse?

227. POSTULATES.

1. *A sect can be drawn between any two points and can be extended to any length through either extremity.*

2. *A circle can be drawn with any sect for a radius about any point as a center.*

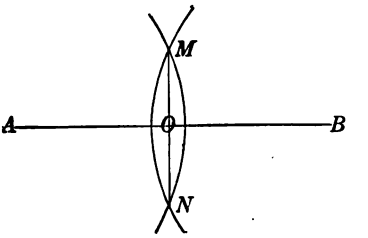
The first postulate requires the straight edge and the second the dividers.

In solving problems of construction it is of advantage to represent the construction as completed in order that by a study of the lines involved and their relations to each other one may recall previous theorems and constructions from which as starting points the desired construction can be made.

PROPOSITION XVII.

228. PROBLEM. *To construct a perpendicular bisector of a given straight line segment.*

Construction. With A and B, the extremities, as centers and with equal radii greater than $\frac{1}{2}AB$ describe arcs intersecting as at M and N. Draw MN intersecting AB at O.



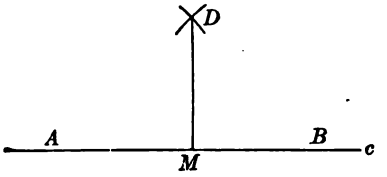
Then O is the mid-point of AB.

Proof. By the construction M and N are each equidistant from A and B and hence determine the perpendicular bisector of AB.

Note.—A little experience will suggest what parts of lines may be omitted as unessential. For example, in the above construction all the circles may be omitted except such short arcs as are necessary to determine the intersection points M and N.

PROPOSITION XVIII.

229. PROBLEM. *To erect a perpendicular to a given line at a given point on the line.*



Given point M in line c.

To Construct a perpendicular to c at M.

Construction. On c lay off $MA = MB$. With A and B as centers and equal radii greater than MA describe arcs intersecting at D. Draw DM which is the required perpendicular.

Proof. DM is the perpendicular bisector of AB (Why?) and as AB is a part of line c, DM is perpendicular to c.

15. In proposition XVIII, suppose A and B were in the base of the blackboard, how could the perpendicular bisector of AB be drawn?

16. In proposition XVIII, suppose the point M was the extremity of a line segment, and erect a perpendicular to the line segment at M.

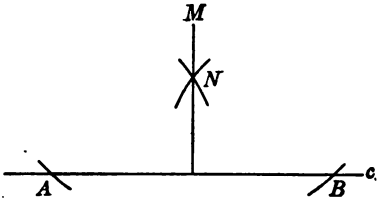
17. Construct a right triangle, having given one side and the hypotenuse.

18. Construct a circle with a given line as a diameter.

19. Divide a circle into four equal arcs.

PROPOSITION XIX.

230. PROBLEM. *From a given point to drop a perpendicular to a given line.*



Given the line c with a point M not on c.

To Construct a line through M perpendicular to c.

Construction. With M as a center and a radius of sufficient length describe an arc to cut line c in two points as A and B. Locate now a second point, N, equidistant from A and B. How can this be done? The line MN is the required line.

Proof. Left to student.

PROPOSITION XX.

231. PROBLEM. *To bisect a given arc.*

Given AB, the arc to be bisected.

SUG. 1. What propositions have been demonstrated involving the bisection of an arc?

2. If the center O is known, complete the solution.

3. If the center is not given, complete the solution.

Proof. Left to student.

PROPOSITION XXI.

232. PROBLEM. *To bisect a given angle.*

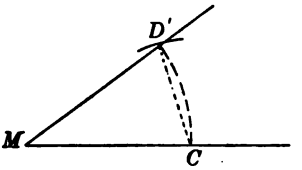
SUG. 1. Construct a circle with the given angle at the center and complete the solution.

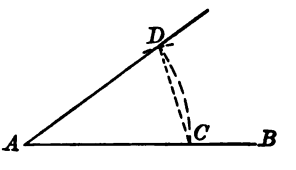
Or 2. What propositions involve a bisected angle? Make a construction from one or more of these.

Proof.

PROPOSITION XXII.

233. PROBLEM. *At a given point in a given line to construct an angle equal to a given angle with the given line as one side.*





Given $\angle M$ and the point A on line AB.

To Construct an angle at A equal to $\angle M$ and with AB as one side.

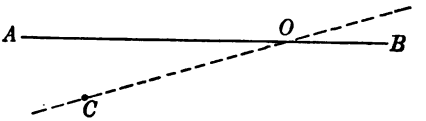
SUG. 1. $\angle M$ and the angle to be constructed will be equal if they are central angles in equal circles and are subtended by equal arcs. Complete the construction.

2. $\angle M$ and the angle to be constructed will be equal if they are opposite equal sides in congruent triangles. Complete the construction.

Proof.

PROPOSITION XXIII.

234. PROBLEM. *Through a given point without a straight line to construct a line parallel to the given line.*



Given any point C not on line AB.

To Construct a line through C parallel to AB.

SUG. 1. Draw through C any line cutting AB as a transversal.

2. With respect to AB and the transversal what conditions of the line to be constructed will make it parallel to AB?

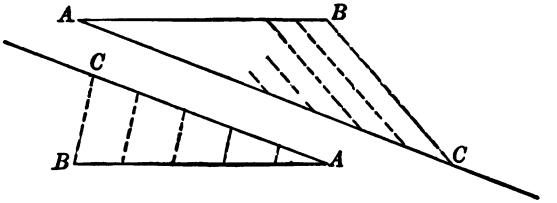
3. Complete the construction.

Other methods. Make constructions by other authorities.

Proof.

PROPOSITION XXIV.

235. PROBLEM. *To divide a sect into any number of equal parts.*



Given sect AB.

To divide AB into 5, or, more generally, into n equal parts.

SUG. 1. From one extremity of AB draw a line oblique to AB as AC.

2. Lay off on AC five (or n) equal sects of any convenient length.

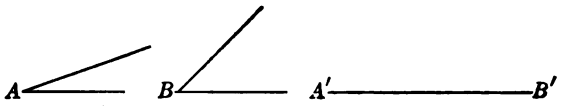
3. Join C and B. Through each of the other points of division of AC draw lines parallel to BC, extending them to meet AB.

4. The five (or n) divisions thus made in AB are equal. Why?

Proof.

PROPOSITION XXV.

236. PROBLEM. *Given two angles and the included side of a triangle, to construct the triangle.*



Given $\measuredangle A$ and B of a triangle with $A'B'$ as the included side.

To Construct the triangle.

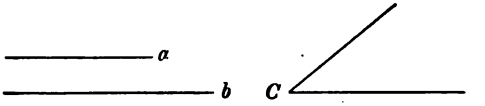
SUG. Represent the triangle as already constructed and from the figure decide which of the preceding problems might be used to construct it.

Proof.

QUERY. Can the line and angles be of such magnitude as to make the construction impossible?

PROPOSITION XXVI.

237. PROBLEM. *Given two sides and the included angle of a triangle to construct the triangle.*



Given two sides, a and b, and the included angle C of a triangle.

To Construct the triangle.

SUG. 1. At any point on an unlimited line construct an angle equal to C.

2. Complete the construction.

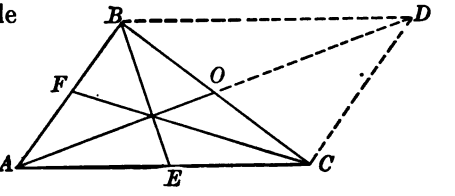
Proof.

20. Upon a given base construct an isosceles triangle in which the sum of the two other sides equals a given line.

21. If from two opposite vertices of a parallelogram two lines be drawn to the middle points of two opposite sides, the lines will trisect the diagonal joining the other vertices.

22. The three medians of a triangle meet in a point.

SUG. CF cuts off one-third of diagonal AD. Why?

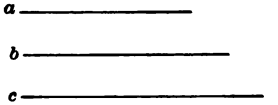


Find relation of BE to the diagonal.

Show that median AO lies in diagonal AD.

PROPOSITION XXVII.

238. PROBLEM. *To construct a triangle, given the three sides.*



Given a, b, c as the three sides of a triangle ABC.

To Construct $\triangle ABC$.

Construction.

SUG. 1. Take a sect AB equal to c. A and B are then two vertices of the triangle.

2. If b is the side opposite vertex B what is the locus of the third vertex C?

3. With respect to vertex B where does C lie?

4. Complete the construction.

Proof.

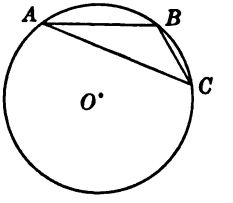
Discussion. What effect do the relative magnitudes of the given sides have upon the possibilities of construction?

23. Construct an equilateral triangle. Will the problem as stated admit of more than one such triangle? What condition may be added to make the problem definite?

24. Construct an isosceles triangle with the base one-third of a side.

PROPOSITION XXVIII.

239. PROBLEM. *To circumscribe a circle about a triangle.*



Given $\triangle ABC$.

To circumscribe a $\odot$ about $\triangle ABC$.

SUG. 1. The problem is to find the center of a circle which passes through A, B, C.

2. Where must this center lie with respect to A and B? With respect to B and C?

3. Complete the construction and verify.

Proof.

QUERY. How many circles can be circumscribed about a triangle? Why?

25. Construct a triangle with a given base, a given base angle, and a given altitude.

26. Construct an angle of 60° without a protractor.

27. Construct a triangle with an angle of 45°, an angle of 60°, and a given sect for the included side.

28. Construct an equilateral triangle on a two-inch base. Circumscribe a circle about it and inscribe a circle within it. Show that the radius of the former is twice that of the latter. Show that this is true for any equilateral triangle. See Ex. 23.

PROPOSITION XXIX.

240. PROBLEM. *To inscribe a circle in a given triangle.*

SUG. 1. Study EX. 84 and 85 P. 66, and write out the construction in full.

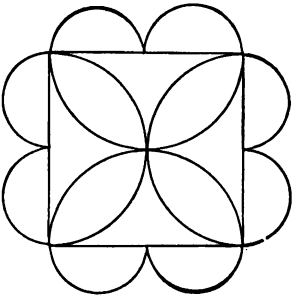
2. Prove the sides of the triangle to be tangents to the circle thus constructed.

241. REVIEW.

State all the theorems of Chapter II by which one can prove

(*a*) Two lines equal.
(*b*) Two angles equal.
(*c*) Two lines perpendicular.
(*d*) Two lines unequal.
(*e*) Two angles unequal.
(*f*) Two arcs equal.
(*g*) Two arcs unequal.

29. Draw the pattern at the right the square having a two-inch base.



30. Can a circle be circumscribed about a square? A rectangle? A rhombus? A rhomboid? Prove your conclusions.

31. Construct a checkerboard design using a T-square. Construct another using a ruler and a right triangle. Give authorities.

32. Given the two diagonals of a rhombus, construct it. Do the same for a square.

33. Construct a rectangle having given one side and a diagonal.

34. Construct a rhomboid having given the two diagonals and their included angle.

35. Inscribe a square in a given circle; circumscribe one about the circle; and then circumscribe a second circle about the second square. Compare the length of the sides and diagonals of the two squares with the radii of the two circles.

CHAPTER III.

MEASUREMENT AND PROPORTION.

242. MAGNITUDE. *Magnitude* is anything which has size, extent, or mass, and prompts the question, "How much?"

Magnitudes in geometry are lines, angles, areas, solids, etc.

243. MEASURE. To *measure* a magnitude is to find the number of times it contains a given *unit of measure.*

244. UNIT. A *unit* of measure is a selected magnitude of the same kind as the magnitude to be measured.

In everyday experience a unit of measure is a standard set by statute or common consent, *e. g.* the yard, the gallon, the degree, the cubic foot, etc.

245. QUANTITY. *Quantity* is the result of measurement and *answers* the question, "How much?"

The quantities of geometry are lengths, areas, contents, etc.

246. NUMERICAL MEASURE. The *numerical measure* of a magnitude is the *number* which expresses how many times the unit is contained in the magnitude measured.

If a line is measured and found to be 8 feet long, the *line* is the magnitude, the *foot* is the unit, *eight* is the numerical measure, and *8 feet* is the quantity.

Magnitude is indefinite, quantity is definite. To express quantity two elements, the numerical measure and the unit, are necessary. Careful distinction must be made between *quantity*, and *number* which is the measure of magnitude. These terms are often confused. If as units of measure, we consider the gallon, the degree, the square inch, the cubic foot, then the expressions 26 gallons, 5 degrees, 29 square inches, 18 cubic feet are *quantities* while 25, 5, 29, 18 are numbers.

247. RATIO. The *ratio* of one magnitude, quantity, or number to another of the same kind is the number which expresses how many times the first contains the second, or more generally the quotient of the first by the second. In other words, the *ratio* of one magnitude, quantity, or number to another is the numerical measure of the first, with respect to the second as the unit of measure, or, both being measured by the same unit, the ratio is the quotient of the numerical measure of the first divided by the numerical measure of the second.

(*a*) To illustrate—the ratio of sect a to sect b is the number of times a contains b as a unit of measure. The result may be obtained by laying off b upon a as many times as possible. If, however, a does not contain b an integral number of times they may each be measured by a common unit m, in which case the ratio is the quotient of the numerical measure of a by the numerical measure of b.

(*b*) From the definition of ratio, it follows that a ratio can exist only between magnitudes or quantities of

the same kind and also that the ratio is always an arithmetical number. For example, if sect a contains unit m 8 times and sect b contains m 4 times, the ratio of a to b is $8 \div 4$ or 2. Hence if c be the number of times m is contained in sect a and d be the number of times m is contained in sect b, the ratio a to b is $c \div d$.

(*c*) Since *ratio* in the following discussions is based upon the algebraic conception of division and not upon the Euclidean definition (which is much too difficult for beginners), the division or fractional form of expression will be used. Hence the ratio of 6 feet to 2 feet will be written as $\frac{6 \text{ ft.}}{2 \text{ ft.}}$, $\frac{6}{2}$, or 3. The statement above as to the ratio of the sects a and b will be shortened to $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$.

248. COMMENSURABLE. Two magnitudes or quantities are *commensurable* if they each contain a common unit of measure a whole, or integral, number of times. The ratio of two commensurable quantities must then be an integral number or a quotient of two integral numbers.

In determining the common unit of measure of two commensurable magnitudes or quantities, the usual method for finding the greatest common divisor may be followed, which is to divide the greater of the two by the less, then the divisor by the remainder, this remainder by the second remainder and so on, until a remainder zero is obtained. This exact divisor is the desired common unit of measure.

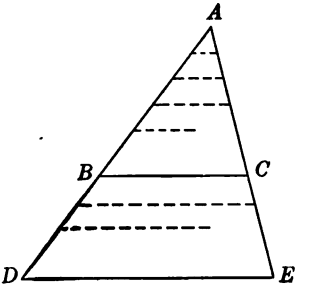
249. INCOMMENSURABLE MAGNITUDES. Two magnitudes or quantities which do not possess a common unit of measure are *incommensurable*. The ratio of two such magnitudes is neither an integral number nor a fraction.

The circle and its diameter are incommensurable, as are also the diagonal and side of a square. A proper discussion of this subject cannot be made at this point on account of certain difficulties necessarily involved.

250. PROPORTION. A *proportion* is an equality each member of which is a ratio. The four numbers or quantities a, b, c, d are in proportion if the ratio of a to b equals the ratio of c to d. The symbolic form of this statement is $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$. The four numbers or quantities are the *terms* of the proportion—a, b, c and d are respectively the first, second, third and fourth terms of the proportion.

PROPOSITION I.

251. THEOREM. *If a line is parallel to the base of a triangle it divides the sides into proportional segments.*



Given $\triangle ADE$ with line $BC \parallel DE$.

To Prove $\dfrac{AB}{BD} = \dfrac{AC}{CE}$.

Proof. Sug. 1. To obtain the ratio of the sects AB and BD they must be measured. Let l be the unit sect and suppose it is contained m times in AB and n times in BD. What is the ratio $\dfrac{AB}{BD}$?

Why?

2. Draw lines through the points of division in AB and $BD \parallel$ to DE and extend to AE. Compare the segments on AC and CE.

3. What is the ratio of AC to CE?

Why?

4. Compare the ratio $\dfrac{AB}{BD}$ with $\dfrac{AC}{CE}$.

Therefore—

Note.—In the above demonstration the case in which AB and BD have no common unit of measure is not considered. The conclusions in this case, however, are the same as above but the demonstration is omitted here as being too difficult for the beginning student.

1. Arrange the numbers 2, 5, 20, 8 in a proportion in as many ways as possible, verifying each by the definition of proportion.

2. Arrange the numbers $3\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{2}{3}$, $28\frac{1}{3}$, $17\frac{1}{2}$ in a proportion and verify it.

252. AN IMPORTANT CONSIDERATION. Since all ratios of magnitudes or quantities, by the definition in use, can be considered only through the ratios of their numerical measures, all proportions herein will be treated as numerical proportions. And since the ratio of two magnitudes, as a and b, 247 (b) is a number and can be represented only by the ratio of their numerical measures, as $\frac{c}{d}$, the terms a and b will be considered, in the interests of brevity, to represent, as well, their numerical measures. In general the names and notations of magnitudes used in the operations of proportion will be synonymous with the notations for their numerical measures, and the treatment of the proportions used will be that of algebra.

For convenience of reference the propositions of proportion will be collected and briefly reviewed in the following sections.

253. THE TERMS OF A PROPORTION. The first and third terms of a proportion are the *antecedents*.

The second and fourth terms are the *consequents*. The second and third terms are the *means*. The first and fourth terms are the *extremes*.

In the proportion, $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, a and c are the antecedents; b and d are the consequents; b and c are the means; a and d are the extremes.

3. If the first three terms of a proportion are 5, 7, 15 what is the fourth term? Solve by algebra.

THEOREMS OF PROPORTION.

254. THEOREM I. *The product of the means equals the product of the extremes.*

SUG. Write the ratios as fractions and clear the equality of its fractional form.

255. THEOREM II. *If the product of two numbers equals the product of two other numbers, the factors of one product may be made the means and the factors of the other product may be made the extremes of a proportion.*

Given $ab = cd$.

To Prove $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{d}{b}$.

SUG. By what must ab be divided to produce $\frac{a}{c}$? By what must cd be divided to produce $\frac{d}{b}$?

Why are the resulting ratios equal?

4. What is the ratio of one side of an equilateral triangle to the perimeter? Of the perimeter to one side?

5. What is the ratio of a right angle to an angle of an equilateral triangle?

6. What is the ratio of a quadrant, *i. e.*, a quarter of a circle, to a semicircle, *i. e.*, a half circle? To a circle?

7. From $ab = cd$ derive a proportion in which a and b are the means.

8. From $ab = cd$ make as many proportions as possible. Note in what respects they differ.

9. Given $\frac{7}{11} = \frac{8}{x}$. Find x.

10. Find x in the following proportions:

$\frac{7}{13} = \frac{x}{18}$; $\frac{x}{11} = \frac{5}{13}$; $\frac{11}{15} = \frac{x}{27}$; $\frac{15}{x} = \frac{11}{39}$; $\frac{3}{x} = \frac{5}{12}$; $\frac{6}{11} = \frac{18}{x}$.

11. Make four different proportions from the identity $8 \times 7 = 4 \times 14$.

12. Use theorem I to determine whether or not the ratios $\frac{7}{12}$ and $\frac{9}{15}$ will form a proportion.

256. THEOREM III. *If* $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, *then* $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$.

SUG. Use theorems I and II.

257. ALTERNATION. The interchange of the two means of a proportion is *alternation.*

13. State theorem III in words without the use of symbols a, b, c, d.

14. In the fig. of § 251 take the proportion by alternation.

15. Construct a triangle with a line parallel to the base. Measure three of the four segments into which the two sides are cut and by § 251 determine the fourth. Check the calculation by measurement.

16. Show how the conditions of Ex. 15 may be used to measure an inaccessible distance, over a pond for example.

17. On the school grounds drive four stakes A, B, C, not in a straight line and D in the line AC. Find the point for a 5th stake so as to measure AD indirectly.

258. THEOREM IV. *If* $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ *then* $\frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}$

SUG. Use theorem I and II.

259. INVERSION. The interchange of first and second, third and fourth terms of a proportion is *inversion.*

18. State theorem IV in words without the use of the symbols *a, b, c, d.*

19. In. Ex. 10, take the proportions by inversion. Can any of those given be obtained from the others by inversion?

260. THEOREM V. *If* $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, *then* $\frac{a+b}{b} = \frac{c+d}{d}$.

SUG. Add 1 to each member of the given proportion. Complete the proof.

261. COMPOSITION. The second proportion in Theorem V is obtained from the first by *composition.* This process is sometimes termed *addition.*

20. State theorem V in words without the use of the symbols *a, b, c, d.*

21. By composition, alternation, etc., prove in the triangle of Prop. I the proportion $\frac{AD}{BD} = \frac{EA}{CE}$.

22. Prove $\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC}$. Sug. § 256 and § 260.

23. Prove $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AD}{AE}$

24. Prove $\frac{BD}{CE} = \frac{AB}{AC}$ 25. Prove $\frac{AD}{AE} = \frac{BD}{CE}$

NOTE: When a line is parallel to the base of a Δ the proportions of Examples 21-25 are true and the line divides the two sides of the Δ proportionally.

262. THEOREM VI. *If* $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, *then* $\frac{a-b}{b} = \frac{c-d}{d}$

SUG. Subtract 1 from each member of the given proportion. Complete the proof.

263. DIVISION. The second proportion in Theorem VI is obtained from the first by *division*. This is sometimes termed *subtraction*.

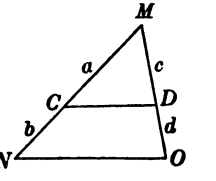
264. THEOREM VII. *If* $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, *then* $\frac{a+b}{a-b} = \frac{c+d}{c-d}$.

SUG. The second proportion is said to be obtained from the first by *composition and division*. It may be obtained from the final proportions in Theorems V and VI. Complete the proof.

26. In the accompanying figure, CD being parallel to NO, show that $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$; $\frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}$; $\frac{a+c}{a} = \frac{b+d}{b}$; $\frac{a+c}{c} = \frac{b+d}{d}$; $\frac{a}{a+b} = \frac{c}{c+d}$; $\frac{a-b}{a+b} = \frac{c-d}{c+d}$; $\frac{a-b}{c-d} = \frac{a+b}{c+d}$.

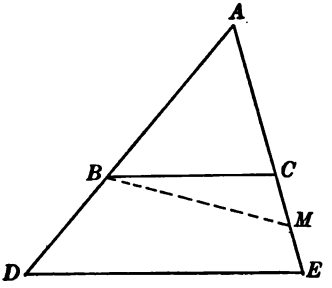
27. In the proportion $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$

$a = 12,\ b = 5,\ c = 6,$ find d.
$a = 3,\ c = 7,\ d = 14,$ find b.
$b = 12,\ c = 13,\ d = 6,$ find a.
$a = 13,\ b = 15,\ d = 45,$ find c.



PROPOSITION II.

265. THEOREM. *If a line divides two sides of a triangle proportionally, it is parallel to the base.*



Given $\frac{AB}{AD} = \frac{AC}{AE}$.

To Prove $BC \parallel DE$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Through B draw BM parallel to DE.

2. Then $\frac{AB}{AD} = \frac{AM}{AE}$. Why?

3. From this proportion and the hypothesis compare AC and AM.

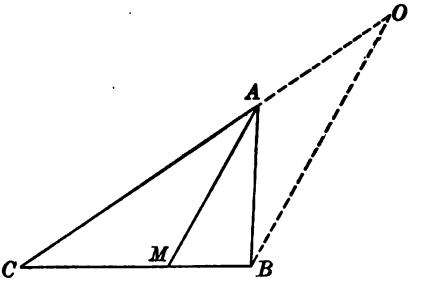
4. Where then must point M lie with respect to C?

Therefore—

266. FOURTH PROPORTIONAL. The fourth term of a proportion of four different terms is a *fourth proportional* to the three others in order.

PROPOSITION III.

267. THEOREM. *The bisector of an angle of a triangle divides the side opposite into sects which are proportional to the adjacent sides.*



Given $\triangle ABC$, with AM bisecting $\angle A$, and M the point of division of CB.

To Prove $\frac{CM}{MB} = \frac{AC}{AB}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw a line through $B \parallel$ to AM and extend CA to meet it at O. Compare AO and AB.

2. Compare $\frac{CM}{MB}$ with $\frac{CA}{AO}$; $\frac{CM}{MB}$ with $\frac{CA}{AB}$.

Therefore—

28. Given Ex. 26, $MN = 17$, $MO = 24$, $DO = 8$; find a, b, c.

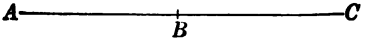
29. Given Ex. 26, $c = 12$, $d = 6$, and $MN = 30$, find the other parts.

268. INTERNAL DIVISION. A sect is divided into segments *internally* when the point of division lies in the segment.

AB is divided internally at C into the two segments AC and CB. Thus $AC + CB$ must equal AB. Ax. 9, § 49.

269. EXTERNAL DIVISION. A sect is divided into segments *externally* when the point of division lies in the extension of the sect.

AB is divided externally at C into segments AC and CB.



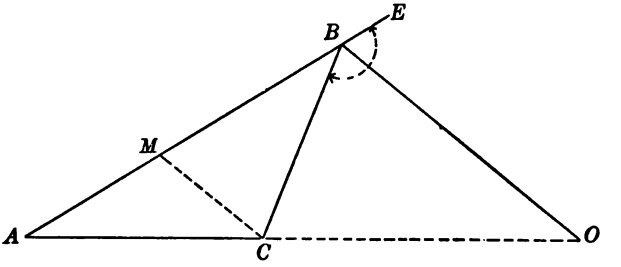
In order that in this case also the sum $AC + CB$ may equal AB, the algebraic idea of positive and negative quantities may be introduced. In moving a point from A to B through the point of division C, the directions AC and CB are the same for internal division and opposite for external division. In the latter case, in moving from C to B, the point traverses a second time part of segment AC but with respect to the direction of AC, sect CB is then *negative*. Hence in this case also one may write $AC + CB = AB$. Unless expressly stated the notations used in this text will not involve this use of directed lines.

30. Given three sects a, b, c, find x a fourth proportional by construction.

Sug. Construct an angle one side of which is the sum of the sects a and b. On the second side, beginning at the vertex of the angle, lay off sect c. Complete the construction and verify it.

PROPOSITION IV.

270. THEOREM. *The bisector of an external angle of a triangle divides the opposite side externally into sects proportional to the adjacent sides, if the triangle is not isosceles.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with $\angle CBE$ bisected by a line dividing the opposite side AC externally in point O.

To Prove $\frac{AO}{OC} = \frac{AB}{BC}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw $CM \parallel BO$.

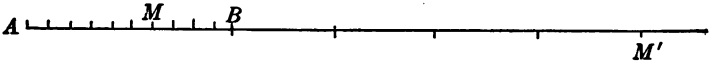
2. $\frac{AO}{CO} = \frac{AB}{MB} = \frac{AB}{BC}$. Why?

Therefore—

In the above figure and demonstration the inequality $AB > BC$ is assumed. Let the pupil prove the theorem for the case $AB < BC$ by lettering the figure the same and following the line of proof.

31. Divide a given sect in the ratio of three to four. Of two to three. Of five to three.

271. HARMONIC DIVISION. A line is divided *harmonically* when it is divided internally and externally in the same ratio.



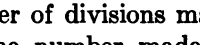
(*a*) AB is divided internally in the ratio of 6 to 4 at point M. $AB = 6 + 4 = 10$.

(*b*) AB is divided externally at M' in the ratio of 6 to 4. $AB = 6 + (-4) = 6 - 4 = 2$.

The unit used in the internal division is contained in AB ten times. In the case of external division the unit is contained in AB two times. In general, for internal division the number of divisions made in AB is the sum of the number made in AM and the number made in MB; for external division the number of divisions made in AB is the difference between the number made in AM' and the number made in $M'B$.

32. Divide a given sect a into two parts having the ratio of given sects b and c.

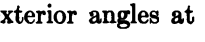
33. Divide sect CD harmonically in the ratio of 5 to 3.



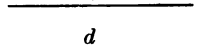
SUG. To find M divide CD into 8 equal parts and to find M' divide CD into 2 equal parts.

34. Divide a given sect harmonically in the ratio of 7 to 5. Into how many parts must it be divided?

35. If both the interior and exterior angles at a vertex of a triangle are bisected, the opposite side is divided harmonically by the bisectors.



36. Divide harmonically sect AB in the ratio of c to d.



36a. Divide harmonically the base of triangle ABC. Check by measurement.

37. Divide sect a of Ex. 32, into three equal parts. Into four equal parts.

38. Draw a tangent to a circle at a given point on the circle.

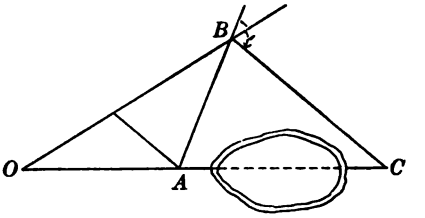
39. Two tangents drawn to a circle from the same point outside the circle are equal.

40. If two circles are concentric, all chords of the larger which are tangent to the smaller are equal.

41. The tangents to a circle at the extremities of a diameter are parallel.

42. Draw a triangle as large as may be on a given sheet of paper and draw a line parallel to the base and intersecting the sides. Measure three parts from which measurements the fourth part may be found. Compute this fourth part and then check by measuring.

43. It is desired to measure an inaccessible distance on a plane. What use can be made of Proposition § 270? What measurements shall be taken to determine AC?



44. A line drawn through the vertex of a triangle dividing the opposite side into segments proportional to the adjacent sides bisects the angle.

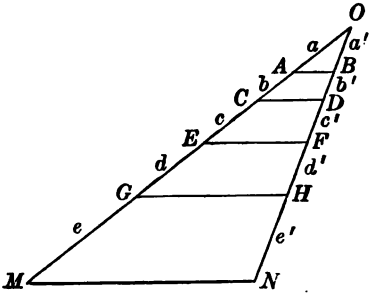
This is the converse of what proposition?

45. Given three non-parallel lines unlimited in length. Find points in one of them equally distant from the two others. How many such points are there?

CONTINUED PROPORTION—An equality of three or more equal ratios is a *continued proportion.*

PROPOSITION V.

272. THEOREM. *If several lines are drawn parallel to the base of a triangle intersecting the sides, the corresponding segments of the sides form a continued proportion.*



Given $\triangle OMN$ with lines parallel to the base MN, cutting the sides into the sects a, b, c, d, e and a', b', c', d', e', etc., respectively.

To Prove $\frac{a}{a'}=\frac{b}{b'}=\frac{c}{c'}=\frac{d}{d'}=\frac{e}{e'}$, etc.

Proof. SUG. 1. $\frac{a}{a'}=\frac{b}{b'}$. Why?

2. $\frac{a}{a'}=\frac{a+b}{a'+b'}$. Why?

3. $\frac{a+b}{a'+b'}=\frac{c}{c'}$. Why?

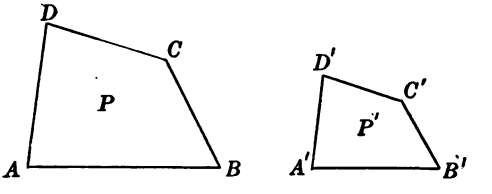
4. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

273. SIMILAR POLYGONS. Polygons which are mutually equiangular (§ 156) and which have their corresponding sides proportional are *similar polygons.*

274. HOMOLOGOUS. In similar polygons those points, lines, and angles which are similarly situated are *homologous.* In similar triangles the homologous sides are those lying opposite equal angles and the equal angles are those lying opposite homologous sides.

275. RATIO OF SIMILITUDE. In similar polygons the *ratio of similitude* is the ratio of any two homologous sides.



The polygons P and P' are similar, provided $\angle A = \angle A'$, $\angle B = \angle B'$, $\angle C = \angle C'$, etc., and $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D'}$, etc. Any one of the equal ratios $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$, etc., may be taken as the ratio of similitude.

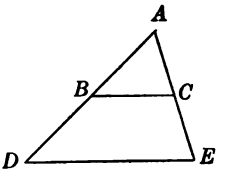
276. From the definition of similar polygons, it follows that, if two polygons are known to be similar, the homologous angles are equal and the homologous sides are proportional.

Polygons may be mutually equiangular but may not have their sides proportional or they may have their sides proportional without being mutually equiangular. The first condition is illustrated by the rectangle and the

square. The second condition is illustrated by a rhombus and a square or by a rectangle and a rhomboid if the sides are proportional.

It will be established *later* that triangles form an exception to the above statement, in that if either condition of the definition of similarity applies the other is a necessary consequence.

46. If a line bisects one side of a triangle and is parallel to the base it bisects the other side and equals half the base.



Given $AB = BD$ and $BC \parallel DE$.
Prove $AC = CE$ and $BC = \frac{1}{2} DE$.

47. If a line bisects two sides of a triangle, it is parallel to the base and equals one half the base.

See § 151. Use another method here.

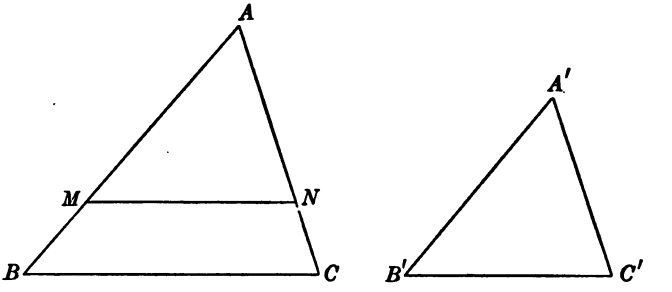
48. In the similar $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$, if $\angle A = \angle A'$, etc., which sides are homologous? If the sides AB and $A'B'$, etc., are homologous, which angles are equal?

If AB = 7 and A'B' = 9 what is the ratio of similitudes? If the ratio of similitude is $\frac{2}{3}$ what is the ratio of AB to A'B'?

What polygons have we proven mutually equi-angular? If two polygons are mutually equi-angular by hypothesis, what remains to be proven before we conclude the polygons similar.

PROPOSITION VI.

277. THEOREM. *Two triangles which are mutually equiangular are similar.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ with $\angle A = \angle A'$, $\angle B = \angle B'$, $\angle C = \angle C'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ similar.

Proof. SUG. 1. What part of the definition of similar triangles remains to be proved?

2. Place $\triangle A'B'C'$ upon $\triangle ABC$ so that A' falls on A, B' on AB at M and C' on AC at N. Can this be done? Why do it?

3. $MN \parallel BC$. Why?

4. $\frac{AB}{AM} = \frac{AC}{AN}$. Why? $\therefore \frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{AC}{A'C'}$.

5. What is yet to be proved?

6. Place $\triangle A'B'C'$ upon $\triangle ABC$ with B' on B, etc. Why?

7. What ratios can here be proved equal? Give all the steps.

8. Compare the three ratios $\frac{AB}{A'B''}$, $\frac{BC}{B'C''}$, $\frac{AC}{A'C''}$.

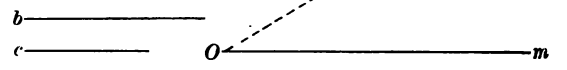
Therefore—

278. Cor. I. *Two triangles are similar if two angles of one are equal respectively to two angles of the other.*

279. Cor. II. *Two right triangles are similar if an acute angle of one equals an acute angle of the other.*

280. Cor. III. *Two triangles are similar if they are each similar to the same triangle.*

49. Given sect m. To divide m into segments proportional to a, b, c, etc.



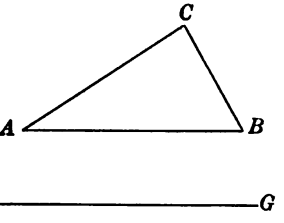
Sug. At one extremity O of m draw any line oblique to m and on this line from O lay off in order the given sects a, b, c, etc. Why? Complete the construction by reproducing the conditions of proposition V. Verify the results.

50. Draw a tangent to a given circle that shall make a given angle with a given line.

51. Two isosceles triangles are similar if the vertex angles of the two are equal.

PROPOSITION VII.

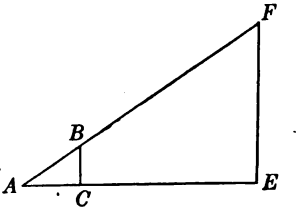
281. PROBLEM. *To construct upon a given line a triangle similar to a given triangle.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and the line segment EG.
To Construct upon EG a triangle similar to $\triangle ABC$.

SUG. Use § 278 and make the required construction.

52. To measure the height of a nearby object, as EF, lie upon the ground in such a position, AC, that the upper end, B, of a pole of known length placed vertically between the feet will appear in a line with the point F. The distances AC, CB and AE are known or easily measured. How may EF be determined?



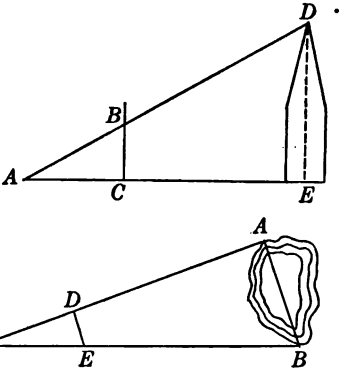
As an illustration of the preceding problem, a woodsman in determining the height of trees uses a pole as long as his own height. What one distance will he need to measure. Why?

53. How may shadows be used to determine the height of objects?

54. Determine as accurately as possible the height of some point on the school building.

NOTE. Not more than two should work together, the results being compared in class.

55. To measure a given height ED.



SUG. Set up a pole parallel to ED at some convenient point as C and while one person sights from a point A to D let a second person move a card upon the pole until a point B is found on the pole in the line AD. Make the required measurements and determine the height ED.

56. It is desired to find the distance AB indirectly. If DE is parallel to AB what measurements should be made?

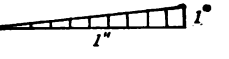
57. A triangle has two angles of 69° and 57° respectively, the included side being 26 rods in length. The length of the two other sides is required.

State the various methods thus far used for the indirect measurement of distances. Which is the easiest?

58. To construct sects .01, .02, .03, etc., to .09 inches in length. Divide a segment one inch long into 10 equal parts and at one extremity erect a perpendicular .1″ in length. Connect the other extremities of these two sects

forming a right triangle. The perpendiculars to the original sect at the points of division terminated by the hypotenuse are of the required lengths. Give the reasons for each step. Take upon the dividers .03, .05, .07 of an inch.

59. To construct a *diagonal scale* by which any segment may be measured in tenths and hundredths of an inch. The construction should be made on cardboard and preserved for future use, if the pupil has not already purchased a diagonal scale. Construct a square on a one-inch segment, dividing each side into tenths. Connect one vertex of the square with the first point of division on the opposite side, and through the remaining division points of this side draw lines parallel to the first line. Through the division points of the second pair of opposite sides draw parallels to the first pair. Read from the scale .36, .42, .73, .85, .92. Give authority for all statements made.

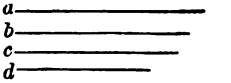


60. With the dividers take .27 inches from the scale and on some given line lay off a sect .27 inches long.

61. Construct a sect 3.75 inches long; 3.56 inches; 2.05 inches.

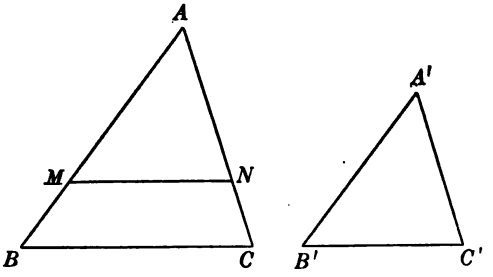
62. With the dividers and diagonal scale measure the sects *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*.

63. Open a jointed two-foot rule so that the ends are one foot apart. How long is the sect which connects points one inch from the joint? 2 inches? 5 inches? 9 inches? Use § 277.



PROPOSITION VIII.

282. THEOREM. *If two triangles have an angle of one equal to an angle of the other and the sides including the equal angles proportional, the triangles are similar.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle A'B'C'$ with $\angle A = \angle A'$ and $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{AC}{A'C'}$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What must be proved in addition to the hypothesis to make the triangles similar according to § 279?

2. Place $\triangle A'B'C'$ upon $\triangle ABC$ so that A' falls on A, $A'B'$ on AB, and $A'C'$ upon AC. Is this possible? Why do so?

3. Where do B' and C' fall?

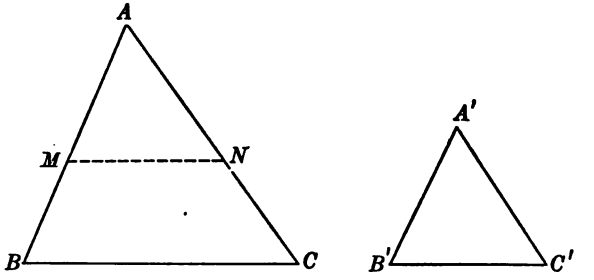
4. $B'C' \parallel BC$. Why?

5. Compare $\angle B'$ with $\angle B$. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION IX.

283. THEOREM. *Two triangles are similar if the corresponding sides are proportional.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ with $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{AC}{A'C'}$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. If any angle of $\triangle ABC$ equals the homologous angle of $\triangle A'B'C'$ the triangles are similar. Why?

2. Upon AB lay off AM equal to $A'B'$ and upon AC lay off AN equal to $A'C'$. Connect M and N. $\triangle AMN \sim \triangle ABC$. Why?

3. Compare the ratios $\frac{AM}{AB}$ and $\frac{MN}{BC}$; also $\frac{A'B'}{AB}$ and $\frac{B'C'}{BC}$.

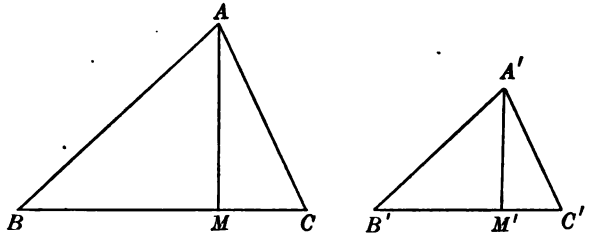
4. Compare MN and $B'C'$. Auth.? $\triangle AMN \cong \triangle A'B'C'$. Auth.

5. $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle A'B'C'$. Why?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION X.

284. THEOREM. *The ratio of homologous altitudes of similar triangles is equal to the ratio of similitude of the triangles.*



Given $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle A'B'C'$ with $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$ as the ratio of similitude, and altitude MA homologous to $M'A'$.

To Prove $\frac{MA}{M'A'} = \frac{AB}{A'B'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare $\triangle AMB$ and $A'M'B'$. § 280.

2. Show that MA and $M'A'$ are homologous sides of $\triangle AMB$ and $A'M'B'$.

3. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

285. COR. *In similar triangles homologous altitudes are proportional to the bases.*

SUG. Prove $\frac{MA}{M'A'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'}$.

Note.—In deriving proportions from similar polygons in the early study of the subject it is usually best to select homologous sides for the terms of each ratio, taking the antecedent from one polygon and the consequent from the other. If any other form of proportion is desired it can be deduced by the theorems on proportion.

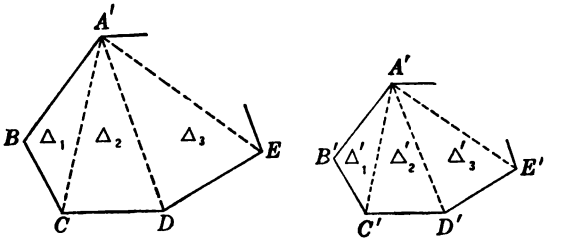
64. If the ends of the rule are six inches apart, how far apart are the pair of points marking divisions equally distant from the joint?

65. Open the rule various distances as above and determine the distances between corresponding divisions.

66. Work out the same exercises, using a one-foot jointed rule. Also with a six-inch jointed rule.

PROPOSITION XI.

286. THEOREM. *If two polygons are composed of the same number of triangles, similar each to each and similarly placed, the polygons are similar.*



Given polygons P and P'; P composed of Δ_1, Δ_2, Δ_3 . . . and P' of Δ_1', Δ_2', Δ_3' . . . ; $\Delta_1 \sim \Delta_1'$, $\Delta_2 \sim \Delta_2'$ . . .

To Prove $P \sim$ to P'.

Proof. Sug. 1. What is the test of similarity of polygons?

2. Compare $\angle B$ and $\angle B'$; $\angle C$ and $\angle C'$, etc.

3. Compare $\frac{AB}{A'B'}, \frac{BC}{B'C'}, \frac{BC}{B'C'}, \frac{CD}{C'D'}$, etc. To compare $\frac{BC}{B'C'}$ and $\frac{CD}{C'D'}$ relate each to the ratio $\frac{AC}{A'C'}$.

4. Apply the definition § 273.

287. Cor. *Two similar polygons can be divided into the same number of triangles similar each to each and similarly placed.*

Use figure § 286.

Prove that the polygons can be cut in the same number of $\triangle$; that $\triangle_1 \sim \triangle_1'$, $\triangle_2 \sim \triangle_2'$, etc.

Proof. Sug. 1. $\triangle_1 \sim \triangle_1'$. § 282.

2. To compare $\triangle_2$ and $\triangle_2'$, compare $\triangle ACD$ and $A'C'D'$. Compare ratios $\frac{AC}{A'C'}$ and $\frac{CD}{C'D'}$. To compare these ratios note their common relation to the ratio $\frac{BC}{B'C'}$.

67. In Prop. IX why not place $A'B'C'$ upon ABC as in Prop. VIII?

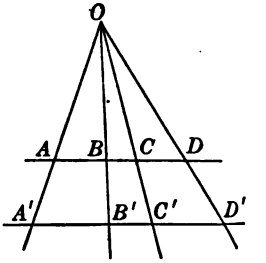
68. Let ABC and $A'B'C'$ be two similar triangles $AB = 7$ feet, $A'B' = 14$ feet, $AC = 5$ feet. Find the length of $A'C'$. If AB is 13 feet, AC and $A'B'$ are 11 feet and 10 feet respectively; find the length of $A'C'$.

69. The sides of a triangle ABC are respectively 4, 8, and 11 feet. In a similar triangle, $A'B'C'$, the side homologous to the 4-foot side of ABC is 6 feet. Find the two other sides of $A'B'C'$.

70. If triangles have their sides respectively parallel or perpendicular to each other they are similar.

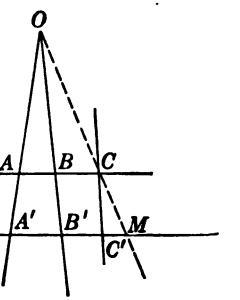
71. Straight lines drawn through any point intercept proportional segments upon two or more parallel lines.

To Prove $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D''}$ etc.



Sug. Compare the ratios $\frac{AB}{A'B''}$ $\frac{BC}{B'C''}$ with $\frac{OB}{OB'}$, etc. Complete the demonstration.

72. If two or more parallel lines are cut proportionally by a set of non-parallel secant lines, prove that the secant lines pass through a common point. That is, given $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C}$, etc., prove that the lines $A'A$, $B'B$, $C'C$, etc., pass through a fixed point O.



SUG. Let O be the intersection of two of the lines as $A'A$ and $B'B$. Connect O with C and extend OC to meet the second parallel at M. Compare the ratios $\frac{BC}{B'C'}$ and $\frac{BC}{B'M}$.

73. Given an isosceles triangle with vertex angle of 120°. Prove that the altitude from the vertex angle equals $\frac{1}{2}$ of one of the equal sides of the triangle.

74. If tangents to a circle be drawn at the extremities of a chord, these tangents make with each other an angle which is twice the angle between the chord and that diameter of the circle drawn through an extremity of the chord.

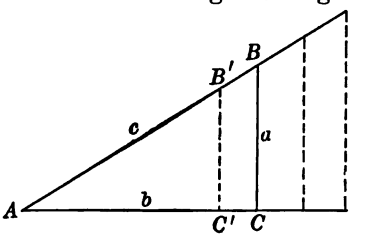
75. Given sect A the diagonal of a square, construct the square.

Work out three methods.

76. Points A and B are on the same side of line C. Find point X such that AX and BX make equal angles with C.

TRIGONOMETRIC RELATIONS

288. It has been established that in a right triangle with an angle of 30° the side opposite this angle is one-half the hypotenuse. This is true for every right triangle having an angle of 30°, for all such triangles are similar.



With a protractor carefully construct a right triangle with an angle of 40°, measure the hypotenuse and side opposite, and determine the ratio of the latter to the former. Repeat the construction several times and average the results. Do the same for a right triangle having an angle of 50°; of 60°; and tabulate the results.

289. SINE OF AN ACUTE ANGLE. The ratio of the side opposite an acute angle of a right triangle to the hypotenuse is the *sine of that angle.* Taking the notations from the figure of § 288 this is written symbolically as $\sin A = \frac{a}{c}$ and $\sin B = \frac{b}{c}$, or $c \sin A = a$ and $c \sin B = b$.

If $\sin A = .5$ then $a = .5\,c$. If $c = 40$ in., then $a = \frac{1}{2}$ of 40 in. = 20 in.

Note.—The pupil should clearly understand that the trigonometric ideas here explained are introduced as an aid to the study of certain simple figures and that the complete study of trigonometry will require more general definitions than those here given.

77. In a right triangle the sine of an angle is .75 and the hypotenuse is 20 inches. Find the length of the side opposite this angle.

78. If the hypotenuse is 20 inches and one side is 15 inches, what is the sine of the angle opposite this side?

Note.—Tables have been made in which the sines of angles for every degree and minute from 0° to 90° are recorded. A portion of such a table for intervals of one degree is to be found on p. 167.

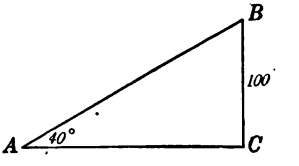
79. How many degrees in the angle found in Ex. 78? Use table p. 167.

80. The hypotenuse of a triangle with an angle of 40° is 60 inches. How long is the opposite side?

81. If the side opposite an angle of 35° is 34 inches, how long is the hypotenuse?

82. The hypotenuse is 75 inches, how many degrees in each angle if one side is 43 inches?

83. A flagstaff is 100 feet high. How long a rope is needed to reach from the top to a point on the ground at which the angle subtended by the pole is 40°?



290. COSINE OF AN ACUTE ANGLE. In a right $\triangle$ the ratio of the side adjacent to an acute angle to the hypotenuse is the *cosine of that angle.*

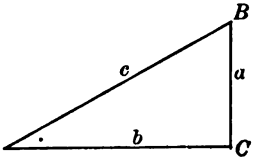
291. THE TANGENT OF AN ACUTE ANGLE. In a right triangle the ratio of the side opposite an acute angle to the side adjacent is the *tangent of that angle.*

In the figure of § 288 the relations involving tangents are written $\tan A = \frac{a}{b}$ and $\tan B = \frac{b}{a}$ or $b \cdot \tan A = a$ and $a \cdot \tan B = b$.

84. If a right triangle has an angle of 60°, it has already been shown that the ratio of the adjacent side to the hypotenuse is $\frac{1}{2}$. Draw such a triangle and verify the statement by measurement.

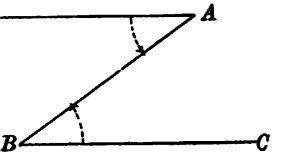
85. Draw a right triangle with an angle of 40°. Compute the cosine by measurement and check the result by the table. Do the same for 50° and 60°.

86. In the accompanying figure the relations involving cosines are written $\cos A = \frac{b}{c}$ and $\cos B = \frac{a}{c}$, or $c \cos A = b$ and $c \cos B = a$. If $\cos A = .5$ then $b = .5\ c$. If $c = 40$ inches, then $b = \frac{1}{2}$ of 40 inches = 20 inches.



87. One angle of a right triangle is 45° and the hypotenuse is 60 feet. How long is the side adjacent to the given angle? How long is the side opposite?

292. ANGLE OF ELEVATION ANGLE OF DEPRESSION. If at any point in a horizontal or level line a line be drawn to a second point above the horizontal, the angle thus formed is the *angle of elevation* of the second point. If at any point in a horizontal line a line be drawn to a second point below the horizontal the angle thus formed is the *angle of depression* of the second point.



If BC is a horizontal or level line the angle B is the angle of elevation of point A from B.

$\angle DAB$ is the angle of depression of B from A.

293. HORIZONTAL ANGLES. Angles in a horizontal or level plane are *horizontal* angles.

294. VERTICAL ANGLES. Angles of elevation and depression are *vertical* angles as distinguished from horizontal angles.

88. If the adjacent side is 20 inches and the hypotenuse is 63 inches, what is the cosine? How many degrees in the angle?

89. If the angle is 33° and the adjacent side is 37 feet, how long is the hypotenuse? How long is the side opposite?

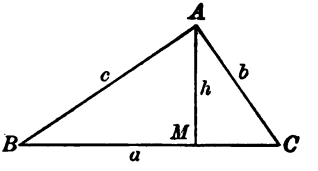
90. Construct a right triangle with an angle of 30°. Measure the two sides and compute the tangent of 30°.

91. What is the height of a flagstaff if the angle subtended by the staff at a distance of 75 feet is 35°?

295. In any triangle the sines of two acute angles have the same ratio as the sides opposite.

Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c, and acute angles B and C.

To Prove $\dfrac{\sin B}{\sin C} = \dfrac{b}{c}$.



SUG. Express $\sin B$ and $\sin C$. Complete the demonstration.

Note.—This is a very important proposition as it gives certain relations connecting the sides and angles of triangles other than right triangles. It is proved here only for the case in which the two angles concerned are *acute*. It will be proved in trigonometry without exception and is known as the law of sines.

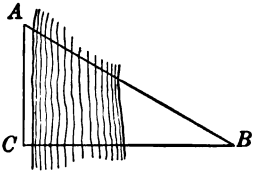
92. In $\triangle ABC$, $A = 45°$, $C = 76°$, and side $c = 60$ inches. Find the other sides of the triangle and $\angle B$.

SUG. 1. $\dfrac{\sin A}{\sin C} = \dfrac{a}{c}$ and $\therefore\ a = c.\dfrac{\sin A}{\sin C}$

2. Since all angles of this triangle are acute this law may be likewise used for angles A and B.

3. Consult the table and complete the problem.

93. Points B and C are on opposite banks of a river. Line AC along the bank is 150 feet long, $\angle A$ is 43°, $\angle C$ is 90°. How wide is the river?

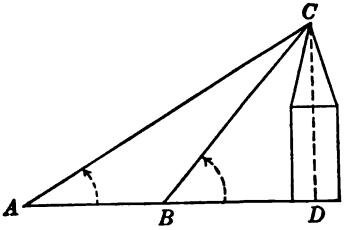


94. In a right triangle the sides are 3 inches, and 4 inches, respectively. What are the tangents of the acute angles?

95. A tower 75 feet high stands beside a river. The line from the top to a point on the opposite bank makes an angle of 52° with the tower. How wide is the river?

96. From the top of a tower the angle of depression of a vessel at sea is 15°. If the tower is 87 feet high, how far away is the vessel?

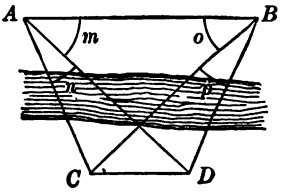
97. From a certain point the elevation of the top of a church tower is 43°. From a point 100 feet nearer the base of the tower the angle of elevation is 55°. Find height of the tower.



SUG. Find sect BC from $\triangle ABC$ and then CD in $\triangle BCD$. § 295.

98. Knowing the distance AC to be 8 miles, the angle A to be 40°, and the angle C to be 82°; find the inaccessible distance AB across the lake.

Knowing the distance AB to be 60 rods, $\angle M = 30°$, $\angle N = \angle 42°$, $\angle O = 25°$, $\angle P = 35°$. Compute the inaccessible distances AD, BC, and CD.



Draw figure to scale on paper and check your computation.

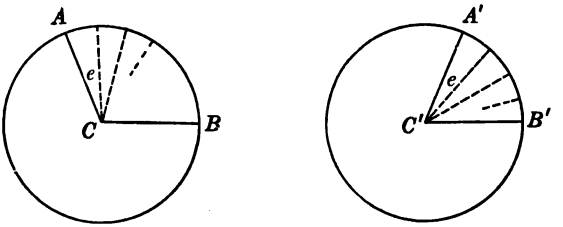
296. Trig. Table.

The Sines, Cosines and Tangents of Acute Angles.

Degrees	Sin.	Cos.	Tan.	Degrees	Sin.	Cos.	Tan.
1	.0175	.9998	.0175	46	.7193	.6947	1.0355
2	.0349	.9994	.0349	47	.7314	.6820	1.0724
3	.0523	.9986	.0524	48	.7431	.6691	1.1106
4	.0698	.9976	.0699	49	.7547	.6561	1.1504
5	.0872	.9962	.0875	50	.7660	.6428	1.1918
6	.1045	.9945	.1051	51	.7771	.6293	1.2349
7	.1219	.9925	.1228	52	.7880	.6157	1.2799
8	.1392	.9903	.1405	53	.7986	.6018	1.3270
9	.1564	.9877	.1584	54	.8090	.5878	1.3764
10	.1736	.9848	.1763	55	.8192	.5736	1.4281
11	.1908	.9816	.1944	56	.8290	.5592	1.4826
12	.2079	.9781	.2126	57	.8387	.5446	1.5399
13	.2250	.9744	.2309	58	.8480	.5299	1.6003
14	.2419	.9703	.2493	59	.8572	.5150	1.6643
15	.2588	.9659	.2679	60	.8660	.5000	1.7321
16	.2756	.9613	.2867	61	.8746	.4848	1.8040
17	.2924	.9563	.3057	62	.8829	.4695	1.8807
18	.3090	.9511	.3249	63	.8910	.4540	1.9626
19	.3256	.9455	.3443	64	.8988	.4384	2.0503
20	.3420	.9397	.3640	65	.9063	.4226	2.1445
21	.3584	.9336	.3839	66	.9135	.4067	2.2460
22	.3746	.9272	.4040	67	.9205	.3907	2.3559
23	.3907	.9205	.4245	68	.9272	.3746	2.4751
24	.4067	.9135	.4452	69	.9336	.3584	2.6051
25	.4226	.9063	.4663	70	.9397	.3420	2.7475
26	.4384	.8988	.4877	71	.9455	.3256	2.9042
27	.4540	.8910	.5095	72	.9511	.3090	3.0777
28	.4695	.8829	.5317	73	.9563	.2924	3.2709
29	.4848	.8746	.5543	74	.9613	.2756	3.4874
30	.5000	.8660	.5774	75	.9659	.2588	3.7321
31	.5150	.8572	.6009	76	.9703	.2419	4.0108
32	.5299	.8480	.6249	77	.9744	.2250	4.3315
33	.5446	.8387	.6494	78	.9781	.2079	4.7046
34	.5592	.8290	.6745	79	.9816	.1908	5.1446
35	.5736	.8192	.7002	80	.9848	.1736	5.6713
36	.5878	.8090	.7265	81	.9877	.1564	6.3138
37	.6018	.7986	.7536	82	.9903	.1392	7.1154
38	.6157	.7880	.7813	83	.9925	.1219	8.1443
39	.6293	.7771	.8098	84	.9945	.1045	9.5144
40	.6428	.7660	.8391	85	.9962	.0872	11.4301
41	.6561	.7547	.8693	86	.9976	.0698	14.3007
42	.6691	.7431	.9004	87	.9986	.0523	19.0811
43	.6820	.7314	.9325	88	.9994	.0349	28.6363
44	.6947	.7193	.9657	89	.9998	.0175	57.2900
45	.7071	.7071	1.0000				

PROPOSITION XII.

297. THEOREM. *In the same circle or in equal circles central angles are proportional to the arcs they intercept.*



Given $\odot C = \odot C'$ with central angles C and C' intercepting the arcs AB and $A'B'$ respectively.

To Prove $\dfrac{\angle C}{\angle C'} = \dfrac{\text{arc } AB}{\text{arc } A'B'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. To obtain the ratio $\dfrac{\angle C}{\angle C'}$ the angles must be measured. Auth.? Suppose the unit angle e to be contained in $\angle C$ exactly m times and in $\angle C'$ exactly n times.

2. $\therefore \dfrac{\angle C}{\angle C'} = \dfrac{m}{n}$. Why?

3. How do the small arcs compare?

4. To obtain the ratio $\dfrac{AB}{A'B'}$ the arcs must be measured. For a unit arc take one of the arcs intercepted by the unit angles. Auth.?

5. How many of these unit arcs in AB? Why? In $A'B'$? Why?

6. What then is the ratio of AB to $A'B'$?

7. Compare the ratios $\frac{\angle C}{\angle C'}$ and $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$.

Therefore—

Note.—This demonstration does not cover the case in which the two angles are incommensurable. See note on § 251.

298. DEGREE OF ARC. The arc intercepted by a central angle of one degree is a *degree of arc.*

299. COR. *The number of degrees of angle in a central angle equals the number of degrees of arc in the intercepted arc.*

For: If central angle A intercepts arc a then (§ 297) $\frac{\angle A}{1^\circ} = \frac{\text{arc } a}{1^\circ \text{ of arc}}$. But these two ratios are respectively the number of degrees in the angle and the arc.

This important theorem is usually stated thus: *A central angle is measured by its intercepted arc.* § 297.

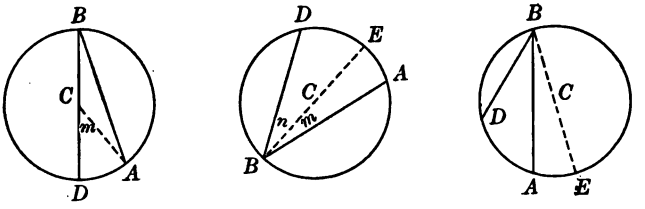
If A and a are notations for the angle and arc the relation between them expressed in symbols is $\angle A \asymp \text{arc } a$. (§ 50.)

99. Are all degrees of arc the same length?

100. How many degrees in a circle? In a semicircle? In a quadrant?

PROPOSITION XIII.

300. THEOREM. *An inscribed angle is measured by one-half its intercepted arc.*



Given $\odot C$ with the inscribed $\angle ABD$ intercepting the arc AD.

To Prove $\angle ABD = \frac{1}{2}$ arc AD.

Proof. There are three cases.

CASE I. One side of the angle, BD, is a diameter.

SUG. 1. Connect A and C. $\angle m = 2 \angle B$. Why?

2. $\therefore \angle B = \frac{1}{2} \angle m$.

3. $\therefore \angle B = \frac{1}{2}$ arc AD. Why?

CASE II. The center of the circle lies between the sides of the angle.

SUG. 1. $\angle m$ is measured by what? Why?

2. $\angle n$ is measured by what? Why?

3. $\angle B$ is measured by what? Why?

CASE III. The center of the circle is without the angle.

Proof. Left to the pupil.

Therefore—

Note.—This theorem may also be stated thus: The number of degrees in an inscribed angle is one-half the number in the intercepted arc, and the same change in wording may be made throughout the proof.

301. Cor. I. *An angle inscribed in a semicircle is a right angle.*

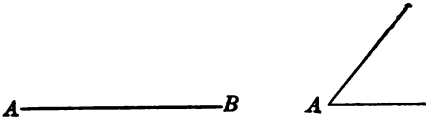
302. Cor. II. *A segment in which a right angle is inscribed is a semicircle.*

303. Cor. III. *All angles inscribed in the same or equal segments are equal.*

304. Cor. IV. *An angle inscribed in a segment greater than a semicircle is acute: in a segment less than a semicircle is obtuse.*

PROPOSITION XIV.

305. Problem. *To construct a right triangle when the hypotenuse and an acute angle are given.*



Given sect AB as the hypotenuse and $\angle A$ as an acute angle of a right triangle.

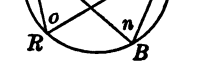
To Construct the triangle.

Sug. Construct the given angle at point A of AB. From B drop a $\perp$ to other side of $\angle A$. Complete the solution.

101. Construct a right triangle by means of Cor. I.

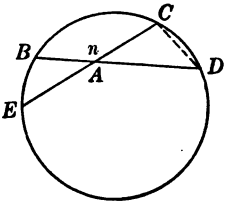
102. In $\odot C$ with diameter AB prove $\angle m = \angle n$.

103. If DE is a diameter of $\odot C$ which angle is the greater, m or n? n or o?



PROPOSITION XV.

306. THEOREM. *An angle formed by two intersecting chords is measured by one-half the sum of the intercepted arcs.*



Given $\odot$ with chords CE and BD intersecting at A.

To Prove $\angle n = \frac{1}{2}$ (arc BC + arc DE).

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw CD. $\angle n = \angle C + \angle D$. Why?

2. What is the measure of $\angle C$? Of $\angle D$?

3. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

104. To construct a perpendicular to a given line c from a point m on that line. See § 301.

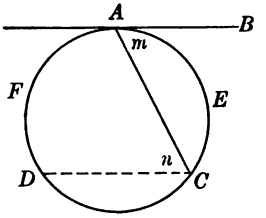
SUG. With a point C not on the line as center and with Cm as radius draw a circle cutting line c in a second point A. Draw AC meeting the circle again in B. Then mB is the required line. Why?

105. From a given point B not on a line c draw a perpendicular to c. See § 301.

SUG. Draw any oblique line through B meeting line c in point A. On AB as diameter, construct a circle meeting c in point m. The required line is mB. Why?

PROPOSITION XVI.

307. THEOREM. *An angle formed by a tangent and a chord drawn from the point of contact is measured by one-half the intercepted arc.*



Given the ⊙ with $\angle m$ formed by the tangent AB and the chord AC.

To Prove $\angle m = \frac{1}{2}$ arc AEC.

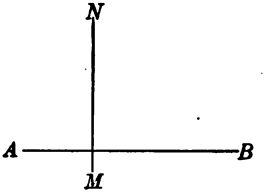
Proof. SUG. 1. Through C draw a chord parallel to AB, as CD.

2. Compare $\measuredangle m$ and n; arcs AEC AF and D. Auth.

3. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

106. Draw two lines, one from A and one from B meeting on the line MN so as to form a right angle. Is more than one construction possible?

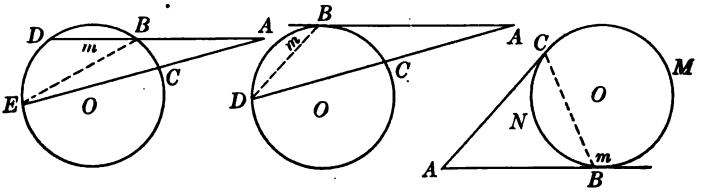


107. Measure the height of your school building using two angles of elevation and a distance. See 97, pg. 166,

108. With the four vertices of a square as centers and with radii equal to one-half a side of the square draw four circles. Show that one circle can be drawn which is externally tangent to the four circles.

PROPOSITION XVII.

308. THEOREM. *An angle formed by two secants, a secant and a tangent, or by two tangents is measured by one-half the difference of the intercepted arcs.*



Given ⊙ O with (I.) two secants AD and AE; (II.) secant AD and tangent AB; (III.) two tangents AB and AC.

To Prove I. $\angle A = \frac{1}{2}$ (arc DE — arc BC);

II. $\angle A = \frac{1}{2}$ (arc BD — arc BC);

III. $\angle A = \frac{1}{2}$ (arc BMC — arc BNC).

Proof. CASE I.

SUG. 1. Compare $\angle A$ with $\angle m$ and $\angle E$.

2. What is the measure of $\angle m$, $\angle E$, $\angle A$?

CASE II. Left to the pupil.

CASE III. Left to the pupil.

Therefore—

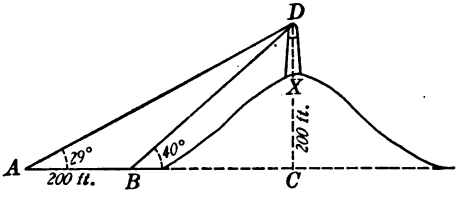
109. Show two methods of finding the *center* of an equilateral triangle.

Note.—The center of a polygon is that point which is equidistant from the vertices. Some polygons do not have centers.

110. Inscribe a triangle in a given circle similar to a given triangle

111. Circumscribe a triangle about a given circle similar to a given triangle.

112. On top of a hill 200 feet high is a tower. From one point in the level plane at the foot of the hill the elevation of the top of the tower is 29°. At a point 200 feet nearer the foot of the hill the elevation is 40°. How high is the tower?



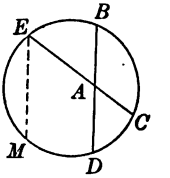
113. If two circles are tangent internally and through the point of tangency a line is drawn, the chords intercepted by the circles are proportional to the radii of the circles.

114. Two circles are tangent internally. Two lines are drawn from the point of tangency through the extremities of a diameter of one circle. Prove that they intersect the other circle in the extremities of a diameter.

115. Prove Ex. 114 above if the circles are tangent externally.

116. What is the locus of the vertex of the right angle of a right triangle with a given sect as hypotenuse? (§ 301 and 302.)

117. Construct a triangle having a given base, a given altitude, and a right vertex angle. Show that this problem is impossible if the altitude is more than half the base.

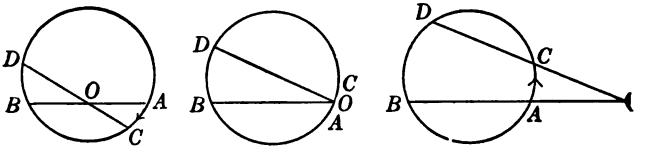


118. Prove Prop. XV from the accompanying figure in which $EM \parallel BD$.

119. In the same or in equal circles an angle inscribed in the smaller of two segments is greater than an angle inscribed in the larger segment.

PROPOSITION XVIII.

309. THEOREM. *An angle formed by two lines either or both of which may be a secant or a tangent to a circle is measured by one-half the sum of the intercepted arcs.*



Proof. SUG. 1. Is the theorem true if the lines intersect at the center? Why?

2. Is the theorem true if the intersection be anywhere within the circle? Why?

3. If the intersection points approach nearer and nearer to the circle what happens to one of the intercepted arcs? Suppose that when the point of intersection is on the circle this arc be considered as zero. Is the theorem true for this case?

4. A comparison of the figures shows that as O moves from a position within the $\odot$ to a position on the circle the points O, A and C come together and as O passes without the circle they again separate but with this difference, that A and C, points in which the lines BA and DC meet the circle, in the third figure have their relative positions reversed, so that the arcs AC in the first and third figures are opposite in direction and if the idea of positive and negative lines

be introduced the arc $-CA$ which enters the formula for the third case may be written as $+AC$. § 269.

5. For each case then the measure of the angle at O is $\frac{1}{2}$ (arc DB + arc AC).

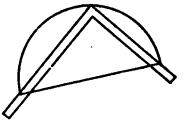
The pupil should complete the demonstration for the case involving one or two tangent lines.

310. CONTINUITY. A theorem can sometimes be stated in such a general way as to cover two or more particular theorems. Especially is this true in geometry when a distinction is made as to the direction of lines represented algebraically by the use of positive and negative quantities. Such a theorem is that of § 309 which is proved by the *principle of continuity.*

120. What is the locus of the vertex of a triangle having a given base and altitude?

121. A chord is met at one extremity by a tangent forming an angle of 75°. How many degrees in the arc that is subtended by the chord?

122. In making a pattern for a certain casting it is necessary to construct a true semicircle. How may this be done with a carpenter's square?

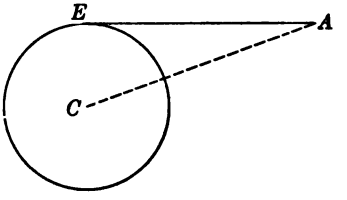


123. At a given point on a circle construct a tangent to the circle.

124. AB and CD are two chords of a circle intersecting in the point O. Prove $\triangle AOD$ and $\triangle COB$ mutually equiangular. Prove the same for $\triangle AOC$ and $\triangle BOD$.

PROPOSITION XIX.

311. PROBLEM. *From a given point without a circle to construct a tangent to the circle.*



Given $\odot C$ with point A without.

To Construct a tangent to $\odot C$ from A.

SUG. 1. Connect C and A. The problem is to determine the point of tangency.

2. What relation exists between the tangent and the radius at the point of tangency?

3. What is the locus of a point with respect to AC satisfying this condition?

4. Complete the construction. § 302.

5. How many such tangents are there? Why?

6. Make a second construction drawing only such portions of the auxiliary lines as are necessary.

312. FIND THE LOCUS:

(*a*) Of centers of circles having a given radius and tangent to a given line.

(*b*) Of centers of circles tangent to a given line at a given point.

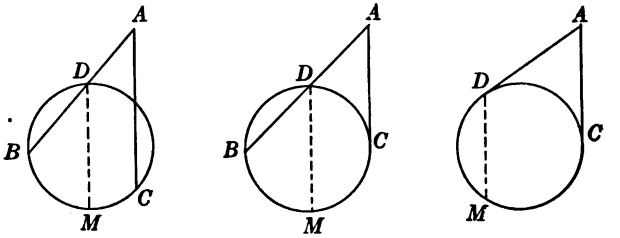
(*c*) Of centers of circles having a given radius and tangent to a given circle.

(*d*) Of centers of circles tangent to two intersecting lines.

(*e*) Of centers of circles having a given radius and passing through a given point.

(*f*) Of centers of circles passing through two fixed points.

125. Prove Prop. XVII by drawing from the point D in the accompanying figures a line $DM \parallel AC$.



126. Two circles intersect in the points A and D. Lines AB and AC are diameters. Prove that B, D, and C lie in a straight line.

127. The sum of the distances from points in the base of an isosceles triangle to the legs is constant.

128. If a radius of one circle is a diameter of another the circles are tangent and any line drawn from the point of contact to the outer circle is bisected by the inner one.

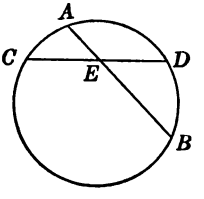
129. One side of an equilateral inscribed hexagon is equal to the radius of the circle.

130. Construct a circle having a given radius through a given point and tangent to a given line.

131. An angle formed by two tangents is measured by a semi-circle minus the nearer arc.

PROPOSITION XX.

313. THEOREM. *If two chords intersect the ratio of either segment of the one to either segment of the other is equal to the ratio of the remaining segment of the second to the remaining segment of the first.*



Given a circle with chords AB and CD intersecting at E.

To Prove $\frac{AE}{DE} = \frac{CE}{BE}$ or $\frac{AE}{CE} = \frac{DE}{BE}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. As no ▲ are given in the theorem, two ▲ must be constructed one of which contains the required antecedents and the other the required consequents. Note § 285.

2. Prove the constructed triangles similar.

3. Establish the required proportions.

Therefore—

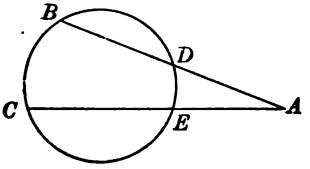
Make a second construction and proof for this proposition.

314. COR. *The product of the segments of one of two intersecting chords of a circle equals the product of the segments of the other.*

To Prove $AE \times EB = CE \times ED$.

PROPOSITION XXI.

315. THEOREM. *If two secants intersect without a circle, the ratio of the first to the second is equal to the ratio of the external segment of the second to the external segment of the first.*



Given a circle with secants AB and AC intersecting the circle in the points D and E respectively.

To Prove $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AE}{AD}$.

Proof. The desired conclusions will at once follow if two triangles can be constructed, one of them containing the required antecedents and the other the required consequents. Try such a construction and complete the demonstration. NOTE § 284.

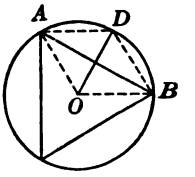
Therefore—

316. COR. *If two secants meet without a circle the product of one secant and its external segment equals the product of the other secant and its external segment.*

132. The line joining the center of a circle with an outside point bisects the angle made at that point by the two tangents to the circle.

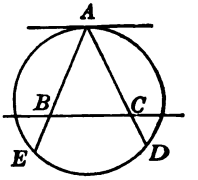
133. What has been done to the proportion $\frac{m}{n} = \frac{o}{s}$ to produce $\frac{m+o}{o} = \frac{n+s}{s}$? $\frac{m+n}{m} = \frac{o+s}{o}$? $\frac{m+n}{o+s} = \frac{n}{s}$?

134. Inscribe an equilateral triangle in a circle and prove that the radius perpendicular to a side is bisected by the side.



SUG. $OADB$ is a $\square$. Why?

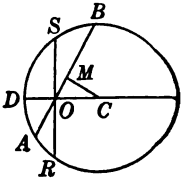
135. Two chords drawn from a point on a circle are *inversely* proportional to the segments of the chords included betwen the tangent at their common point and a line parallel to this tangent.



TO PROVE. $\frac{AD}{AE} = \frac{AB}{AC}$.

See note, § 284.

136. The locus of the middle points of all chords which pass through a given point is a circle the diameter of which is the line joining the given point and the center of the given circle.



SUG. Prove that the circle described on OC is the required locus.

137. In a given circle two radii are drawn to the midpoints of two chords, and the angles made by them with the sect joining their feet upon the chords are equal; prove the chords are equal.

138. What line does the center of a ladder describe as its foot is drawn directly away from the building against which it leans, the ground being level?

139. What is the locus of the center of a given sect whose end points continually touch the respective sides of a right angle?

SUG. Ex. 138.

317. THEOREM. *In a series of equal ratios the ratio of the sum of the antecedents to the sum of the consequents equals any of the given ratios.*

Given $\frac{a}{a'} = \frac{b}{b'} = \frac{c}{c'} = \frac{d}{d'}$, etc.

To Prove $\frac{a+b+c+d+\ldots}{a'+b'+c'+d'+\ldots} = \frac{a}{a'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let n represent the common value of the given ratios. Then $a = na'$, $b = nb'$, etc.

2. $\therefore\ a+b+c+d+\ldots = n(a'+b'+c'+d'+\ldots)$

3. $\therefore\ \frac{a+b+c+d+\ldots}{a'+b'+c'+d'+\ldots} = n = \frac{a}{a'}$.

4. Give the authority for each step and verify by a particular set of numbers.

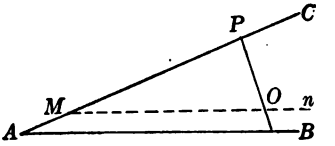
Therefore—

140. Give a summary of the tests for similarity of triangles.

141. Through a given point draw a line so that the sect intercepted between two given intersecting lines is bisected at the given point.

SUG. Through the given point, o, draw a line parallel to one of the given lines.

142. Through a point included between the sides of an angle draw a line so that the sect intercepted between the sides shall be divided in the ratio of 1 to 4.



SUG. Through O draw $MN \parallel AB$. Lay off on side AC a sect MP equal to $4AM$. Draw PO and extend to AB.

PROPOSITION XXII.

318. THEOREM. *The ratio of the perimeters of two similar polygons equals the ratio of similitude of the polygons.*

Given two similar polygons P and P' with sides a, b, c, . . . and a', b', c', . . . respectively, and perimeters p and p' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{p}{p'} = \frac{a}{a'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Write out in detail the relation involving the sides of P and P'.

2. Express the ratio $\frac{p}{p'}$ in terms of the sides.

3. Complete the proof.

Therefore—

319. MEAN PROPORTION. A proportion in which the means are the same is a *mean proportion.*

320. MEAN PROPORTIONAL. The second or third term in a mean proportion is a *mean proportional.*

321. THIRD PROPORTIONAL. The fourth term of a mean proportion is the *third proportional.*

$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{b}{c}$ is a mean proportion. The mean proportional is b and the third proportional is c.

143. The three altitudes upon the three sides of an equilateral triangle are equal.

PROPOSITION XXIII.

322. THEOREM. *A mean proportional of two numbers equals the square root of their product.*

Given $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{b}{c}$.

To Prove $b = \sqrt{ac}$.

Proof. $ac = b^2$. Why? Whence $b = ?$

144. If $\frac{4}{x} = \frac{x}{9}$ find x.

145. If $\frac{3}{x} = \frac{x}{7}$ find x.

146. If $\frac{2}{5} = \frac{5}{x}$ find x.

147. $\frac{\frac{7}{12}}{x} = \frac{x}{21}$ find x.

148. Inscribe in a circle an isosceles triangle with a diameter of the circle as its base. How many degrees in the vertex angle?

149. If a right triangle is inscribed in a circle, the hypotenuse is always a diameter.

150. A line is drawn from the vertex of a triangle to the base. What is the locus of a point that divides it always in the same ratio?

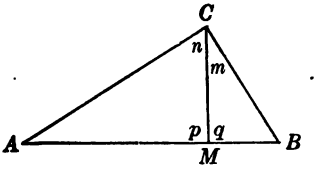
PROPOSITION XXIV.

323. THEOREM. *If the altitude on the hypotenuse of a right triangle be drawn:*

I. *The triangle is divided into two triangles, each similar to the given triangle and similar to each other;*

II. *The altitude is a mean proportional to the segments of the hypotenuse;*

III. *Each side of the given triangle is a mean proportional between the whole hypotenuse and the adjacent side.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with altitude MC drawn to the hypotenuse AB.

To Prove I. $\triangle AMC \sim \triangle ACB$, $\triangle CMB \sim \triangle ACB$, $\triangle AMC \sim \triangle CMB$.

II. MC a mean proportional to AM and MB, *i. e.*, $\frac{AM}{MC} = \frac{MC}{MB}$.

III. AC a mean proportional to AB and AM, *i. e.*, $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AC}{AM}$ or BC a mean proportional to AB and

MB, *i. e.*, $\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{BC}{MB}$

Proof. I. Sug. $\angle A$ is common to $\triangle AMC$ and ACB. $\therefore \triangle AMC \sim \triangle ACB$. Why? Complete the proof of I.

II. Sug. In $\triangle AMC$ and CMB sides AM and MC are homologous, also sides MC and MB. Why? Complete the proof.

Apply carefully § 284 note. The difficulty in this case lies in the fact that MC is in two different triangles.

III. Sug. Use $\triangle AMC$ and ACB, noting the equal angles. Select the homologous sides for each ratio in accordance with the suggestion of 284.

Therefore—

324. Cor. *In a semicircle a perpendicular from the arc upon the diameter is a mean proportional to the segments of the diameter.*

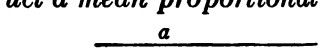
151. Use the preceding corollary to construct a mean proportional to the sects a and b.

152. A line drawn from a point on a circle to the end of a diameter is a mean proportional to the diameter and the adjacent segment cut off by the perpendicular from the point to the diameter.

153. By means of proposition XXIV, part III, construct a mean proportional to two given sects. Also a third proportional.

PROPOSITION XXV.

325. PROBLEM. *Construct a mean proportional to two given sects.*



Given sects a and b.

To Construct sect x so that $\frac{a}{x} = \frac{x}{b}$.

Construction

SUG. 1. Make a drawing of the figure for Case II, Prop. XXIV, to see which lines must be taken for a, b, x. Then construct the figure from the sects a and b or use Cor. 324.

154. If the altitude upon the hypotenuse divides the hypotenuse into two segments of 4 and 9 inches, respectively, what is the length of the altitude?

155. One segment is 8 inches and the adjacent side is 12 in. Find the hypotenuse and the other side.

156. Of all parallelograms having equal bases and altitudes the rectangle has the least perimeter.

157. The diagonals of an isosceles trapezoid are equal.

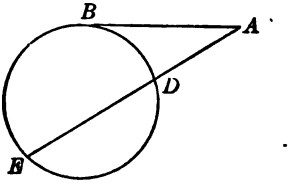
158. If two parallel straight lines are cut by a transversal, the bisectors of the interior angles on the same side of the transversal are perpendicular to each other.

159. Let a be a given straight sect with an unlimited straight line intersecting it. Construct a right triangle with hypotenuse a and the vertex of the right angle on the second line.

160. If a side of a triangle is parallel to the bisector of an exterior angle of the triangle, the triangle is isosceles

PROPOSITION XXVI.

326. THEOREM. *If from a common point a tangent and a secant be drawn to a circle, the tangent is a mean proportional between the secant and its external segment.*



Given a tangent AB and a secant AE of the circle.

To Prove $\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AB}{AE}$

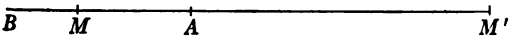
Proof. SUG. 1. Indicate a triangle having AE and AB as sides. Do the same for AB and AD. These $\triangle$ are similar. Why?

2. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

327. EXTREME AND MEAN RATIO. A sect is divided into *extreme and mean ratio* when the greater segment is a mean proportional to the whole sect and the smaller segment.

AB is divided internally at M in extreme and mean ratio if $\frac{AB}{AM} = \frac{AM}{MB}$ and externally at M' in extreme and mean ratio if $\frac{AB}{AM'} = \frac{AM'}{M'B}$.

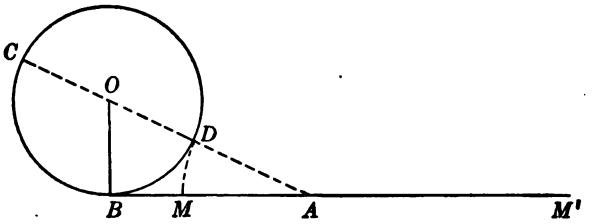


PROPOSITION XXVII.

328. PROBLEM. *To divide a sect internally and externally into extreme and mean ratio.*

Given sect AB.

To Divide AB at M and at M' so that $\frac{AB}{AM} = \frac{AM}{BM}$ and $\frac{AB}{AM'} = \frac{AM'}{M'B}$ respectively.



I. SUG. 1. Erect a perpendicular to AB at B (or at A) equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ AB. With the free extremity O of this perpendicular as a center and OB as a radius describe a circle. Connect A and O and extend the join line to meet the circle again at C. Take $AM = AD$.

2. $\frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{AB}{AD} = \frac{AB}{AM}$. Why?

3. Form a new proportion from this by *division* and complete the proof.

4. Therefore M is the required point of *internal* division.

II. SUG. 1. Extend BA to M' so that $AM' = AC$.

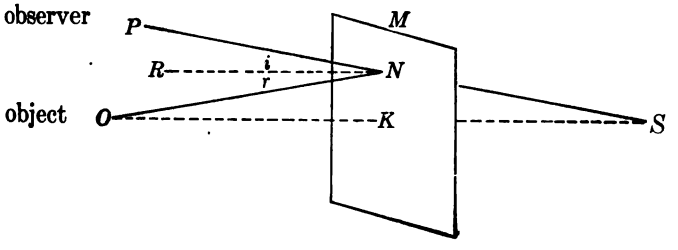
2. $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AD}{AB}$. Why?

3. Form a new proportion from this by *composition* and complete the proof.

4. Therefore M' is the required point of *external* division.

329. It must be remembered in the series of theorems following that in the operations of multiplication, division, squaring, etc., the symbols represent numbers, viz: The measures of the lines of the same name. *Sect a* $\times$ *sect b* means the product of the numerical measures of sect *a* and sect *b*. For brevity the operation of measuring will be assumed to have been done and the notation of sect will also represent the measure of it. The operations performed in the demonstrations are then those of algebra. § 252.

161. In physics one learns that the angle of incidence equals the angle of reflection. In the figure these angles are *i* and *r* respectively. Prove that an object viewed in the mirror *M* seems as far behind the mirror as it is in front of it.



162. The bisectors of the angles of a non-equilateral parallelogram form a rectangle.

163. a, b, c are the angles of an inscribed triangle. a is four times b and b is one seventh of c. How many degrees in the arcs of the circle subtended by the respective sides of the triangle?

164. In the figure of Prop. XVI draw the diameter AM and prove the theorem.

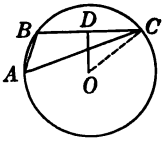
165. Construct a mean proportional to two given sects a and b by use of Case III of Prop. XXIV.

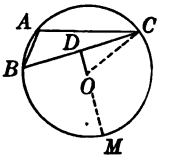
166. The bisectors of all angles inscribed in the same segment pass through a common point. Where is that point?

167. Draw any two equal non-intersecting chords of a circle and connect their adjacent extremities. Prove that the connecting chords are parallel.

168. Draw any two parallel chords and connect their extremities. Prove that the connecting chords are equal.

169. ABC is a triangle inscribed in a circle with center O. Line OD is perpendicular to BC. Prove $\angle DOC$, or its supplement, equal to $\angle A$. Suppose the center of the circle is within the triangle?





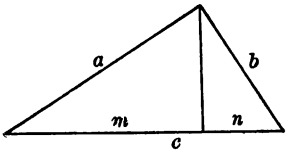
170. If the hypotenuse is divided by the altitude from the right angle, the ratio of the squares of the sides equals the ratio of the adjacent segments of the hypotenuse.

To Prove: $\frac{a^2}{b^2} = \frac{m}{n}$. (Use figure of Prop. XXVIII)

SUG. $a^2 = mc$. Why? $b^2 = ?$ Complete the proof.

PROPOSITION XXVIII.

330. THEOREM. *The square of the hypotenuse of a right triangle equals the sum of the squares of the two other sides.*



Given a right $\triangle$ with sides a and b and hypotenuse c.

To Prove $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.

Proof. SUG. 1. $a^2 = mc$. Why? $b^2 = ?$

2. $a^2 + b^2 = ?$

Notice that m and n are here coefficients of c.

Therefore—

Another proof is found in § 376.

331. COR. I. *The square of either side of a right triangle equals the difference of the squares of the hypotenuse and the other side.*

332. COR. II. *The ratio of the diagonal to the side of a square is* $\sqrt{2}$

171. If the side of a square is 4 inches, what is the diagonal? Find the result correct to two decimal places.

172. One side of a rectangle is 4 inches and a second side is 9 inches. Find the diagonal correct to two decimal places.

173. A carpenter squares the frame of a building by measuring 6 feet from the corner on one side, 8 feet from the corner on the other, and then draws the frame until the distance across from the ends of the sects is 10 feet. Verify the correctness of his plan.

174. The distance from A to B is desired. A distance 70 rods is measured from B to C, so that the angle BAC is 90°. If AC is found to be 60 rods, how long is AB?

175. The diagonal of a rectangle is 12 inches. Find the sum of the squares of the four sides.

176. Two sides of a rectangle are 6 and 8. Find the diagonal. Do the same for sides 5 and 12; 6 and 11.

177. Construct a right triangle and the altitude upon the hypotenuse. Measure the segments of the hypotenuse and compute the altitude. Check your work by measuring the altitude.

178. Find a mean proportional to 3 and 5; to 4 and 7; to 6 and 11. Use algebra and also geometric construction.

179. If $x^2 = \sqrt{3 \times 4}$ find x. Sug. x is a mean proportional to 3 and 4. Why? Construct x geometrically and verify by measurement.

180. Find a line the length of which is $\sqrt{12}$.

Sug. $\sqrt{12} = \sqrt{3 \times 4}$. Make two other constructions. Use § 324.

181. Find $\sqrt{8}$ by the measurement of a line. Also $\sqrt{5}$, $\sqrt{9}$, $\sqrt{15}$.

Sug. Use § 324 and verify results by extracting the roots.

PROPOSITION XXIX.

333. THEOREM. *The square of the sum of two sects equals the sum of the squares of the sects plus twice the product of the sects.*

SUG. If a and b are the measures of the two given sects, § 329, it is necessary and sufficient to prove the formula $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab$.

The pupil should do this by performing the indicated multiplication.

Another proof is found in P. 243.

182. The sum of the squares of the two diagonals of a rectangle equals the sum of the squares on the four sides.

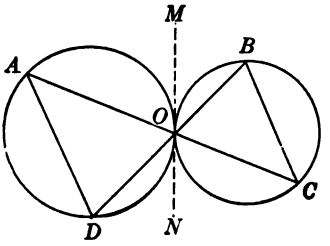
183. Find the length of the side of a square correct to two decimal places if the diagonal is 1. If the diagonal is 18; 2; 32; 26; 4; 12.

184. Find the diagonal of a square the side of which is 8. Do the same if the side is 25; 3.15; 4.18.

185. The product of the sum of two sects by their difference equals the difference of the squares of the sects.

TO PROVE: $(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 - b^2$.

186. If two circles are tangent and two secants are drawn through the point of contact the two chords joining the points in which the secants meet the respective circles are parallel



PROVE: $AD \parallel BC$.

SUG. Draw the common tangent MN. Compare $\measuredangle AOM$ and CON; $\measuredangle AOM$ and ADO; $\measuredangle CON$ and OBC.

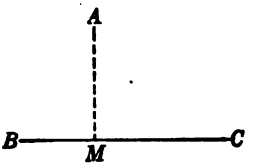
PROPOSITION XXX.

334. THEOREM. *The square of the difference of two sects equals the sum of the squares of the sects minus twice the product of the sects.*

Given a and b as the measures of the two sects.

To Prove $(a-b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab$.

Proof. Left to the pupil.



335. PROJECTION OF A POINT. The *projection of a point* upon a line is the foot of the perpendicular drawn from the point to the line.

If AM is perpendicular to BC, then M is the projection of A upon BC.

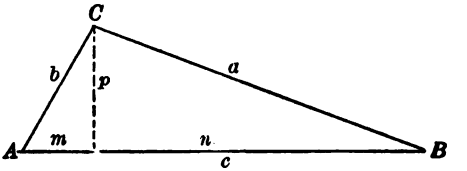
336. PROJECTION OF A SECT. The *projection of a straight sect* upon a straight line is the sect between the projections of the extremities of the given sect upon the same line.

187. If a quadrilateral is circumscribed about a circle, the sum of one pair of opposite sides is equal to the sum of the other pair.

188. A boy in traveling from his home A to a town B on his wheel traveled 16 miles in a straight line and then 24 miles in a line at right angles to the first road. How many miles would he have saved by traveling along the railroad which ran in a straight line from A to B?

PROPOSITION XXXI.

337. THEOREM. *The square of the side opposite an acute angle of a triangle equals the sum of the squares of the two other sides minus twice the product of one of those sides and the projection of the other upon it.*



Given a $\triangle$ with the sides a, b, c, side a being opposite an acute angle and m being the projection of b upon c.

To Prove $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2mc$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Drop a perpendicular, p, from vertex C to side c.

2. $a^2 = p^2 + n^2 = p^2 + (c - m)^2 = b^2 - m^2 + (c - m)^2 = b^2 - m^2 + c^2 + m^2 - 2mc =$ $b^2 + c^2 - 2mc$.

Therefore—

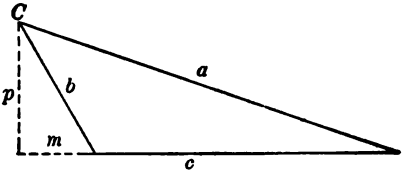
189. **Given** $a = 7$, $b = 5$, $c = 10$.
Find m in figure, Prop. XXXI.

190. Divide a sect 8 inches long internally into extreme and mean ratio. Measure the segments and arithmetically check the construction.

191. A chord of a circle, AB, is 5 inches long. If it be produced to a point C so that the external segment BC is 10 inches, how long is the tangent from C?

PROPOSITION XXXII.

338. THEOREM. *The square of the side opposite an obtuse angle of a triangle equals the sum of the squares of the two other sides plus twice the product of one of those sides and the projection of the other upon it.*



Given a $\triangle$ with sides a, b, c, side a being opposite an obtuse angle, and m being the projection of b upon c.

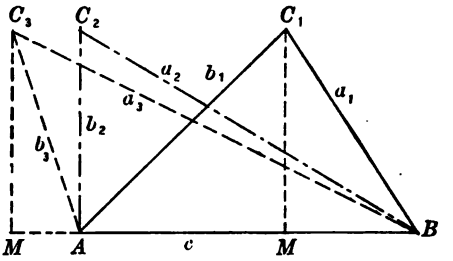
To Prove $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 + 2mc$.

Proof. SUG. 1. The projection m will in this case lie on the extension of c.

2. Complete the proof in a manner similar to the method of § 337.

339. The theorems of § 330, § 337, and § 338 may be included in one statement which may be proved by the *principle of continuity* (§ 310) as soon as a distinction is made as to the direction of the line representing the projected side. The theorem may be stated in general as follows:

The square of any side of a triangle equals the sum of the squares of the other two sides minus twice the product of one of those sides and the projection of the other upon it.



Given a $\triangle$ with sides a, b, c, $\angle A$ being acute, obtuse, or right, and m, the projection of b upon c, being considered as positive when it extends in the direction AB and negative when it extends in the opposite direction.

To Prove $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2mc$.

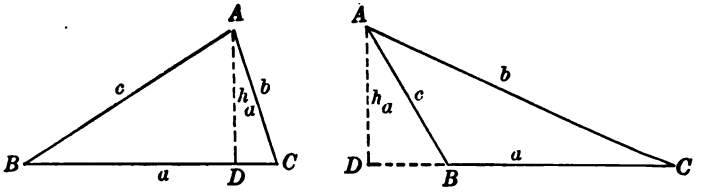
Discussion. As angle A increases from an acute angle to an obtuse angle, passing through the value 90°, point M, the projection of vertex C upon side c, moves towards the vertex A, passes through this point when $\angle A = 90°$, and passes out on the extension of side c through A when $\angle A$ becomes obtuse. For $\angle A$ acute, m is positive; for $\angle A = 90°$, m is 0; and for $\angle A$ obtuse, m is negative.

The formula $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2mc$ for these three values of m reduces to the formulas previously proved for these three cases in § 337, § 330, and § 338, respectively.

This theorem will be met again in trigonometry under the name of *The Law of Cosines.*

PROPOSITION XXXIII.

340. PROBLEM. *To find any altitude of a triangle in terms of its sides.*



Given $\triangle$ with sides a, b, c, and h_a the altitude upon a. *To find* h_a in terms of a, b, c.

SUG. 1. $h_a^2 = b^2 - \overline{DC}^2$ and $c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2a \times DC$.

2. $\therefore \quad DC = \dfrac{(a^2 + b^2 - c^2)}{2a}$.

3. $\therefore \quad h_a^2 = b^2 - \left[\dfrac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2a}\right]^2$

$$= \left[b - \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2a}\right] \quad \left[b + \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2a}\right]$$

$$= \frac{2ab - a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{2a} \times \frac{2ab + a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2a}$$

$$= \frac{(c - a + b)\ (c + a - b)\ (a + b - c)\ (a + b + c)}{4a^2}$$

If $a = 16$, $b = 11$ and $c = 13$, find h_a. Simplify algebraically before extracting root.

4. Let $2s = a + b + c$;

$2(s - a) = c - a + b$,

$2(s - b) = c + a - b$,

$2(s - c) = a + b - c$, whence,

$$h_a = \frac{2}{a}\sqrt{(s-a)\ (s-b)\ (s-c)\ s}$$

5. Similarly,

$$h_b = \frac{2}{b}\sqrt{(s-a)\ (s-b)\ (s-c)\ s}$$

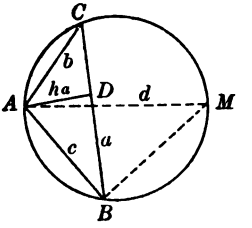
$$h_c = \frac{2}{c}\sqrt{(s-a)\ (s-b)\ (s-c)\ s}$$

192. Fasten a rubber band to the two points of a pair of dividers. Let the rubber band represent side a in the triangles of § 339, and the arms of the dividers the sides b and c. The angle made by the arms then represents angle A. As the dividers are slowly opened, note the change of $\angle A$ from acute values to 90° and then to obtuse values and at the same time observe the shortening of the projection of b on c from a positive sect through zero on to increasingly large negative sects.

193. By formula, find the three altitudes of triangle the sides of which are 12, 14, 18. Construct the triangle and measure the altitudes as a check on the computations. Do the same for the triangle with sides 7, 9, and 12; also 13, 15 and 20.

PROPOSITION XXXIV.

341. THEOREM. *In any triangle the product of any two sides equals the product of the altitude upon the third side and the diameter of the circumscribed circle.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c, altitude h_a upon side a and AM or d the diameter of the circumscribed circle.

To Prove $bc = dh_a$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Connect M and B. $\triangle CAD$ and MAB are similar. Why?

2. Deduce a proportion from which the required equality may be obtained.

Therefore—

194. In figure of Prop. XXXIV, if

1. $c = 12$, $b = 10$, $h_a = 6$, find d.

2. $a = 18$, $b = 12$, $c = 14$, find d.

3. State (2) above as a proposition.

4. Draw CM and prove Prop. XXXIV.

PROPOSITION XXXV.

342. PROBLEM. *To find the length of the radius of the circumscribed circle in terms of the sides of the triangle.*

Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c, altitude h_a upon side a, and AM or d the diameter of the circumscribed circle.

To find d in terms of a, b, c. (See fig. of Prop. XXXIV.)

SUG. 1. $h_a \times d = bc$. Why?

2. $\therefore \quad d = \dfrac{bc}{h_a}$.

3. Substitute for h_a its value in terms of a, b, c.

4. Simplify this result, obtaining

$$r = \frac{abc}{4\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}}.$$

195. (a) Find the radius of the circle circumscribed about a triangle with sides 8, 9, and 12. Construct the figure and check the computation by measurement.

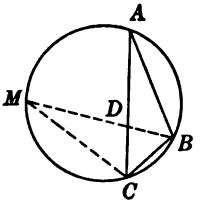
(b) Find the radius of the circle circumscribed about an equilateral triangle with side a.

(c) Find the altitude of the equilateral triangle of (b) in terms of the radius of the circumscribed circle.

(d) In (b) and (c) find radius and altitude if the side of the triangle is 10 inches.

PROPOSITION XXXVI.

343. THEOREM. *In any triangle the square of the bisector of any angle equals the product of the sides including the angle minus the product of the segments of the third side made by the bisector.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with BD bisecting $\angle B$, and meeting AC at D.

To Prove $\overline{BD}^2 = AB \times BC - AD \times DC$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Circumscribe a circle and extend BD to meet the circle at M. Draw MC (or MA).

2. $\triangle ABD \sim \triangle MBC$. Why?

3. $\dfrac{AB}{MB} = \dfrac{BD}{BC}$. Why?

4. $\therefore AB \times BC = MB \times BD$
$= (MD + DB)\ BD$
$= MD \times BD + \overline{BD}^2$
$= AD \times DC + \overline{BD}^2$.

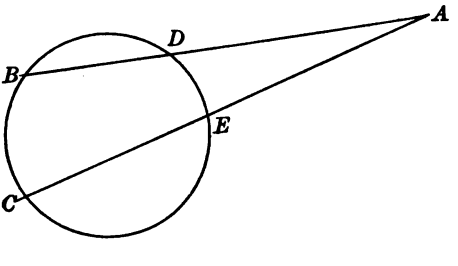
5. $\therefore \overline{BD}^2 =$
$AB \times BC - AD \times DC$.

6. Verify each step.

Therefore—

196 Two secants meet without a circle as in figure. Derive the following proportions and state each proportion as a proposition.

1. $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AE}{AD}$.
2. $\frac{AB}{AE} = \frac{AC}{AD}$.
3. $\frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{AD}{AE}$.
4. $\frac{AE}{AB} = \frac{AD}{AC}$.



197 The ratio of similitude of two similar polygons is $\frac{5}{8}$. What is the ratio of their perimeters?

198 Find a mean proportional to 1 and 2.

199 Find a third proportional to 1 and 2.

200 In right triangle ABC, $CM \perp AB$, hypotenuse $AB = 9$, $MB = 4$.

Find AC, BC, and CM.

SUG. Art. 323.

201 Two squares have areas of 54 square inches and 18 square inches respectively. Find the side of a square equal in area to their difference. Find the side of a square equal in area to their sum.

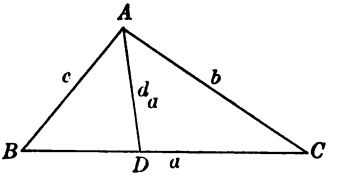
202 Find the side of a square equal in area to the sum of two squares whose areas are 9 square feet and 25 square feet respectively, plus the areas of two rectangles whose areas are each 15 sq. feet.

SUG. Art. 333.

203 In triangle ABC BD bisects $\angle ABC$, $AB = 10$, $CB = 6$, $AD = 7\frac{1}{2}$, $DC = 4\frac{1}{2}$. Find BD.

PROPOSITION XXXVII.

344. PROBLEM. *To find the length of the bisector of an angle of a triangle in terms of the sides of the triangle.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c, AD or d_a being the bisector of $\angle A$, meeting BC at point D.

To find an expression for d_a in terms of a, b, c.

SUG. 1. By § 343 $d_a^2 = bc - BD \times DC$.

Also $\dfrac{BD}{DC} = \dfrac{c}{b}$. Why? §267

2. $\therefore \dfrac{BD}{c} = \dfrac{DC}{b} = \dfrac{BD + DC}{c + b} = \dfrac{a}{c + b}$. Why?

3. $\therefore BD = \dfrac{ca}{b+c}$ and $DC = \dfrac{ab}{b+c}$.

4. $\therefore d_a^2 = bc - \dfrac{ac}{b+c} \times \dfrac{ab}{b+c} =$

$$= bc - \frac{a^2bc}{(b+c)^2} = \frac{bc\,(b + c)^2 - a^2bc}{(b + c)^2}.$$

$$= \frac{bc\,[\,(b+c)^2 - a^2]}{(b+c)^2} = \frac{bc\,(b+c-a)\;(a+b+c)}{(b+c)^2}$$

$$= \frac{4\,bcs\,(s-a)}{(b+c)^2}.$$

5. $\therefore\ d_a = \dfrac{2}{b+c}\ \sqrt{bcs\,(s-a)}$,

in which $2\,s = a + b + c$, as in § 340.

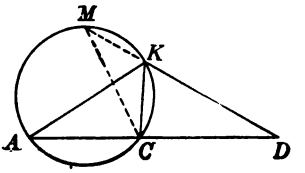
6. Verify each step and write corresponding expressions for d_b and d_c.

204. If the sides of a triangle are 7, 9, and 12; find the length of the bisector of each angle. Construct the triangle and check the computations by measurements.

205. In triangle ABC side $a = 24$, $b = 17$, and $c = 20$; find the bisector of $\angle C$.

206. Find the radius of the circle circumscribed about a triangle with sides of 12, 18, and 20. Check the results by construction.

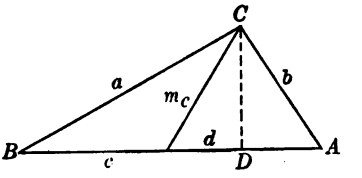
207. Prove § 343 for the bisector of an exterior angle of a scalene triangle.



Sug. Letter the figure as in the original proposition. Notice that AC is divided externally at D and $AC = AD - CD$.

PROPOSITION XXXVIII.

345. THEOREM. *In any triangle if a median be drawn to the base the sum of the squares of the two other sides is equal to twice the square of half the base plus twice the square of the median.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c, with m_c the median on side c, with D the projection of C on c, and d the projection of m_c on c.

To Prove $a^2 + b^2 = 2\,m_c^2 + 2\left(\frac{c}{2}\right)^2$.

Proof. SUG. 1. If a and b are unequal, one angle between m_c and c is acute and the other is obtuse. Suppose then that a is opposite an obtuse angle.

2. Express a^2 and b^2 in terms of the remaining sides of the two triangles made by m_c. Add the resulting expressions.

3. Prove the proposition when sides a and b are equal.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXXIX.

346. PROBLEM. *To find the length of any median in terms of the sides.*

Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c, and m_a the median on side a.

To Find m_a in terms of a, b, c.

SUG. $2\,m_a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2\left(\frac{a}{2}\right)^2$ and

$m_a = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{(2\,c^2 + 2\,b^2 - a^2.)}$

Write the corresponding values of m_b and m_c.

PROPOSITION XL.

347. THEOREM. *In any triangle, if the median be drawn to the base, the difference of the squares of the two sides equals twice the product of the base and the projection of the median on the base.*

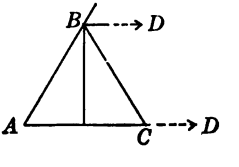
Given the conditions of Prop. XXXVIII.

To Prove $a^2 - b^2 = 2\,cd$.

Proof. Subtract b^2 from a^2.

Therefore—

207a. Discuss problem number 207, when the angle bisected is exterior to the vertical angle of an isosceles triangle. In this case BD is parallel to AC. Why? No conclusions can be drawn as in the other cases. BD, AD, CD, all become infinitely large.



208. In $\triangle ABC$ side $a = 8$, $b = 12$, and $c = 14$. Find the length of the medium on c. Construct the triangle and median and check the computations by measurement.

209. In the above example find m_a and m_b and check computations.

Given the sides $a = 10$, $b = 6$, and $c = 8$. Find the median on a and check the computation.

210. Draw a triangle and a median with a straight edge. Measure the sides and the median. Check the results by computing the length of the median, and also by using other theorems involving the median and sides.

211. If two circles are tangent and a sect be drawn through the point of tangency terminated by the circles.

I. Tangents to the circles at the extremities of the sect are parallel.

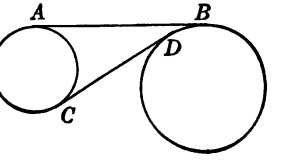
SUG. Draw the common tangent at the point of tangency. Consider the two cases of internal and external tangency.

II. The diameters of the two circles through the extremities of the sect are parallel.

SUG. Use same construction as above, with two cases.

348. EXTERNAL TANGENT. A line is an *external tangent* to two circles if it is tangent to each but does not cut the line of centers.

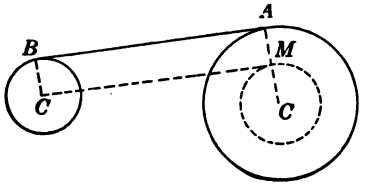
INTERNAL TANGENT. A line is an *internal tangent* to two circles if it is tangent to each and cuts the line of centers.



AB is an external tangent and CD an internal tangent.

PROPOSITION XLI.

349. PROBLEM. *To construct a common external tangent to two circles.*



Given two ⊙ C and C'.

To Construct AB a common external tangent to ⊙ C and C'.

SUG. 1. Construct a circle concentric with the larger of the given circles with a radius equal to the difference between the given radii. Let this radius be CM. Why?

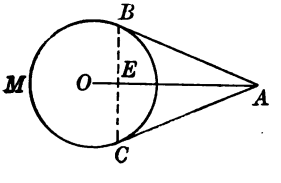
2. Draw a tangent to this auxiliary circle from C'. How may this be done?

3. Draw perpendiculars to this tangent line from C and C' meeting the circles in the points A and B respectively. Why?

4. AB is the required external tangent. Explain why.

5. AB is not the only external tangent. In what step of the construction might a second one be introduced?

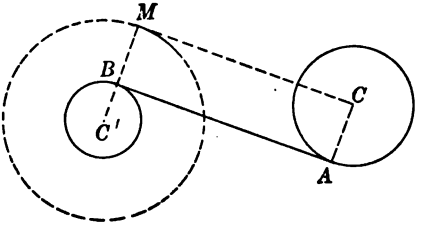
212. △ ABC is equilateral and AB and AC are tangents to the circle. How many degrees in arc BC? In arc BMC?



213. If AB is 18 inches, what is the diameter of the circle?

PROPOSITION XLII.

350. PROBLEM. *To construct a common internal tangent to two circles.*



Given ⊙ C and C'. 51

To Construct AB, an internal tangent to ⊙ C and C'.

SUG. 1. Draw a circle concentric with the smaller of the given circles and with a radius equal to the sum of the radii of the given circles. Why?

2. The completion of the construction is left to the pupil.

351. In the previous pages, certain principles of construction were stated and certain constructions made. In most of the problems thus far the pupil has been given more or less aid. In order that the pupil may become more independent in the solution of problems certain methods of analysis will now be studied in connection with the solution of a few problems.

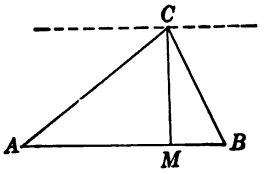
Constructions are based upon previously demonstrated theorems, and the difficult thing in the solution of any problem is the recognition of the previous propositions which may be applied in effecting the desired construction. In the more difficult problems this can most easily

be done by first making a sketch of the completed construction. This construction should next be analyzed in order to discover the theorems involved; then by reversing the order of the analysis, the construction can usually be made.

Each problem usually gives certain conditions for the determination of one or more points, the geometric representation of which conditions are loci, their intersections being the required points. The number of solutions, when a problem calls for the location of a point, is the same as the number of such intersections. In the case of no possible intersection, there is no solution.

352. PROBLEM I. To construct a triangle, given one side, an adjacent angle, and the altitude upon that side.

Given side AB, $\angle A$, and altitude MC.



As AB is given it can be drawn and at one extremity the given angle A can be constructed.

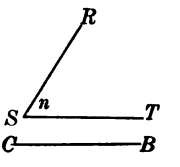
The vertex C must now be determined. One locus of C is the unlimited side of $\angle A$, *i. e.*, line AC. The other locus of C must be found from the other condition, viz: the given altitude MC. It is evident that the locus of the vertex of a triangle with a given altitude is a line parallel to the base and at a distance from the base equal to the given altitude. The construction can now be easily made.

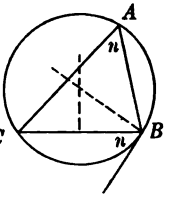
Discussion: On a given side of line AB there is but one solution for two straight lines can have but one

intersection. Also there is always a solution for if a line cuts one of two parallels it will cut the other.

PROBLEM II. Upon a given sect to construct a segment of a circle which shall contain a given angle.

Given $\angle n$ and sect BC. The problem is easily solved if the center of the required circle is found.





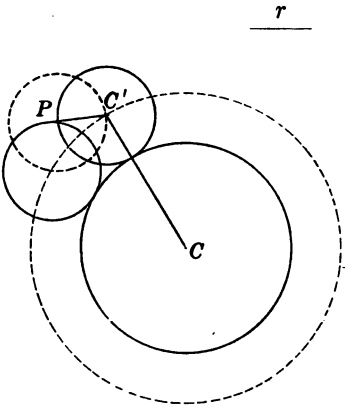
One locus of the center is the perpendicular bisector of sect BC. Why? It is observed from the figure that if the segment BAC contains $\angle A = \angle n$ that the arc BC is not only twice the measure of $\angle A$ but also of the angle at B between CB and a tangent to the circle. In other words if an angle equal to $\angle n$ be constructed at B, the second side will be tangent to the required circle. The perpendicular to this tangent at B is also a locus of the center. The center is thus determined. Does this problem have a solution for every sect BC and $\angle n$?

Another Solution.

214. To solve problem II above, draw RT and construct a triangle with $\measuredangle R$ and T including CB. Circumscribe a circle about the $\triangle$.

215. In like manner construct a triangle on the opposite side of CB and thus get a second segment which can contain $\angle n$.

PROBLEM III. To construct a circle with a given radius that shall pass through a given point and be tangent to a given circle.



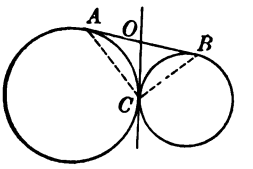
Given a circle C, a fixed point P, and a sect r.

To Construct a circle with radius r, passing through P, and tangent to C.

Draw a figure representing the completed construction. The center C' of the required circle is needed. What is the distance from C' to C? What then is a locus of C'? Since the distance PC' is r, what is the second locus of C'?

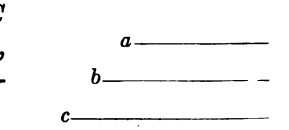
Discussion. In general how many intersections of these two loci and hence how many solutions? Is it possible for one solution only to exist? In this case how would the distance PC compare with the radii of the two circles? What relation of distances would make the intersection of the two loci an impossibility? Illustrate these special cases by figures.

216. The common tangent to the two externally tangent circles at the common point meets an external tangent in a point equally distant from the three points of contact. To prove that $OA = OB = OC$.



PROBLEM IV. To construct a triangle having given the base, the altitude, and the radius of the circumscribed circle.

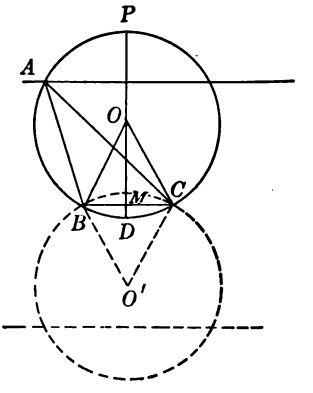
To Construct a triangle ABC with the sects a, b, and c as base, altitude, and radius of the circumscribed circle respectively.



The problem is solved as soon as one finds the third vertex, A, the extremities B and C of sect a being two of them.

What is the locus of vertex A as determined from the given altitude? The center of the circumscribed circle is at distance r from B and C. Locate its center O. The circumscribed circle is the second locus of vertex A.

Discussion. The first condition determines as a locus for A two straight lines. Why two? The second condition determines two circles. Why? If the altitude is less than MD, each of the straight line loci meets each circle four times. How many solutions? If the altitude is greater than MD but less than MP, each straight line locus meets each circle twice. How many solutions? If the altitude equals MD and is less than MP each straight line locus

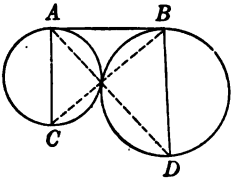


is tangent to one circle and meets the other in two points. How many solutions? If the altitude equals MP each straight line locus is tangent to each circle once. How many solutions? If the radius equals one-half the base, then $MD = MP$, the problem is impossible or there would be two or four solutions, according as the given altitude is greater than, equal to, or less than MD.

If the radius is less than half the base, there is no solution. Why?

217. If two circles are tangent externally the sects which join the point of contact to the two contact points of an external tangent form a right angle. To prove $\angle AOB = 90°$.

218. Two parallel tangents to a circle intercept a sect on a third tangent. Prove that this sect subtends an angle of 90° at the center.



219. If two circles are externally tangent the sect which is the common external tangent is a mean proportional to the diameters.

220. Construct a mean proportional to sects a and b by means of Ex. 219.

221. The locus of the vertex of a given angle subtending a given sect is the arcs of the segments which contain the angle, and are subtended by the given sect.

SUG. 1. Construct the segments containing the given angle.

2. All angles inscribed in these segments equal the given angle. Why?

3. Any angle not inscribed in these segments and subtending the given sect is either greater or less than the given angle. Why?

222. The sum of the squares of the diagonals of a quadrilateral equals the sum of the squares of the four sides plus four times the square of the sect joining the mid-points of the two diagonals. (§ 345.)

223. Divide 8 into two parts such that one part is a mean proportional between 8 and the other part.

224. Given a chord in a circle. From any point in the arc draw a second chord which shall be bisected by the first. Two solutions

225. Construct a triangle, given the base, the altitude, and the vertex angle.

226. Construct a triangle given two angles and a side opposite one.

227. Construct a triangle, given two angles and the altitude upon the included side.

228. Construct a triangle, given the base, the median to the base; and an angle adjacent to the base.

229. Construct a triangle, given the base, the median to the base, and the vertex angle.

230. Construct a circle of given radius and tangent to two given circles. What conditions are necessary for a solution? How many solutions?

231. Construct a circle having a given radius, tangent to a given line, and passing through a given point. How many solutions and what conditions govern each case?

232. Construct a mean proportional to two sects, using Ex. 153, Page 187.

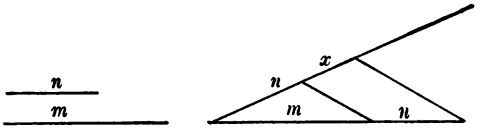
233. Construct a fourth proportional to sects a, b, c, using Prop. XV.

234. Construct a fourth proportional to three sects using the problem for constructing a triangle similar to a given triangle.

235. Construct a third proportional to two sects.

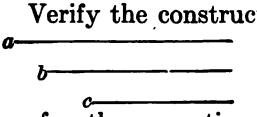
GIVEN sects m and n.

To construct sect x such that $\frac{m}{n} = \frac{n}{x}$.



SUG. 1. On an unlimited line lay off a sect $m + n$. Through one extremity of this sect draw an oblique line and from the intersection lay off on the line sect n. Join the extremities of the two sects of lengths m and n and through the free extremity of sect $m + n$ draw a line parallel to this join line. The sect intercepted on the oblique line by the parallels is x.

2. Verify the construction.



236. Construct a fourth proportional to three sects using Ex. 71, Page 160.

Note.—For such a problem any theorem in which a proportion of four different terms has been established may be used.

237. If a chord is 12 inches long and the perpendicular to that chord bisecting the subtended arc is 3 inches, find the radius.

238. Draw accurately the figure of the preceding exercise, construct the circle and check the computations by measurements.

239. A bridge with a circular stone arch has a 39-foot span and an 8 foot rise. What is the diameter of the circle?

240. Prove that the side of an inscribed equilateral hexagon equals the radius.

241. The sides of a triangle are 8, 11, 13. Find the altitudes, medians, bisectors of the angles, and the radius of the circumscribed circle.

242. In a circle of 10-inch radius there are two parallel chords, one being 6 inches from the center and the other 8 inches. Find their lengths.

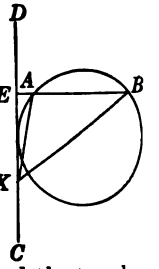
243. Find a fourth proportional to 2, 7, and 8 by arithmetic and geometric methods. Check the results by comparison.

244. Find a fourth proportional to 5, 7, and 9 by arithmetic method and by geometric construction. Check the results by comparison.

245. Find by arithmetic method and by geometric construction a sect equal to $\sqrt{9}$; $\sqrt{7}$; $\sqrt{10}$. Compare the results.

246. If two circles intersect, tangents drawn from any point in their common chord extended are equal.

247. CD is tangent to circle O, EB is a secant cutting the circle at points A and B and perpendicular to CD. At what point X in CD is $\angle AXB$ the greatest?



248. If A and B are goal posts on a football field and E the place of a touchdown, how far back afield should the attempt be made to kick goal to insure the best opportunity?

249. The goal posts are 18½ feet apart, and the touchdown is made 49 feet from the nearest post. How many feet back is the best point from which to kick for goal?

250. To find AB, the distance across a river. $\angle A$ is found to be 107°, $\angle C$ to be 53°, and line AC to be 24.7 rods.

CHAPTER IV.

AREA OF POLYGONS.

353. AREA. *Area* is a species of quantity (§ 245) and is obtained by measuring surface.

As, the area of a certain surface is 24 square inches or 18 square rods.

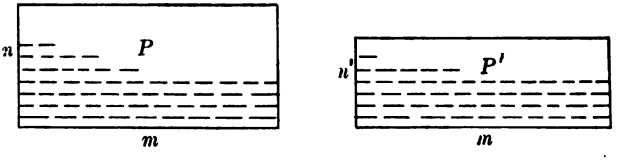
354. MEASUREMENT OF SURFACE. *Measurement of surface* is the process of determining the number of times a unit of surface is contained in the given surface.

355. UNIT OF SURFACE OR AREA. A square having a given linear unit for one side is usually taken as the *unit of surface or area, e. g.*, a square inch, a square rod, etc. There are exceptions to this, as the acre used in land measurement, which consists of 160 square rods.

356. AREA. The ratio of a given surface to the unit of surface, when joined to the name of the unit, is the *area* of the surface. It is expressed in terms of the unit used, *e. g.*, 15 square inches, 24 square yards, etc. When thus expressed area tells two things: first, the number of times the unit is contained in the surface, and second, the name of the unit used.

PROPOSITION I.

357. THEOREM. *Two rectangles having equal bases are proportional to their altitudes.*



Given two rectangles P and P' with equal bases m and altitudes n and n' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{n}{n'}$.

The altitudes n and n' are assumed to have a common unit of measure. The case in which they do not, *i. e.*, in which they are incommensurable, will be considered later.

SUG. 1. Suppose n contains this common unit k times and that n' contains it k' times. What then is the ratio of n to n'? Auth.?

2. Through the points of division in n and n' draw lines parallel to the bases. The figures thus formed are rectangles. Why? They are congruent. Why? Therefore one of them can be used as a unit of measure.

3. How many times is this unit rectangle contained in P? In P'? What is the ratio of P to P'?

4. Compare the ratio of the altitudes with that of the rectangles. Auth.?

Therefore—

358. Cor. I. *If two rectangles have equal altitudes they are proportional to their bases.*

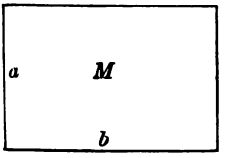
Sug. Either side of a rectangle may be regarded as the base.

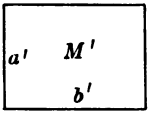
359. Cor. II. *If two rectangles have a common dimension they are proportional to the other dimensions.*

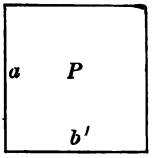
The *dimensions* of a parallelogram or a triangle are its base and altitude.

PROPOSITION II.

360. Theorem. *Two rectangles are proportional to the products of their dimensions.*







Given rectangles M and M' with dimensions a, b and a', b' respectively.

To Prove $\dfrac{M}{M'} = \dfrac{a \times b}{a' \times b'}$.

Proof. Sug. 1. Construct a rectangle P with one dimension of M, say a, and one dimension of M', say b'.

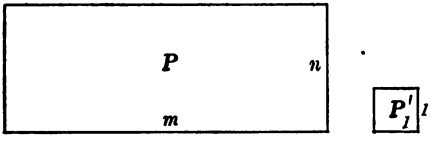
2. What is the ratio of M to P? Of P to M'? Why?

3. Find the product of these two ratios. What then is the ratio of M to M'?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION III.

361. THEOREM. *The area of a rectangle equals the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given rectangle P with dimensions m and n and unit P'.

To Prove area $P = m \times n$ times P'.

SUG. The ratio $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{mn}{1 \times 1} = mn$. Why?

$\therefore$ $P = mnP'$ or area $P = mn$ of the units of area.

The theorem is here stated in the usual abbreviated form. Literally interpreted it would imply that area is a number and that the "base and altitude" also are numbers. Stated in full and as it should be interpreted, it would read: *The area of a rectangle equals the product of the measures of the base and altitude times the unit of measure.* All the theorems of areas will be stated in the abbreviated form.

The name of a polygon is frequently used to designate its area.

Polygons and circles are the surfaces to be measured in plane geometry.

What is the ratio of the areas of two rectangles whose dimensions are 15, 25 and 9, 30 respectively.

362. If the sides of the unit of measure are exact divisors of the corresponding sides of the rectangle a simple means of determining the area is to lay off the unit upon the rectangle, noting that the number of times the base of the unit is contained in the base of the rectangle is the number of area units in one row and that the number of times the altitude of the unit is contained in the altitude of the rectangle is the number of rows. Then by arithmetical analysis it is seen that the number of the rows times the number of the units in each row is the total number of units of area.

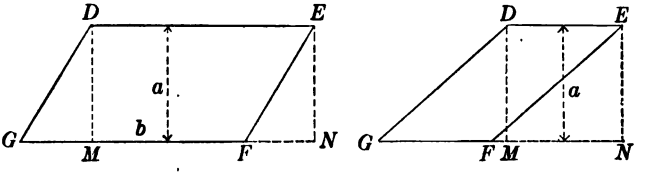
The demonstration of § 357 covers all cases of practical value, for if the altitudes are incommensurable an approximate unit of altitude can be taken as small as the needs of the given case require. For instance, if the altitudes are 3 inches and $\sqrt{2}$ inches the ratio of the altitudes will be approximately $\frac{3}{1}$ if 1 inch be used as the unit; $\frac{30}{14}$ if the unit is .1 inch; $\frac{300}{141}$ if the unit is .01 inch; etc. The answer in this last case is correct to less than the area of a strip the length of the rectangle and .01 of the linear unit in width. Thus the accuracy of the area computed will depend upon the accuracy of the measurement of the dimensions, for the demonstration by § 357 can be carried rigorously to an approximation far beyond the skill of man to measure in any given case. All actual measurement gives but an approximation of the true value of the magnitude and the closeness of the approximation in measurement is usually determined by the degree of accuracy required.

Construct a line $\sqrt{8}$ inches long and measure it as accurately as possible. Compare this result with the arithmetical square root.

A rectangular field is 40 rods by 80 rods. How many acres does it contain? A field contains 10 acres and its dimensions are in the ratio 1 to 4. Find the dimensions.

PROPOSITION IV.

363. THEOREM. *The area of a parallelogram equals the product of its base and altitude.*



Given parallelogram $DEFG$ with base b and altitude a.

To Prove area of $DF = ab$.

Proof. SUG. 1. From two adjacent vertices as D and E, drop perpendiculars to the opposite side, as DM and EN.

2. Compare $\triangle DMG$ with $\triangle ENF$.

3. Compare the areas and dimensions of the parallelogram DF and the rectangle DN.

4. What is the area of DN? Of DF?

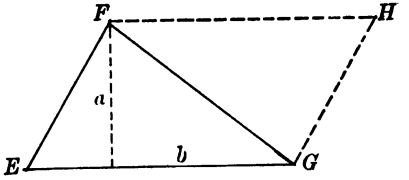
Therefore—

Does the above demonstration apply to both figures?

Construct carefully a parallelogram, $ABCD$, with sides from 3 to 5 inches in length. Construct the altitude upon AB as a base and compute the area. Construct the altitude upon AD as base and compute the area. Compare the results as a test for both accuracy of construction and accuracy of measurement.

PROPOSITION V.

364. THEOREM. *The area of a triangle equals one-half the product of its base and altitude.*



Given a $\triangle EFG$, with base b and altitude a.

To Prove area of $EFG = \frac{ab}{2}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Through vertex F draw a line parallel to base EG, and equal to EG. Connect its extremity H with G. What kind of a figure, EH, is thus formed? Why?

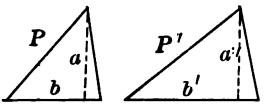
2. What is the area of EH? Compare the given triangle with EH. What is the area of the triangle?

3. Compare the bases and the altitudes of the triangle and EH.

Therefore—

365. COR. I. *Two triangles having the same altitude are proportional to their bases.*

SUG. $\frac{\triangle P}{\triangle P'} = \frac{a \times b}{a \times b'} = \frac{b}{b'}$. Auth.



366. Cor. II. *Two triangles having equal bases are proportional to their altitudes.*

Proof. Left to the pupil.

1. The sum of the perpendiculars from any point in an equilateral triangle to the three sides is constant.

1a. The sum of the three perpendiculars in the preceding example equals the altitude of the triangle.

2. $\frac{6}{4} = \frac{4}{x}$. Find x.

PROPOSITION VI.

367. Theorem. *Any two triangles are proportional to the products of their two dimensions.*

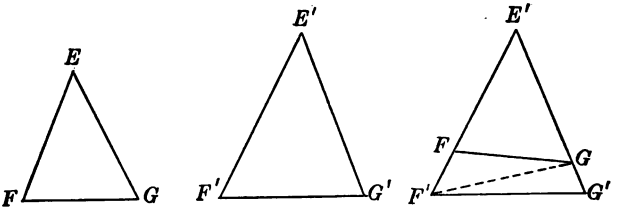
Given $\triangle P$ and P' with dimensions a, b and a', b' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{ab}{a'b'}$.

Proof. Sug. Find the ratio of the areas and simplify the expression.

PROPOSITION VII.

368. Theorem. *Two triangles having an angle in one equal to an angle in the other are proportional to the products of the sides including the equal angles.*



Given $\triangle EFG$ and $\triangle E'F'G'$ with $\angle E = \angle E'$.

To Prove $\dfrac{\triangle EFG}{\triangle E'F'G'} = \dfrac{EF \times EG}{E'F' \times E'G'}$.

Proof. Sug. 1. Place $\triangle EFG$ upon $\triangle E'F'G'$ so that EF falls on $E'F'$, EG on $E'G'$, and E on E'.

2. Note that $\triangle E'F'G'$ and $E'F'G$ have a common altitude, whence

$\dfrac{\triangle E'F'G}{\triangle E'F'G'} = ?$ $\qquad$ $\dfrac{\triangle E'FG}{\triangle E'F'G} = ?$ Similarly

3. $\dfrac{\triangle E'FG}{\triangle E'F'G'} = ? \times \dfrac{\triangle EFG}{\triangle E'F'G'} = ?$

Therefore—

3. Compare the areas of three triangles formed by drawing lines through the vertex of a given triangle so as to trisect the base.

3a. If the base of a triangle remain unchanged while the vertex is moved in a line parallel to the base, what is the effect upon the area of the triangle?

3b. Divide a triangle into two parts by a line through the vertex so that one part is three-fifths of the other.

4. Through a given point in one side of a triangle draw a line which will cut off one-third of the triangle.

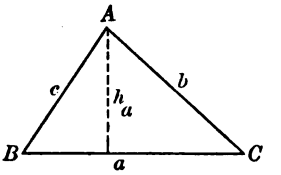
5. Divide a triangle into two equal parts by a line parallel to the base.

6. Divide a triangle into two parts by a line parallel to the base so that one part is one-third the other.

7. Through a given point in one side of a triangle draw a line bisecting the triangle.

PROPOSITION VIII.

369. PROBLEM. *To determine the area of a triangle in terms of its sides.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c and altitude h_a on side a.

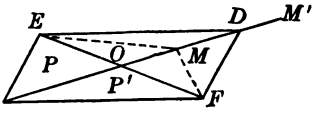
To Find area of ABC in terms of a, b, c.

SUG. $\triangle ABC = \frac{ah_a}{2}$. In this substitute for h_a its value in terms of a, b, c, and simplify. §340

8. If from any point in a parallelogram lines be drawn to the four vertices the sum of either pair of the opposite triangles thus formed equals one-half the parallelogram.

9. The area of a square or a rhombus equals one-half the product of the diagonals.

10. If EF and DG are diagonals of a parallelogram prove that any pair of triangles, as P and P', on the same side of a diagonal are equal.



11. Let M (or M') be any point on diagonal GD of the preceding figure (or on GD produced). Connect M with E and F. Prove $\triangle MEO = \triangle MFO$ and $\triangle M'EO = \triangle M'FO$.

12. A number of triangles have as bases equal sects of the same straight line. If the opposite vertices are at the same point, which triangle is the larger?

13. Several triangles have as bases equal sects of a given straight line. If their areas are to be equal what is the locus of the opposite vertices?

14. Connect the mid-points of the adjacent sides of a parallelogram. Prove (1) that the included quadrilateral is a parallelogram, (2) that it equals one-half the given parallelogram, (3) that the triangles at the four vertices are equal.

15. Write the formula for Prop. VIII, using b and then c as base. Show that the simplified formulas are the same irrespective of the side used as base.

16. The sides of a triangular piece of ground are 7, 9, and 12 rods. Find the area.

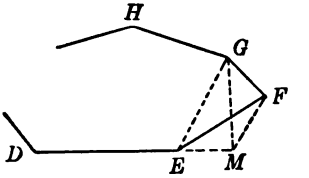
17. Construct a triangle having sides of 8, 10, 12 inches. Find its area by § 369. Measure one altitude and compute the area. Check results by comparison.

18. The area of a triangle circumscribed about a circle equals one-half the product of the perimeter and the radius of the circle. Prove the same theorem also for a circumscribed polygon.

19. Drive three stakes several rods apart so as to form a triangle. Measure the three sides and compute the area. Measure an altitude and base and compute the area. Compare the results. If the several results differ to a considerable amount repeat the work to find the error.

PROPOSITION IX.

370. PROBLEM. *To construct a triangle equal to a given polygon.*



Given any polygon as *DEFG* . . . . .
To Construct a triangle equal to *DEFG* . . . . .
Construction—

SUG. 1. Draw a diagonal cutting off a triangle as *EFG* and through the vertex *F* draw a line parallel to the diagonal meeting *DE* produced at *M*. Join *G* and *M*.

2. Prove $\triangle EMG = \triangle EFG$.

3. Prove *DEFG* . . . = *DEMG*. . .

4. Compare the number of sides in *DEFG* . . . and *DEMG* . . .

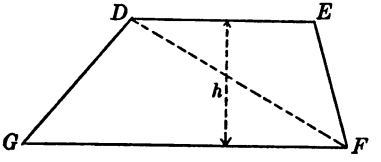
5. Proceed with the new polygon *DEMG* . . . as with *DEFG* . . .

6. A triangle is finally obtained by this process. Why does it equal the given polygon?

20. Draw to some convenient scale the triangle of the preceding exercise. Compute the area by measurements according to one or other of the methods used before and compare the result with those derived from the direct measurements.

PROPOSITION X.

371. THEOREM. *The area of a trapezoid equals one-half the product of the altitude and the sum of the bases.*



Given the trapezoid *DEFG* with altitude h and bases *DE* and *FG*.

To Prove area $DEFG = \frac{1}{2}(DE + FG)\,h$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Area of $\triangle DEF = \frac{h}{2} \times DE$. What is the area of $\triangle FGD$?

2. What is the area of *DEFG*?

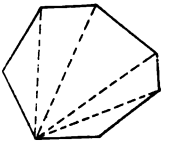
Therefore—

What is the unit of addition in step 2? What are the co-efficients? Verify the addition algebraically.

$$DE \times \frac{h}{2} + FG \times \frac{h}{2} = (DE + FG) \times \frac{h}{2}$$

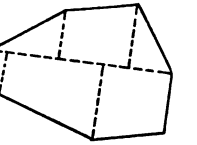
372. AREA OF A POLYGON. Various methods are used in finding the areas of irregular polygons, among which the following may well be noticed:

From any vertex of the polygon draw all possible diagonals. The polygon is by this means divided into triangles. The sides and altitudes of these triangles may be measured and their areas computed by any of the methods

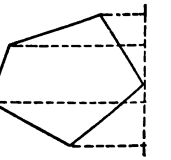


already shown. The area of the entire polygon is then found by addition.

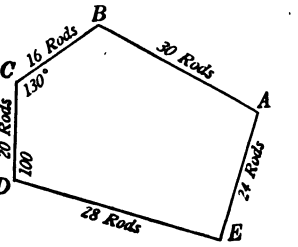
Another method is to draw a diagonal, preferably the longest one and from the remaining vertices drop perpendiculars upon this diagonal. The polygon is thus divided into triangles and trapezoids. If the bases and altitudes of these triangles and trapezoids are measured their areas can be computed and the area of the polygon thus obtained.



Another method is to draw through any vertex of the polygon a straight line exterior to the polygon upon which perpendiculars are dropped from the remaining vertices. In this way triangles and trapezoids are formed. The bases and altitudes of these are measured and their areas computed. The area of the given polygon is found by subtracting the areas of the parts exterior to the polygon from the sum of the areas of all the parts.

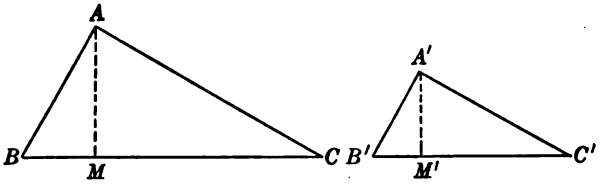


21. Draw a figure to a scale like cut, then compute its area by each of the three preceding methods and compare results. Which method requires the greatest amount of work? Compute angle B, angle E, angle A.



PROPOSITION XI.

373. THEOREM. *The ratio of the areas of two similar triangles is equal to the ratio of the squares of any two homologous sides or homologous altitudes.*



Given two similar ▲, ABC and $A'B'C'$ with homologous altitudes AM and $A'M'$.

To Prove $\frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle A'B'C'} = \frac{\overline{BC}^2}{\overline{B'C'}^2} = \frac{\overline{CA}^2}{\overline{C'A'}^2} = \frac{\overline{AB}^2}{\overline{A'B'}^2} = \frac{\overline{AM}^2}{\overline{A'M'}^2}$

Proof. SUG. 1. $\frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle A'B'C'} = \frac{BC \times AM}{B'C' \times A'M'}$. Why?

$= \frac{BC}{B'C'} \times \frac{AM}{A'M'}$ (factoring)

2. $\frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CA}{C'A'} = \frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{AM}{A'M'}$ Why?

3. $\therefore \frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle A'B'C'} = \frac{\overline{BC}^2}{\overline{B'C'}^2} = \frac{\overline{AM}^2}{\overline{A'M'}^2}$,

etc. Why?

PROPOSITION XII.

374. THEOREM. *The ratio of the areas of two similar polygons is equal to the ratio of the squares of any two homologous sides.*

Given two similar polygons P and P' with AB and $A'B'$ any pair of homologous sides.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{\overline{AB}^2}{\overline{A'B'}^2}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. From vertices A and A' draw all possible diagonals dividing P and P' each into the same number of triangles, similar each to each and similarly placed. (§ 287)

2. The ratio of similitude of each pair of similar triangles is the same as the ratio of similitude of P and P'. For:

3. Let $\triangle_1$, $\triangle_1'$; $\triangle_2$, $\triangle_2'$; $\triangle_3$, $\triangle_3'$; etc., represent the pairs of similar triangles into which P and P' are respectively divided. Then,

$$\frac{\triangle_1}{\triangle_1'} = \frac{\triangle_2}{\triangle_2'} = \frac{\triangle_3}{\triangle_3'} = \frac{\cdots\cdots}{\cdots\cdots} = \frac{\overline{AB}^2}{\overline{A'B'}^2}.$$ Why?

4. Then

$$\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{\triangle_1 + \triangle_2 + \triangle_3 = \cdots\cdots}{\triangle_1' + \triangle_2' \times \triangle_3' + \cdots\cdots} = \frac{\overline{AB}^2}{\overline{A'B'}^2}.$$

See § 317.

Therefore—

22 Each dimension of one rectangle is twice the corresponding dimension of the other. What is the ratio of their areas?

23 Two similar triangles have equal bases, the ratio of their areas is $\frac{1}{4}$. What is the ratio of their altitudes?

375. State each of the cases in which the ratio of areas has been found. Notice that the ratio of areas is always expressed by the product of two factors. If there is a common dimension, this factor can be cancelled out of both terms of the ratio. State all the cases thus far demonstrated in which this is true; also those in which the ratio remains a product. Under what conditions may this product be written as a square?

24 In triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$, $\angle A = \angle A'$, area ABC = area $A'B'C'$, $AB = 15$, $AC = 8$, $A'B' = 24$. Find $A'C'$.

25 The ratio of similitude of two similar triangles is $\frac{2}{7}$. What is the ratio of their areas?

26 The ratio of the areas of two similar triangles is $\frac{25}{49}$. What is the ratio of their altitudes?

27 Can a trapezoid $ABCD$ be constructed with parallel sides AB and CD such that $AB = 6$, $BC = 15$, $CD = 20$ and $AD = 13$? If so find its altitude and area.

Find BD and AC. (§ 340)

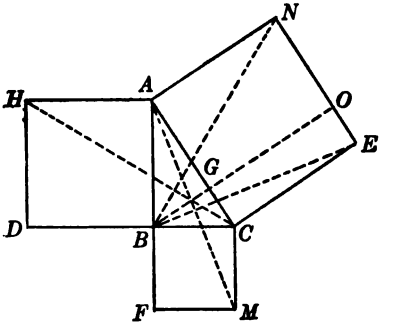
27a. By means of Art. 369 compute the area of $\triangle ABD$ and of $\triangle BDC$. Compare the sum of their areas with the area of the trapezoid.

27b. Construct the altitude from D on AC, and the altitude from B on AC. Measure these altitudes and compute the areas of $\triangle ABC$ and ADC.

27c. Compare the sum of the areas just found with the area of trapezoid AC.

PROPOSITION XIII.

376. THEOREM. *The square described upon the hypotenuse of a right triangle is equal to the sum of the squares described upon the two other sides.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ with $\angle B$ a rt. angle and AE, CF, and BH squares upon the sides AC, CB, and BA respectively.

To Prove $AE = CF + BH$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw $BG \parallel$ to CE, meeting AC in G and NE in O. Draw BN, BE, CH, and AM. What kind of polygons are $CEOG$ and $AGON$? Why?

2. Compare $\triangle BCE$ and ACM.

3. ABF is a straight sect. Why?

4. Compare the area of $\triangle ACM$ with the area of the square BM; the area of $\triangle BCE$ with the area of the rectangle CO.

5. Compare the area of the square BM with the area of the rectangle CO.

6. Compare $\triangle CAH$ and NAB.

7. CBD is a straight sect. Why?

8. Compare the square BH with the rectangle AO.

9. Compare the sum of the areas of the squares BM and BH with the sum of the areas of the rectangles CO and AO, *i. e.*, with the area of the square CN.

Therefore—

Compare this theorem with § 330 and show that the theorems are the same except that one is demonstrated by algebraic processes and the other by geometric processes. One deals purely with the number and the other with quantity.

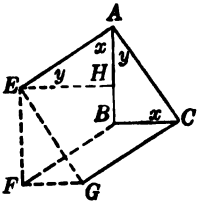
377. Cor. *The square upon the leg of a right triangle equals the square upon the hypotenuse minus the square upon the other leg.*

$$\overline{BC}^2 = \overline{AC}^2 - \overline{AB}^2.$$

378. Scholium. This proposition is known as the Pythagorean proposition. It is named in honor of Pythagoras, 570 B. C., who is supposed to have given the first demonstration of it. The above demonstration is usually associated with his name.

The following is one among the many interesting proofs which have been devised for this proposition:

Let ABC be the right $\triangle$, with AG the square upon the hypotenuse. Draw $EF \parallel AB$, $GF \parallel CB$, and $EH \perp AB$.



$\triangle EFG = \triangle ABC$. Why?

Also $\triangle EAH = \triangle ABC$. Why?

$\therefore EH = AB$ and area of $EB =$ area of sq. on AB. Why?

In the same way $BG =$ sq. on BC.

Hence $\overline{AC}^2 = \overline{AB}^2 + \overline{BC}^2$.

28. Construct with instruments a pentagon. Compute the area by § 370 and § 372. The comparison is a test of construction.

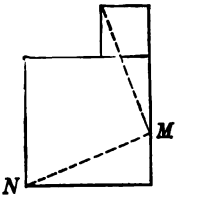
29. Find the area of a triangle with sides of 8, 12, 15.

30. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral intersect at right angles, show that the area of the quadrilateral is one-half the area of the rectangle the sides of which are equal to the diagonals of the quadrilateral.

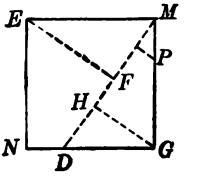
31. If three equal circles are tangent each to the two others, the lines joining their centers form an equilateral triangle.

32. Construct a triangle with an area 9 times that of a triangle the sides of which are 6, 7, 9.

33. A puzzle. Draw on a larger scale the accompanying figure. Cut it into 5 pieces along the dotted lines and rearrange the pieces forming a square on the line *MN*. This is an illustration of what theorem?



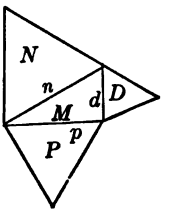
34. A puzzle. Construct a square *MN* of any size. Draw *MD* at random. Drop perpendiculars *EF* and *GH* to *MD*. Make *MP* equal to *ND* and drop a perpendicular from *P* to *MD*. The square *MN* can now be cut into 5 parts which can be rearranged into two squares. This illustrates § 376.



35. Verify the theorem of § 376 by making the drawing upon paper ruled in squares.

SUG. Construct the squares on the two legs and on the hypotenuse of the triangle and count the small squares included in each.

36. In the accompanying figure $\triangle M$ is a rt. $\triangle$, and $\mathbb{A}$ N, D, and P are equilateral.



Prove $\triangle N = \triangle D + \triangle P$.

SUG. 1. $\dfrac{D}{N} = \dfrac{d^2}{n^2}$.

2. Also $\dfrac{P}{N} = \dfrac{p^2}{n^2}$.

3. $\therefore$ by addition $\dfrac{D+P}{N} = \dfrac{d^2+p^2}{n^2}$,

which $= 1$. Auth.

4. $\therefore \triangle D + \triangle P = \triangle N$.

Is this relation still true if for N, D, P we substitute any similar polygons?

37. The square upon the side opposite an acute angle of a triangle equals the sum of the squares upon the other two sides minus twice the rectangle formed by one of those sides and the projection of the other upon it.

Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a, b, c.

To Prove the relation $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2\,bm$, in which a^2, b^2, c^2 represent squares on the sides a, b, c, respectively, and bm the rectangle formed by side b and the projection of c on b.

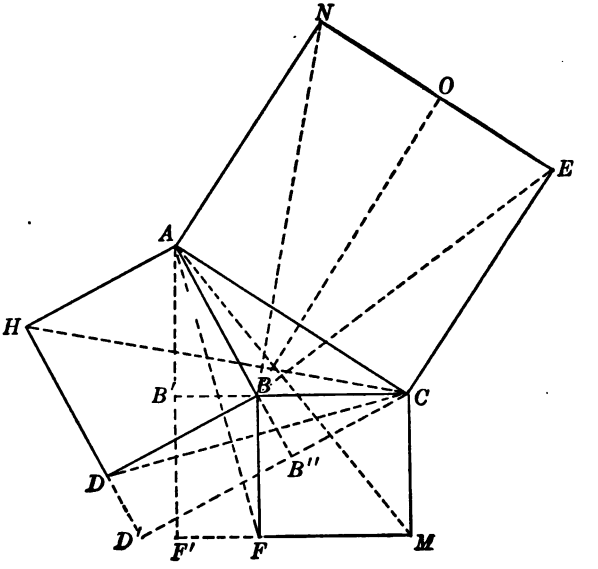
SUG. 1. Prove from § 376 as in following exercise.

2. Draw the auxiliary lines and prove geometrically as in the following exercise.

38. The square on the side of a triangle opposite an obtuse angle equals the sum of the squares upon the two other sides plus twice the rectangle formed by one side and the projection of the other side upon that side.

Given $\triangle ABC$ with $\angle B$ obtuse, AE the sq. opposite $\angle B$, with BM and BH the squares on the two other sides, BB' the projection of AB upon BC, and $B'F$ the rectangle described in the proposition.

To Prove $AE = BM + BH + 2\,B'F$.



Sug. 1. Assume the theorem in its algebraic form from § 338. Substitute for the algebraic products the areas which they represent in the above figure.

2. From each vertex of the given triangle drop perpendiculars to the farther side of the opposite squares, or to these sides extended if need be. Connect the vertices of the triangle with the opposite vertices of their respective opposite squares. Work out a demonstration similar to § 376.

39. What is the ratio of $\triangle MNO$ to $\triangle PMO$, $\angle M$ being 90°? (Fig. 1.)

40. Prove geometrically $(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$. (Fig. 2.)

41. Prove geometrically $(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$. (Fig. 3.)

42. Prove geometrically $(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 - b^2$. (Fig. 4.)

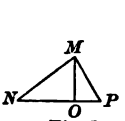


Fig. 1.

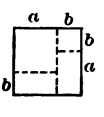


Fig. 2.

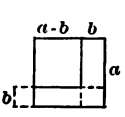


Fig. 3.

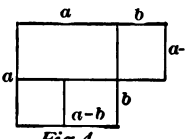


Fig. 4.

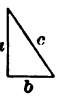


Fig. 5.

Fig. 1. Fig. 2. Fig. 3. Fig. 4. Fig. 5.

43. Prove by a figure the following formulas:

$a(a - b) = a^2 - ab$

$a(a + b) = a^2 + ab$

$a(b + c) = ab + ac$

$(a + b)(a + c) = a^2 + ab + ac + bc$

$(a + b)(a - c) = a^2 + ab - ac - bc$

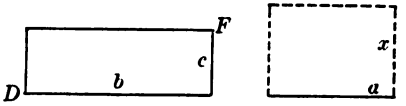
$(a - b)(a - c) = a^2 - ab - ac + bc$

$(a + b)^2 + (a - b)^2 = 2a^2 + 2b^2$

$(a + b)(c + d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$

PROPOSITION XIV.

379. PROBLEM. *Upon a given base to construct a rectangle equal to a given rectangle.*



Given rectangle DF with adjacent sides b and c and sect a.

To Construct a rectangle on a equal to DF.

SUG. 1. Let x represent the altitude of the required rectangle. Then $b \times c = a \times x$.

2. From this derive a proportion with x as the fourth and unknown term.

3. Find x and complete the construction.

4. Show that the constructed rectangle equals DF.

44. To construct a square equal to the sum of two given squares.

Given a square on a and a square on b. (Fig. 5.) page 243.

To Construct a square equal to $a^2 + b^2$.

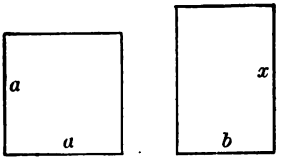
SUG. Construct a right triangle of which a and b are the legs. Complete construction. The proof is left to the pupil.

45. Construct a square equal to the sum of three given squares; of four given squares; of n given squares.

46. Construct a square equal to the difference between two given squares.

PROPOSITION XV.

380. PROBLEM. *Upon a given sect as base, to construct a rectangle equal to a given square.*



Given sect b and a square on sect a.

To Construct on b a rectangle equal to the given square.

SUG. 1. Let x be the altitude of the required rectangle. Then $a^2 = b \times x$.

2. From this derive a proportion with x as the fourth and unknown term. What problem is involved in the finding of x?

3. Complete the construction and prove the constructed rectangle equal to the given square.

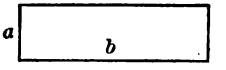
47. The area of a square inscribed in a circle is one-half the area of any square circumscribed about the circle.

48. Construct a parallelogram with a given base and a given angle the area of which shall equal that of a given rectangle.

49. Find the dimensions of a rectangle the perimeter of which is 26 inches with an area of 40 square inches.

PROPOSITION XVI.

381. PROBLEM. *To construct a square equal to a given rectangle.*



Given a rectangle with adjacent sides a and b.

To Construct a square equal to rectangle ab.

SUG. 1. Let x represent the side of the required square. Then $x^2 = ab$.

2. Derive a proportion and find x.

3. Complete the construction.

50. Verify the constructions in § 379, § 380, and § 381 by measuring the dimensions and computing the areas.

51. Construct a square equal to a given trapezoid.

52. Construct a square equal to a given triangle.

53. Construct a square equal to a given parallelogram.

54. Upon a given sect as base construct a rectangle the area of which shall equal the sum of the areas of a given square, a given trapezoid, and a given triangle.

55. If the hypotenuse of a right triangle is 15 feet and the ratio of its legs is $\frac{3}{4}$, what is its area?

56. Cut off one-third of a parallelogram by a line through a vertex. Cut off one-fourth in the same manner.

57. Construct an isosceles triangle having a given altitude and equal to a given triangle.

58. Bisect a parallelogram by a line parallel to a given line.

59. Construct a triangle equal to a given triangle M, on base, a, and with its opposite vertex in a given line, x. Can this line be parallel to the base?

60. The diagonals of two squares are 5 feet and 9 feet respectively. What is the diagonal of a square equal to their sum?

61. Divide a triangle by a line through trisection points on one side into parts proportional to 1, 2, 3.

62. The side of an equilateral triangle is 10. What is the length of a side of a regular hexagon of the same area? Of a square of the same area?

63. The diagonal of a rectangle is 10 and the ratio of the sides is $\frac{3}{4}$. Find the area. If the diagonal is 40 and the ratio of the sides is $\frac{2}{5}$, find the area.

64. The difference between the squares of two sides of a triangle equals the difference between the squares of the projections of those sides upon the third side.

65. If two circles are tangent, internally or externally, chords of one passing through the point of contact are divided proportionally by the other.

66. Draw a chord through a given point within a circle which shall be divided by this point in the ratio $\frac{3}{5}$ Also the ratio $\frac{m}{n}$. Discuss limitations of point.

SUG. Use preceding Ex.

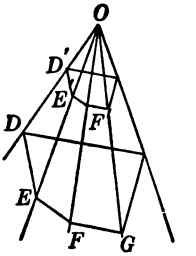
67. Draw a secant from a point without a circle terminated by the circle such that the ratio of its segments shall be 3 to 1.

Also $\frac{m}{n}$. Is this problem ever impossible?

68. Through a given point draw a line so that its distances from two given points shall be in a given ratio.

69. What is the locus of points which divide all chords of a circle passing through a given point, internally or externally, in a given ratio?

70. Let $DEFG\ldots$ be any polygon. Join the vertices to a point O. Through D', any point on OD, draw a line parallel to DE terminating in E' on OE. Through E' draw a line parallel to EF, etc. Prove the polygon $D'E'F'G'\ldots$ similar to $DEFG\ldots$



Two similar polygons can always be placed in such a position with respect to some fixed point.

This property is characteristic and is sometimes taken as the definition of similarity. The point in which the lines joining homologous vertices meet is called the center of similitude.

71. *The area of a triangle equals one-half the product of two sides and the sine of the included angle.*

This proof covers only the case in which the included angle is acute. The general theorem is proved in trigonometry.

Given $\triangle ABC$ with sides a and c including the acute angle B.

To Prove area $ABC = \frac{1}{2}\, ac \sin B$.

Proof. Area $ABC = \frac{1}{2}\, ah_a$ and $h_a = c \sin B$. Hence the theorem. (Fig. § 369.)

72. Drive three stakes in the School grounds so as to form an acute triangle. Measure two sides and the included angle and compute the area by Ex. 71; also measure a base and altitude and compute and compare results. Review your work if not approximately the same.

CHAPTER V.

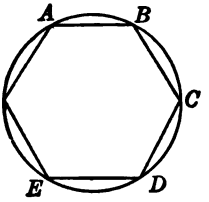
REGULAR POLYGONS.

382. REGULAR POLYGON. A polygon which is both equilateral and equiangular is *regular.*

The equilateral triangle and the square are regular polygons.

PROPOSITION I.

383. THEOREM. *An equilateral polygon inscribed in a circle is a regular polygon.*



Given AD, an equilateral polygon inscribed in a circle.

To Prove that AD is a regular polygon.

Proof. SUG. 1. According to the definition, § 382, what remains to be proved in order that AD be regular?

2. By what may the angles A, B, C, etc., be measured?

3. How do they compare with each other?

4. Test AD by the definition of a regular polygon.

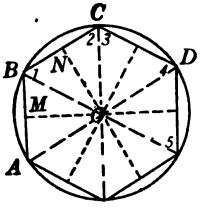
Therefore—

384. COR. *If a circle be divided into any number of equal parts, the lines joining the points of division form a regular polygon.*

Proof. Left to the pupil.

PROPOSITION II.

385. THEOREM. *A circle can be circumscribed about a regular polygon. A circle can be inscribed in a regular polygon.*



Given a regular polygon, AD.

To Prove I. A circle can be circumscribed about AD.

SUG. 1. At M and N, the mid-points of two adjacent sides, erect perpendiculars extended until they meet as at O. Why do they meet?

2. Join O to the vertices A, B, C, etc. Compare $\measuredangle AOB$ and BOC; $\measuredangle$ 1, 2, and 3.

3. $\triangle DOC \cong \triangle COB$. Why? Hence $OD = OB$. Why?

4. Similarly all the sects OA, OB, OC, OD, etc., are equal and hence a circle with center O can be circumscribed. Why?

To Prove II. A circle can be inscribed in AD.

1. Compare the sects OM, ON, etc. Auth.

2. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

Query. How many sides in the polygon AD? See the theorem.

386. RADIUS OF A REGULAR POLYGON. The radius of the circumscribed circle is the *radius of a regular polygon.*

387. APOTHEM OF A REGULAR POLYGON. The radius of the inscribed circle is the *apothem of a regular polygon.*

388. CENTER OF A REGULAR POLYGON. The center of the inscribed and circumscribed circles is the *center of a regular polygon.*

389. ANGLE AT THE CENTER OF A REGULAR POLYGON. The angle formed by two radii drawn to two adjacent vertices of the polygon is the *angle at the center of a regular polygon.*

From the definitions just given the following corollaries can be deduced. The pupil should prove them.

390. COR. I. *The angle at the center of a regular polygon is equal to four right angles divided by the number of sides of the polygon.*

391. COR. II. *An interior angle of a regular polygon is equal to the sum of all the interior angles of the polygon divided by the number of sides of the polygon.*

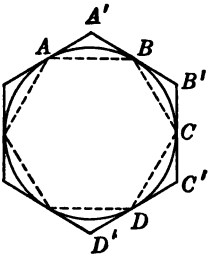
392. COR. III. *The angle at the center of a regular polygon equals an exterior angle and is the supplement of an interior angle of the polygon.*

393. COR. IV. *The radius of a regular polygon bisects the angle of the polygon to which it is drawn.*

1. A farm is 320 rods long, and rectangular in shape. From one end a square farm is cut off, leaving 120 acres. How wide is the farm and how many acres in the entire piece?

PROPOSITION III.

394. THEOREM. *If a circle is divided into any number of equal parts, the tangents drawn through the points of division form a regular circumscribed polygon.*



Given the circle $ABC\ldots$, divided into equal parts AB, BC, $CD\ldots$, with tangents at the points A, B, $C\ldots$, forming the polygon $A'B'C'\ldots$

To Prove that $A'B'C'\ldots$ is regular.

SUG. 1. $\triangle A'AB$, $B'BC$, etc., are isosceles and congruent. Why?

2. Compare AA', $A'B$, BB', $B'C$, etc.

3. Prove $A'B' = B'C' = C'D'$, etc.

4. Prove $\angle A'$, B', C', etc., equal.

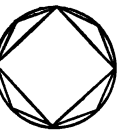
5. Apply the definition of a regular polygon.

Therefore—

395. COR. I. *If a regular polygon is circumscribed about a circle and tangents are drawn at the mid-points of the intercepted arcs, a regular circumscribed polygon of double the number of sides is formed.* § 394.

396. Cor. II. *The perimeter and the area of a regular circumscribed polygon are greater than the perimeter and the area respectively of a regular circumscribed polygon of double the number of sides.*

397. Cor. III. *If the vertices of a regular inscribed polygon are connected with the mid-points of the arcs subtended by the sides, a regular inscribed polygon of double the number of sides is formed.* § 383.



398. Cor. IV. *The perimeter and the area of a regular inscribed polygon are less than the perimeter and area respectively of a regular inscribed polygon of double the number of sides.*

2. From any point M in side BC of $\triangle ABC$ draw a sect meeting AB produced in D, so that MD is bisected by AC. Also, so that MD is divided by AC in any given ratio.

3. The ratio of similitude of two similar polygons is 5:7 and the sum of their areas is 518 square inches. Find the area of each.

4. Find the base of a rectangle with an area of 108 square feet and an altitude of 6 feet. Compare the method with that of § 379.

5. Find the area of a right triangle with an hypotenuse of 1 foot 8 inches and one leg of 1 foot in length.

6. Two sides of a triangle and the median are respectively 6, 8, and 5. Find the base.

7. If the mid-points of two adjacent sides of a parallelogram be joined the area of the triangle thus formed is one-eighth that of the parallelogram.

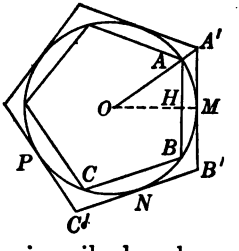
PROPOSITION IV.

399. THEOREM. *If a regular polygon is inscribed in a circle and tangents are drawn at the mid-points of the arcs subtended by the sides:*

I. *A regular circumscribed polygon is formed.*

II. *The sides of the circumscribed polygon are parallel to the sides of the inscribed polygon, each to each.*

III. *The vertices of the circumscribed polygon lie in the extended radii of the inscribed polygon.*



Given a regular inscribed polygon $ABC\ldots$, with M, N, $P\ldots$ the mid-points of the arcs subtended by the sides AB, BC, $CD\ldots$ and tangents $A'B'$, $B'C'$, $C'D'\ldots$ through the points M, N, $P\ldots$.

To Prove. I. $A'B'C'\ldots$ is regular; II. $AB \parallel A'B'$, etc.; III. A' lies in OA produced, etc.

I. SUG. § 394.

II. SUG. Draw radius $OH \perp AB$ and extend it. Where does it meet arc AB? How do AB and $A'B'$ lie with reference to OH? Complete the argument.

III. Sug. 1. $\angle A = \angle A'$. Why?

2. OA bisects $\angle A$ and OA' bisects $\angle A'$. Why? § 393.

3. OHM is a straight line $\perp AB$ and $A'B'$. Hence $\angle MOA = \angle MOA'$. Why?

4. Hence A' lies on OA. Why?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION V.

400. Problem. *To inscribe a regular hexagon in a circle.*

Given a circle with radius r.
To Inscribe a regular hexagon.
Solution.

Sug. 1. The radius and side of the required hexagon are equal. Why?

2. With the dividers lay off six equal arcs. What is the length of the subtended chord?

3. Complete the construction.

Proof.

8. If the area of a regular inscribed triangle is 30, what is the area of the regular circumscribed triangle?

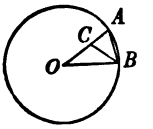
9. If the area of an inscribed square is 45, what is the area of the circumscribed square?

10. What is the numerical ratio of the apothem of a regular inscribed hexagon to that of a regular circumscribed hexagon?

PROPOSITION VI.

401. THEOREM. *If the radius of a circle is divided into extreme and mean ratio, the greater segment equals one side of a regular decagon inscribed in the circle.*

Given $\odot O$ with radius OA divided at C into extreme and mean ratio, OC being the greater segment.



To Prove OC equal to one side of a regular decagon inscribed in the circle.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw the chord AB equal to OC and join O and C to B.

2. It is to be shown that arc AB is one-tenth of the circle.

3. $\frac{OA}{OC} = \frac{OC}{AC}$. Why? § 327.

4. $\frac{OA}{AB} = \frac{AB}{AC}$. Why?

5. $\triangle OAB \sim \triangle BAC$. Why? § 282.

6. Compare $\angle ABC$ with $\angle O$, $\angle CBO$ with $\angle O$, $\angle ABO$ with $\angle O$.

7. Hence $\angle O$ is what part of 2 rt. $\angle$s? Of 4 rt. $\angle$s?

8. Hence AB subtends what fractional part of the circle?

Therefore—

402. Cor. *A regular decagon can be inscribed in a circle by dividing the radius into extreme and mean ratio and taking the greater segment as the side of the required polygon.*

PROPOSITION VII.

403. Problem. *To inscribe a square in a circle.*

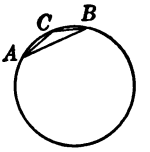
Solution.

Sug. 1. Two vertices must be the extremities of a diameter. Why?

2. How can the two other vertices be located?

3. Draw a diameter and complete the construction.

Proof.



11. Inscribe a regular polygon of 20 sides.

12. Inscribe a regular pentagon.

13. Inscribe a regular polygon of fifteen sides, called a pentadecagon.

Sug. 1. Draw a chord AB equal to the radius, and AC equal to the side of a regular inscribed decagon.

2. What part of the circle is subtended by AB? By AC?

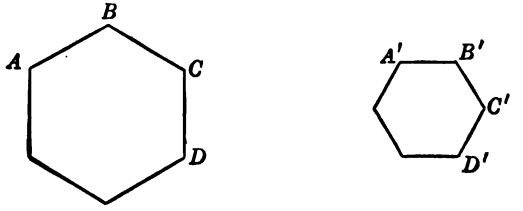
3. Hence what part of the circle is subtended by CB?

4. Complete the construction.

14. What regular polygons can be inscribed, the construction of which can be based upon that of the regular pentadecagon?

PROPOSITION VIII.

404. THEOREM. *Regular polygons of the same number of sides are similar.*



Given AD and $A'D'$, two regular polygons of the same number of sides.

To Prove $AD \sim A'D'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What must be established to prove the similarity?

2. Compare the corresponding angles A and A', B and B', etc.

3. $AB = BC = CD =$ etc.

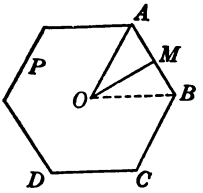
4. $A'B' = B'C' = C'D' =$ etc.

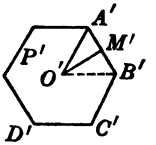
5. Dividing the members of the third equation by the corresponding members of the fourth, $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D'} =$ etc.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION IX.

405. THEOREM. *The perimeters of two similar regular polygons have the same ratio as their radii or their apothems.*





Given AD and $A'D'$, two similar regular polygons with OA and $O'A'$ their respective radii, OM and $O'M'$ their respective apothems, AB and $A'B'$ two homologous sides, and p and p' their respective perimeters.

To Prove $\frac{p}{p'} = \frac{OA}{O'A'} = \frac{OM}{O'M'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare $\frac{p}{p'}$ with $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$. Auth.

2. Draw OB and $O'B'$. Then $\triangle AOB \sim \triangle A'O'B'$. Why?

3. Then $\frac{OA}{O'A'} = \frac{OM}{O'M'} = \frac{AB}{A'B'}$. Why?

4. Complete the proof.

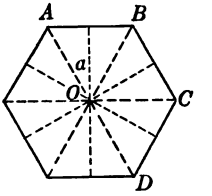
Therefore—

406. COR. *The areas of two similar regular polygons have the same ratio as the squares of their radii or the squares of their apothems.*

The proof similar to that of § 405 is left to the pupil.

PROPOSITION X.

407. THEOREM. *The area of a regular polygon is equal to one-half the product of its perimeter and apothem.*



Given a regular polygon AD, with area denoted by K, perimeter by p, and apothem by a.

To Prove $K = \frac{1}{2} p \times a$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What is the area of $\triangle AOB$? Of BOC?

2. What is the area of each $\triangle$?

3. What is the sum of the areas of all the $\triangle$s?

Therefore—

In answering Sug. 3, let $\frac{1}{2} a$ be the unit of addition and AB, BC, etc., be the respective coefficients; or indicate the addition and divide by the common factor $\frac{1}{2} a$.

15. Inscribe a regular polygon of 8 sides; of 16 sides; of 32 sides.

16. What is the locus of the centers of circles which are tangent to a given line at a given point?

17. Two parallel chords of a circle are respectively 36 and 48 inches long. The radius is 30 inches. Find the distance between the chords.

408. POSTULATE. *If the number of sides of a regular inscribed polygon be increased indefinitely by bisecting each arc and drawing chords from the points of bisection to adjacent vertices of the polygon, the difference between the apothem and the radius can be made less than any given number, however small. The same is true of the perimeter of the polygon and the circle and the areas of the two figures. The apothem approaches indefinitely near the radius in length, likewise the perimeter approaches indefinitely near the circle and the area of the polygon approaches indefinitely near the area of the circle.*

A more exact statement of the postulate is as follows:

If the number of sides of a regular inscribed polygon be increased indefinitely by bisecting each arc and drawing chords from the points of bisection to adjacent vertices of the polygon, the difference between the apothem and the radius can be made less than any given number, however small. The same is true of the perimeter of the polygon and the circle and the areas of the two figures.

The area of a circle is the area of the surface enclosed by the circle.

18. Find the dimensions of a rectangle which has a perimeter of 16 inches and an area of 15 square inches; the area of one with a perimeter of 28 feet and a diagonal of 10 feet.

19. If a parallelogram be inscribed in or circumscribed about a circle, the diagonals pass through the center.

20. If the radius of a circle is 12 inches; what is the length of a side of an inscribed square? What is the length of the apothem? What is the area of the square?

PROPOSITION XI.

409. THEOREM. *Two circles have the same ratio as their radii.*

Given two circles, c and c', with radii r and r', respectively, p and p' the respective perimeters of the similar inscribed polygons, p_2, p_2' being the respective perimeters of two similar inscribed polygons of double the number of sides, etc.

To Prove $\frac{c}{c'} = \frac{r}{r'}$.

Proof. 1. By § 405 $\frac{p}{p'} = \frac{p_2}{p_2'} = \frac{p_3}{p_3'} \ldots\ldots\ldots = \frac{r}{r'}$

2. According to § 408 the difference between the circles and the perimeters of the inscribed polygons can be made as small as one chooses. Hence if x and x' be any small numbers there must be a point in the sequence of inscribed polygons where $c - p$ and $c' - p'$ are less than x and x' respectively. If these small differences $c' - p'$ be denoted by y and y', then $c - p = y$ and $c' - p' = y'$.

3. Hence $\frac{p}{r} = \frac{p'}{r'}$ may be written

$$\frac{c-y}{r} = \frac{c'-y'}{r'}$$

4. From 3 follows

$$\frac{c}{r} = \frac{c'}{r'} - \left(\frac{y'}{r'} - \frac{y}{r}\right).$$

5. But since y and y' can be taken smaller than any given number the expression in parenthesis may for all practicable purposes be neglected.

6. Hence $\frac{c}{r} = \frac{c'}{r'}$ and $\frac{c}{c'} = \frac{r}{r'}$.

Therefore—

410. Cor. I. *The ratio of a circle to its diameter is a fixed number whatever the radius.*

Proof. From the above proposition $\frac{c}{c'} = \frac{r}{r'} = \frac{2r}{2r'} = \frac{d}{d'}$, in which d and d' are the respective diameters. From this follows $\frac{c}{d} = \frac{c'}{d'}$. From this proportion follows the corollary. This ratio is represented by the Greek letter π.

411. Cor. II. $\frac{c}{d} = \pi$ or $c = \pi d = 2\pi r$.

21. Find the area of the square in the preceding example by use of the apothem as a check upon the first computation.

22 If A and A' are the areas of two similar polygons, m and m' two homologous sides, and $A = 2A'$, then $m = m'\sqrt{2}$.

23. If A' is 16, find A. If A' is 12, find A. If A is 16, find A'. If A is 12, find A'. Find the coefficient of m' if A is $\frac{1}{3}A'$; if A is $3A'$; if A is KA'.

24. If one acute angle of a right triangle is 60°, prove that the area of the equilateral triangle constructed on the hypotenuse is equal to the area of a rectangle the adjacent sides of which are the two legs of the right triangle.

412. Cor. III. *The area of two circles have the same ratio as the squares of their radii.*

Let C and C' represent the two areas. Complete the proof in a manner similar to that of § 409.

In this proof the area of a circle can be approximated to any desired degree of accuracy, far beyond any demands of practical measurement.

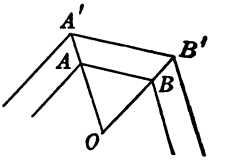
413. Cor. IV. *The areas of two circles have the same ratio as the squares of their diameters.*

414. Cor. V. *Areas of similar sectors of two circles have the same ratio as the squares of their respective radii and diameters.*

414. (*a*) Similar arcs, sectors, and segments are those that correspond to equal central angles.

25. If two triangles have two sides of one equal to two sides of the other respectively and the included angles supplementary, they are equal.

26. The diagonals of a parallelogram divide it into four triangles equal in area.



27. Draw two concentric regular hexagons, one being twice the size of the other.

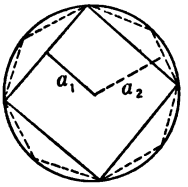
Sug. Having drawn one, with radius OA, let $x = OA'$ be the unknown radius of the other. Then x can be found from the proportion $\frac{\triangle AOB}{\triangle A'O'B'} = \frac{1}{2} = \frac{\overline{OA}^2}{x^2}$.

28. If 10 is the length of the radius of a regular hexagon, what is the length of the radius of a regular hexagon twice as large?

29. Divide a regular hexagon into four equal parts by concentric regular hexagons.

PROPOSITION XII.

415. THEOREM. *The area of a circle is equal to one-half the product of its length and its radius.*



Given a circle with radius r, length c, and area A.

To Prove $A = \frac{1}{2}cr$.

Proof. SUG. 1. If a sequence of regular polygons be inscribed, in each succeeding polygon of the sequence the number of sides being doubled, the apothem approaches the radius, the perimeter approaches the circle, and the area of the polygon approaches that of the circle. § 408.

2. The area of any of the polygons is $\frac{1}{2}ap$, a and p representing the apothem and perimeter respectively.

3. Substituting for these quantities those to which they, by this process, are made to approach, one obtains $A = \frac{1}{2}cr$.

Therefore—

Note.—A more rigorous demonstration of the above theorem and of similar theorems which follow can be made by use of the theory of limits. In such a demonstration the possibility of making the substitution in Step 3 of the above demonstration would be considered and proved in some detail. It is not thought wise to introduce such considerations at this point.

416. COR. I. *The area of a circle equals* πr^2 *or* $\frac{\pi d^2}{4}$.

Proof. Substitute for c, in $\frac{1}{2}cr$, its value $2\pi r$.

417. COR. II. *The area of a sector equals one-half the product of its radius and its arc.*

Proof. SUG. 1. Prove by a method similar to that of § 297 that two sectors are to each other as their angles.

2. $$\frac{\text{Sector of arc } a}{\text{Sector of arc } 2\pi r} = \frac{a}{2\pi r}.$$

3. But a sector of arc $2\pi r$ has an area of πr^2. Substitute this and obtain a sector of arc $a = \frac{1}{2}a \times r$.

Note.—Since the formulas sector of arc $a = \frac{1}{2}ar$ for area involve the number π, their accuracy, as well as that of the formula for length, depend upon the accuracy with which the number π is computed. The pupil should note that this computation has not yet been made. § 419.

30. Two tangents are drawn to a circle of 8-inch radius from a point 12 inches from the center. Find the length of the chord joining the points of tangency.

31. Two registers similar in form are respectively 10 and 20 inches in width. What is the ratio of the amounts of air passing through them, the pressure being the same?

32. Two circular windows are respectively 24 and 30 inches in diameter. What is the ratio of their respective efficiencies for admitting light?

33. What is the locus of the vertices of all isosceles triangles on a given base?

34. Given $\triangle ABC$ with D any point in BC extended. Find a point E in AB or in AB produced such that the area of $\triangle EBD$ will equal that of $\triangle ABC$; will be one-half the area of $\triangle ABC$; will be double the area of $\triangle ABC$; will have any given ratio to the area of $\triangle ABC$.

35. The angle of a sector is 30° and the radius is 24 feet. What is the area of the sector? Express in terms of π.

36. The area of a sector is 88 square inches and its angle is 60°. Find the diameter of the circle.

37. The moon has approximately one-fourth the diameter of the earth. At a point equidistant from them what is the ratio of their respective "moonshine" powers?

38. Two rectangular windows similar in form are respectively 2 feet 6 inches and 3 feet in width. What is the ratio of the amounts of light they admit, other conditions being equal?

39. What is the locus of a point equidistant from two concentric circles?

Distance from a circle is measured on a radius or its extension.

40. Inscribe a regular triangle. A regular polygon of twelve sides. Of twenty-four sides.

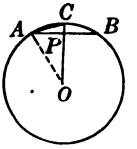
41. Measure the circumferences of several circular objects as a plate, the end of a pail, barrel, or stove pipe. Divide the circumference by the diameter. Average the several results to determine the approximate value of π.

42. Circles are described upon the three sides of a right triangle as diameters. Show that the area of the one on the hypotenuse equals the sum of the others.

43. The diameter of a circle is one of the legs of an isosceles triangle. Show that the base is bisected by the circle.

PROPOSITION XIII.

418. PROBLEM. *Given the radius of a circle and the side of a regular inscribed polygon, required to find the side of a regular inscribed polygon of double the number of sides, in terms of the given quantities.*



Given a circle O with radius r, AB a side of a regular inscribed polygon, and AC a side of a regular inscribed polygon of double the number of sides.

To Determine AC in terms of AB and r.

SUG. 1. In $\triangle APC$ express AC in terms of AP and CP (§ 376) and then in terms of AB and CP.

2. Express CP in terms of r (*i. e.* OC) and OP. Express OP in terms of r (*i. e.* AO) and AP (§ 376) and then in terms of r and AB.

3. Express CP in terms of r and AB.

4. Express AC in terms of r and AB.

This relation when simplified becomes

$$AC = \sqrt{2r^2 - r\sqrt{4r^2 - \overline{AB}^2}}$$

5. If r be taken equal to unity, this becomes $AC = \sqrt{2 - \sqrt{4 - \overline{AB}^2}}$

A partial statement of the details of the above steps is as follows:

$$AC = \sqrt{\overline{AP}^2+\overline{CP}^2} = \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2+\overline{CP}^2} = \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2+(r-OP)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2+(r-\sqrt{r^2-\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{BA}^2})^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2+r^2-2r\sqrt{r^2-\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2}+r^2-\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2}$$

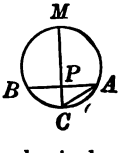
$$= \sqrt{2r^2-2r\sqrt{r^2-\tfrac{1}{4}\overline{AB}^2}} = \sqrt{2r^2-r\sqrt{4r^2-\overline{AB}^2}}$$

By means of this formula, if the length of the perimeter of any regular inscribed polygon is known, the length of the perimeter of a regular inscribed polygon of double the number of sides can be computed. From this result the perimeter can be computed in like manner for a polygon the number of sides of which is again doubled. This process can be continued indefinitely.

44. The radius is one and a side of a regular inscribed triangle is $\sqrt{3}$. Use the following formula to find the side of a regular inscribed hexagon. Verify the result by § 418. Formula,

$$s_6 = \sqrt{2-\sqrt{(4-s_3^2)}}$$

A second method of solving the problem of § 418 is as follows:



To find AC in terms of r and AB.

SUG. $AC = \sqrt{MC \times PC}$

45. Within a given circle construct 3 equal circles tangent to each other and to the given circle.

46. Construct three circles tangent to each other and externally tangent to a given circle.

47. Within a regular triangle construct three equal circles, each tangent to the two others and to two sides of the triangle.

PROPOSITION XIV.

419. PROBLEM. *To compute approximately the ratio of a circle to its diameter.*

SUG. 1. For convenience the radius is taken as unity. Why may this be done?

2. The perimeter of a regular inscribed hexagon is 6, which may be regarded as a first approximate value of the circumference. The first approximation of π is then $\frac{p_6}{d}=\frac{6}{2}=3$.

3. From the formula of § 418, the value of s_{12}, which represents the length of a side of a regular inscribed polygon of 12 sides is

$$\sqrt{2-\sqrt{(4-1^2)}} = .51763809$$

and consequently p_{12}, or the perimeter, is $12s_{12}$, or 6.21165708. From this is obtained a second and closer approximation of π,

$$\frac{p_{12}}{d}=\frac{6.21165708}{2}=3.10582854.$$

4. Similarly

$$s_{24}=\sqrt{2-\sqrt{4-(.51763809)^2}}$$

and $p_{24}=24\times s_{24}$.

5. Certain of the computed results are given in the following table:

No. Sides	One Side	Perimeter	π
6	1	6.	3.
12	$\sqrt{2-\sqrt{3}} = .51763809$	6.21165708	3.10582854
24	$\sqrt{2-\sqrt{4-(.51763809)^2}} = .26105238$	6.26525722	3.13262861
48	$\sqrt{1-\sqrt{4-(.26105238)^2}} = .13080626$	6.27870041	3.13935020
96	$\sqrt{2-\sqrt{4-(.13080626)^2}} = .06543817$	6.28206396	3.14103198
192	$\sqrt{2-\sqrt{4-(.06543817)^2}} = .03272346$	6.28290510	3.14145255

The approximation of π in common use is 3.1416. For ordinary work $3\frac{1}{7}$ is sufficiently accurate.

420. SCHOLIUM. Archimedes (born 287 B. C.) found an approximate value for π. He proved that its value is between $3\frac{1}{7}$ and $3\frac{10}{71}$. In modern times the value of π has been computed to a large number of decimal places, two men, Clausen and Dase, independently of each other, having computed the value to the two-hundredth decimal place. Other computers have given the value to over five hundred decimal places but their results have not been verified. The number π is incommensurable with 1, *i. e.*, it is neither an integer nor a fraction, and hence cannot be expressed exactly by any number of decimal places.

48. Compute the length of the perimeter of a 24 sided polygon, P_{24}, with radius unity and compare the result with that given in the table of § 419.

49. If the radius is unity, what is the length of one side of a regular inscribed triangle?

50. A circular silo is 30 feet in diameter. How many square feet in its floor?

51. Given a circle with a radius 5. What is its circumference or length and area?

52. The radius of a circle is 15 rods. Find its length, or circumference, and its area.

53. With a tape line measure the circumference of a tree and compute its diameter.

54. Draw a circle on paper or blackboard. Measure its diameter and compute its length and its area.

55. The length of a circle is fourteen. What is its diameter and its area?

56. The area of a circle is 28. Find the length and the diameter.

57. Four 6-inch circles have their centers at the corners of a square and each is tangent to two others. What is the area of the smallest square that can enclose them? Auth.

58. What is the area of the space enclosed by the circles of the preceding exercise?

59. What is the area of the circle externally tangent to the above four circles?

60. What is the area of the circle internally tangent to the above four circles?

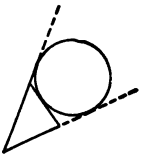
61. Three 6-inch circles are tangent externally, what is the area of the triangle of their centers? What is the area of the space included between the circles?

62. What is the length of the apothem and what is the area of the triangle circumscribing them?

63. What is the area of the circle tangent to them internally?

64. If the area included by three equal circles tangent to each other is 5 acres, what is their radius?

65. A circle is escribed to a triangle when it is tangent to one side and to the two other sides produced. A triangle may have three escribed circles. Given a triangle, construct the three escribed circles.



SUG. Consider the principle of inscribing a circle in a triangle.

66. Find the area of the ring included between two concentric circles with radii of 8 and 10 inches respectively.

67. Find the length of a sect which is a chord of one of two concentric circles and a tangent to the other. Express the length in terms of the two radii.

68. A three-inch and a five-inch drain tile unite. What size of tile is necessary to continue the drain?

69. Three 5-inch tiles unite. What size of tile should be used at the union? Two methods.

70. If a straight line cuts two concentric circles, the segments included between the circles are equal.

71. If two diameters intersect at right angles, the sum of the squares upon the segments equals the square upon the diameter.

72. A saw log is 15 inches in diameter. What is the area of the cross section of the largest squared timber which can be sawn from this log? What proportion of the log goes into slabs?

73. If the above log were cut into a timber with rectangular cross section eight inches thick, what would be the cross section area? If the slabs are wasted, which of these two methods of sawing is more profitable?

74. The radius of a circle inscribed in a regular triangle is one-third its altitude.

75. Show that seven equal circles can be so drawn that one of them is "internally" tangent to the six others and that each of these six is tangent to two of the six.

76. Show that one circle can be so drawn as to include the circles of the preceding exercise and be tangent to six of them.

77. What part of the area of the large circle in above exercise is included in the area of the seven equal circles?

78. If the radius of the equal circles is 4, what is the area of that portion of the large circle which is external to the small circles?

79. Six dimes can be placed so that each is tangent to two others and also to a seventh dime. What is the ratio of the diameter of the dime to that of the circle which would circumscribe them all?

80. The sides of two regular hexagons are 3 and 5. If the area of the former is M, what is the area of the latter?

81. A regular hexagon of 63 square feet is inscribed in a circle. Another is circumscribed about the circle. What is the area of the latter?

CHAPTER VI.

Incommensurable Magnitudes.

421. In the discussion of quantities thus far only commensurable magnitudes have been considered, except in theorems involving π.

Incommensurable Magnitudes. (§ 249.) Two magnitudes of the same kind that can not both be exactly measured by the same unit however small are incommensurable.

Thus 5 and $\sqrt{3}$ are incommensurable.

422. Incommensurable Ratio. The ratio of two incommensurable quantities is an *incommensurable ratio* or an *incommensurable number*.

Thus the ratio $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{1}$ is an incommensurable number.

Approximations to the value of an incommensurable number may be obtained by neglecting fractional parts of the unit used. For example, the use of 1 as a unit gives as a first approximation of $\sqrt{3}$ the number 1. The use of .1 as a unit gives 1.7. The use of .01 as a unit gives 1.73. The use of .00001 as a unit gives 1.73205. This approximation may be carried to any desired degree of accuracy by the use of still smaller units.

An incommensurable number is neither a whole number nor a fraction, for if it were either the original quantities would not be incommensurable with respect to each other.

The pupil must not lose sight of the fact that an incommensurable number is as truly existent as any other. This fact is well illustrated by the consideration, for example, of the diagonal of a 1-inch square. That such a sect exists and that it has a length is not questioned. Geometry proves that its length expressed in inches is $\sqrt{2}$. This is an incommensurable number, for if not it is an integer or a fraction. But it is neither of these because it is a number that when squared gives 2. It is quite evident that no integer when squared gives 2 and also that no fraction when squared will give an integer.

Thus if $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{2}{3}$, a and b cannot be incommensurable with respect to each other. This is seen as follows: By proportion $\frac{b-a}{a} = \frac{1}{2}$. Put $b - a = r$ and obtain $a = 2r$ and from this $b = 3r$.

The results in all *practical* measurements are but approximations of the magnitudes measured, depending for accuracy upon the skill of the operator and the precision of the instruments used. But when the results obtained are within the degree of accuracy required, they are used as if they were the actual magnitudes and not approximations.

Hence the previous demonstrations involving incommensurable magnitudes satisfy all demands of practical usage. For theoretical purposes it is interesting and important to know the absolute truths in the cases before considered and the discussion of such requires additional demonstrations of considerable rigor.

423. CONSTANT. A quantity that is given the same value through a discussion is a *constant.*

424. VARIABLE. A quantity which is given different values in a discussion is a variable. In general variables in changing values pass through a succession of values according to some law which serves to distinguish them from other variables.

425. LIMIT OF A VARIABLE. When a variable by its law of change differs from a constant by a variable quantity which may become and remain less than any assigned quantity however small, but not zero, this constant is the *limit of the variable.*

A variable may or may not attain its limit. This is a matter dependent upon the law under which the variable exists. The successive approximations of $\sqrt{2}$ may be considered as the successive values of a variable which has $\sqrt{2}$ as its limit. In this case the variable does not attain its limit. In the case of the sequence of regular inscribed polygons used in the theorems on the circle, the variable apothem, perimeter, and area do not attain their limits. On the other hand variable segments between the sides of a triangle may decrease in length till at the vertex they reach their limit zero; chords of a circle may increase in length until they reach their limit the diameter.

If a point move along a sect in such a manner as to traverse one-half of it in a given period of time, one-half the remaining sect in a second period, and so on indefinitely, it will never traverse the entire sect. It is evident, however, that by continuing the process for a sufficient number of periods of time the portion still untraversed by the point will become and remain less

than any given sect, however small. The entire sect is then the limit of the variable distance traversed by the point.

By increasing the number of sides of an inscribed regular polygon (§ 408) indefinitely the perimeter of the polygon approaches the circle as its limit and the area of the polygon approaches the area of the circle as its limit, for it is evident that the difference between the perimeter and the circle and the difference between the two areas may, by this process, be made less than any assigned amount.

PROPOSITION I.

426. THEOREM OF LIMITS. *If two variables are always equal and each has a limit, their limits are equal.*

Proof. Let the two equal variables be x and y and let their respective limits be the constants a and b. Represent $a - x$ by v and $b - y$ by u. Then by subtraction follows $(a - x) - (b - y) = v - u$. Since $x = y$ this becomes $a - b = v - u$. By the definition of a limit (§ 425) a and b are constants and therefore $a - b$ is a constant. Hence $v - u$, which equals $a - b$, is constant. But since v and u may both be considered as small as one desires and are variables the expression $v - u$ cannot be constant unless it is zero, in which case $a - b$ is zero and $a = b$.

1. What part of the diameter of a circle is the apothem of an inscribed regular triangle? How can this conclusion be used as a basis for inscribing a regular triangle?

427. The following statements are here assumed without proof, although demonstrations of them are easily made from the definitions on limits.

1. *The product of a variable by a constant is a variable and its limit is the product of the constant and the limit of the variable.*

If the limit of x is a, then the limit of kx is ka, k being a finite constant.

2. *The quotient of a variable by a constant is a variable and its limit is the quotient of the limit of the variable by the constant.*

If the limit of x is a, then the limit of $\frac{x}{k}$ is $\frac{a}{k}$, k being a finite constant different from zero.

2. A regular hexagon with 6-inch side is inscribed in a circle. Find the area of the regular inscribed triangle.

3. If the angle of a parallelogram is bisected and the bisector extended to the opposite side an isosceles triangle is formed.

4. The areas of two similar pentagons have the ratio $\frac{169}{81}$. What is the ratio of two homologous diagonals?

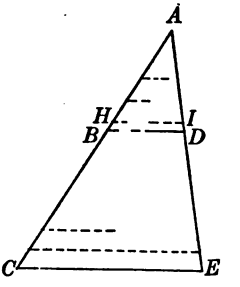
5. Divide 10 into mean and extreme ratio and thus find the side of a regular decagon inscribed in a circle where radius is 10. Find the apothem of this decagon, the area. Find the area of the segments cut off by the decagon.

6. Find the formula for the area of the segments cut off by a regular decagon inscribed in a circle whose radius is R.

7. Substitute 10 for R in the formula of Ex. 6 and compare the results with those of Ex. 5.

PROPOSITION II.

428. THEOREM. *If a line is parallel to the base of a triangle, the sides are divided into proportional segments.*



The following demonstration is for the case omitted in § 251.

Given $\triangle ACE$ with $BD \parallel CE$ and AB incommensurable with BC.

To Prove $\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{AD}{DE}$.

Proof. SUG. 31. With some unit commensurable with BC divide AB and BC. A remainder, as HB, will occur in the division of AB. If parallel lines are drawn through the points of division DE will be divided into equal segments and the line through H must fall somewhere between the intersection of the preceding parallel line and D, as at I, otherwise HI would not be parallel to the other parallel lines.

2. Then by § 251, $\frac{AH}{BC} = \frac{AI}{DE}$.

3. A sequence of diminishing units makes AH a variable with AB as its limit. Hence by § 427 $\frac{AH}{BC}$ is a variable with $\frac{AB}{BC}$ as its limit. Similarly AI is a variable with AD as its limit and $\frac{AI}{DE}$ is a variable with $\frac{AD}{DE}$ as its limit.

4. By § 426 the limits of the two variables $\frac{AH}{BC}$ and $\frac{AI}{DE}$ are equal and hence $\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{AD}{DE}$.

Therefore—

8. Produce the formula for the area of the segments cut off from a circle by the sides of an inscribed equilateral triangle of radius R.

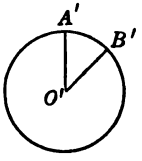
SUG. The radius of a regular polygon is the radius of the circumscribed circle. Substitute 10 for R in the formula.

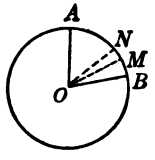
9. Produce the formula for the area of the segments cut off from a circle by the sides of a regular inscribed hexagon of radius R. Substitute 10, 8, 6, in the formula.

10. A certain farm in New York State was measured as follows: The sides respectively were 30, 20, 18, 60 and 40 rods; the angles in the same order, 90°, 112°, 120°, 99° and 119°. Draw to a scale and compute the arc. Express the answer in acres. Work by another method. Test the angles to see if they were correctly measured.

PROPOSITION III.

429. THEOREM. *In the same or in equal circles, angles at the center have the same ratio as their intercepted arcs.*





The following demonstration is for the case omitted in § 297.

Given two circles O and O' with $\angle AOB$ incommensurable with respect to $\angle A'O'B'$, AB and $A'B'$ being the respective intercepted arcs.

To Prove $\dfrac{\angle O'}{\angle O} = \dfrac{\text{arc } AB}{\text{arc } A'B'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. With an angle commensurable with $\angle O'$ as a unit angle measure the two angles. In $\angle O$ there will be a remainder, as $\angle MOB$, which is less than the unit angle, having the intercepted arc MB (the point M always falling between the end of the last unit arc and point B).

2. By § 297 $\dfrac{\angle AOM}{\angle A'O'B'} = \dfrac{AM}{A'B'}$.

3. A sequence of diminishing units makes $\angle AOM$ a variable with $\angle AOB$ as its limit. Hence by § 427 $\frac{\angle AOM}{\angle A'O'B'}$ is a variable with $\frac{\angle AOB}{\angle A'O'B'}$ as its limit. Similarly arc AM is a variable with arc AB as its limit and $\frac{AM}{A'B'}$ is variable with $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$ as its limit.

4. By § 426 the limits of these variable quotients are equal and hence

$$\frac{\angle O}{\angle O'} = \frac{\angle AOB}{\angle A'O'B'} = \frac{\text{arc } AB}{\text{arc } A'B'}.$$

430. A second demonstration of § 429. Assume that $\frac{\angle AOB}{\angle A'O'B'} < \frac{AB}{A'B'}$ and take N so that $\frac{\angle AON}{\angle A'O'B'} = \frac{AB}{A'B'}$ (1)

Measure the given angles by a unit angle less than $\angle NOB$. One point of division will fall then between N and B, say at M, and by § 297 $\frac{\angle AOM}{\angle A'O'B'} = \frac{AM}{A'B'}$. (2)

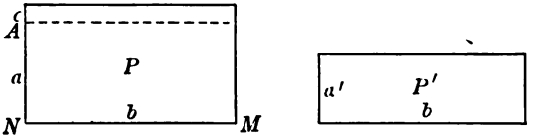
From (1) and (2) follows $\frac{\angle AOM}{\angle AON} = \frac{AM}{AB}$ which is not true since $\angle AOM > \angle AON$ and arc $AM <$ arc AB. Hence the assumption is false. Similarly it can be shown that $\frac{\angle AOB}{\angle A'O'B'}$ is not greater than $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$.

Therefore—

Apply this method of proof to Prop. II.

PROPOSITION IV.

431. THEOREM. *Two rectangles having equal bases are proportional to their altitudes.*



The following demonstration is for the case omitted in § 357.

Given two rectangles P and P' with equal bases and altitudes a and a' incommensurable with respect to each other.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{a}{a'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Measure altitudes a and a' with a unit commensurable with a'. In the measurement of a there will then remain a segment c less than the unit. Why? Through the points of division pass lines parallel to the bases.

2. By § 357 Rect. $\frac{AM}{P'} = \frac{\text{Alt. } AN}{\text{Alt. } a'}$.

3. A sequence of diminishing units makes rectangle AM a variable with the limit P. Hence by § 427 the ratio of rectangle AM to P' is a variable with $\frac{P}{P'}$ as its limit. Similarly altitude AN is a variable with a as its limit and hence the ratio of altitude AN to a' is a variable with $\frac{a}{a'}$ as its limit.

4. By § 426 the limits of these variables are equal and hence $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{a}{a'}$.

Therefore—

Adapt the demonstration of § 430 to this theorem.

13. Find the area of a regular triangle whose radius is 6 in.

14. Find the area of a regular decagon whose radius is 8 in.

15. Find the area of a regular hexagon whose radius is 12 in.

16. Find the area of a regular quadrilateral whose radius is 14 in.

17. Find the radius of a circle whose area is equal to the sum of the areas of three circles whose radii are 3 in., 4 in., and 5 in., respectively.

18. Find the radius of a circle equal in area to four times the area of a circle of radius 5 in.

19. Find the base of a triangle whose altitude is 7 in. and whose area is equal to the area of a circle whose radius is 7 in.

20. Find the altitude of a triangle whose base is the diameter of a circle and whose area equals the area of the circle.

21. Given a circle of radius R. Find the side of an equilateral triangle whose area equals the area of the circle.

22. Given a circle of radius R. Find the side of a square equal in area to the circle.

PROPOSITION V.

432. THEOREM. *Two circles are to each other as their radii.*

This proof of § 409 is based on the theory of limits.

Given two circles c and c' with radii r and r' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{c}{c'} = \frac{r}{r'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Inscribe in the circles c and c' similar regular polygons with respective perimeters p and p'. Then $\frac{p}{p'} = \frac{r}{r'}$ and $p = p' \times \frac{r}{r'}$.

2. By increasing the number of sides p becomes a variable with c as its limit and p' becomes a variable with c' as its limit. Hence by § 427 the product $p' \times \frac{r}{r'}$ is a variable with $c \times \frac{r}{r'}$ as its limit.

3. By § 426 the limits of these variables are equal and $c = c' \times \frac{r}{r'}$ and hence $\frac{c}{c'} = \frac{r}{r'}$.

Therefore—

23. A circle is circumscribed about an equilateral triangle and another circle is inscribed in the triangle. Find the ratio of the areas of the two circles. Find the ratio of the circles.

PROPOSITION VI.

433. THEOREM. *The areas of two circles are to each other as the squares of their radii.* (§ 412.)

Prove this theorem in a manner like that of § 432.

434. A second proof of § 432.

SUG. 1. Inscribe in c and c' similar regular polygons with perimeters p and p' respectively.

Then $\frac{p}{p'} = \frac{r}{r'}$. Why?

2. Assume $\frac{c}{c'} > \frac{r}{r'}$ and hence $c > c' \times \frac{r}{r'}$.

Also $p < c$ and $p' < c'$. § 396.

3. Since in the sequence of inscribed polygons there is a point at which the inscribed polygon is nearer to c than any assigned number, consider a polygon q inscribed in c so that $q > c' \times \frac{r}{r'}$. Let q' be the similar polygon inscribed in c'. Then $\frac{q}{q'} = \frac{r}{r'}$, and $q = q' \times \frac{r}{r'}$.

4. Since $q' < c'$ it follows that $q' \times \frac{r}{r'} < c' \times \frac{r}{r'}$ and hence $q < c' \times \frac{r}{r'}$. But as this is contrary to fact the assumption in step 2 is false.

5. Similarly prove that $\frac{c}{c'}$ cannot be less than $\frac{r}{r'}$.

Therefore—

435. Adapt the demonstration § 434 to theorem § 433.

A PAGE FOR REFERENCE

$16\frac{1}{2}$ ft. = 1 rd.
$5\frac{1}{2}$ yds. = 1 rd.
320 rds. = 1 mile.
5280 ft. = 1 mile.
160 sq. rods = 1 acre.
640 acres = 1 square mile.
2150.42 cu. in. = 1 bu.
231 cu. in. = 1 gallon.
31.5 gallons = 1 bbl.
$\sqrt{2} = 1.4142.$
$\sqrt{3} = 1.7321.$
$\sqrt{\pi} = 1.7725.$
$\frac{1}{\pi} = .3183.$

Approximate Values:
$62\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. = weight of cu. ft. of water.
1 cu. foot = .8 bu.
1 barrel = $4\frac{1}{5}$ cu. ft.
1 cu. foot = $7\frac{1}{2}$ gallons.
$\pi = 3\frac{1}{7}$.

In an oblique triangle $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 \pm 2cm$, m being the projection of b on c.

$$h_a = \frac{2}{a}\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$$

$$m_a = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2(b^2+c^2)-a^2}$$

$$d_a = \frac{2}{b+c}\sqrt{abs(s-a)}$$

Area of triangle $= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$

Area of equilateral triangle $= \frac{s^2}{4}\sqrt{3}$

Area of regular polygon $= \frac{1}{2}PA$

Area of trapezoid $= \frac{1}{2}a(b_1 + b_2)$

Area of circle $= \pi R^2$

Length of circle $= 2\pi R$

The areas of similar plane figures have the same ratio as the squares of homologous lines.

SOLID GEOMETRY

CHAPTER VII.

LINES AND PLANES.

436. SOLID GEOMETRY. That portion of Geometry which treats of figures the parts of which are not confined to a single plane (§ 19) is *Solid Geometry.*

The results of plane geometry furnish the basis for investigations in solid geometry, but it is to be remembered that the statements of plane geometry are made with respect to figures which are entirely in one plane and are not necessarily true in solid geometry. For instance, it has been proved in plane geometry that only one perpendicular can be erected to a line at a given point, but in solid geometry many perpendiculars can be so erected. This may be illustrated by the spokes of a wheel all of which are perpendicular to its axis. Therefore in solid geometry the theorems of plane geometry must not be applied unless the reference is to parts of a figure all of which are in one plane; but such theorems may be applied first to one plane, then to another, and so on. The pupil will be much helped in the study of solid geometry by noticing that most of the theorems are but extensions or generalizations of theorems previously studied in the plane geometry.

437. The relations of the parts of a figure or figures in a plane are not changed by moving the plane containing them from one position to another. § 50 (4).

438. A PLANE. A surface such that the straight line joining any two of its points lies entirely in the surface is a *plane.* (§ 18.) A plane is unlimited in extent and from the definition it follows that if a straight line of a plane be indefinitely extended, it can never leave the plane. A plane *embraces a line,* or is passed through a line, when the line lies wholly in the plane.

439. INTERSECTION OF PLANES. That portion of two planes which is common to both is their *intersection.*

440. PLANE DETERMINED. A plane is *determined* by certain lines or points when no other plane can embrace those lines or points without coinciding with the first plane.

441. POSTULATE. *A plane can be revolved about a line as an axis.*

Hence it may be inferred that a plane while embracing a line can take an infinite number of positions; and that, as a plane is unlimited in extent, all points in space can be embraced by the plane in the course of one complete revolution.

PROPOSITION I.

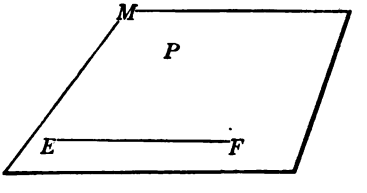
442. THEOREM. *A plane is determined—*

I. B*y a straight line and a point without the line.*

II. *By three points not in a straight line.*

III. *By two intersecting straight lines.*

IV. *By two parallel straight lines.*



I. **Given** the straight line EF and the point P not in EF.

To Prove that EF and P determine a plane.

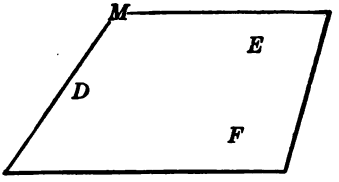
Proof. SUG. 1. Through line EF pass a plane and revolve it about EF as an axis until it contains the point P. § 441.

2. How much can the plane be revolved either way about EF and still contain point P? Why? § 4, § 5.

3. How many planes can embrace the given point and given line?

4. ∴ EF and P determine the plane MN. § 440.

Therefore—

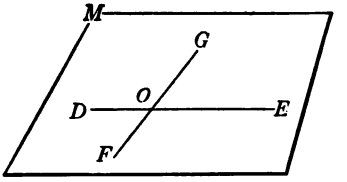


II. **Given** points D, E, F not in a straight line.

To Prove that D, E, F determine a plane.

Proof. SUG. Connect two of the points, and complete the demonstration.

Therefore—



III. **Given** *DE* and *FG*, two intersecting lines.

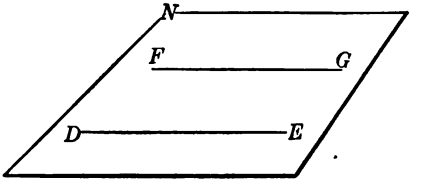
To Prove that *DE* and *FG* determine a plane.

Proof. Sug. 1. Since the lines may be unlimited in extent, let *E* be any particular point in *DE* other than *O*. Then *FG* and *E* determine a plane. Why?

2. This plane contains the given lines. Why?

3. There is but one such, for if two planes contained the given lines they would each contain *FG* and *E*. This is impossible. Case I.

Therefore—



IV. **Given** *DE* and *FG*, two parallel lines.

To Prove that *DE* and *FG* determine a plane.

Proof. SUG. 1. By definition of parallel lines there is at least one plane containing these lines. Represent it by N.

2. If there is more than one plane through these lines, there will be more than one plane containing DE and F, a point on FG. This is impossible by Case I.

Therefore—

1. A straight line can intersect a plane in but one point.

SUG. Suppose two points of the line to be on the plane.

2. Three straight lines each intersecting the two others, but not in a common point, lie in a plane.

3. What is the greatest number of planes that may be determined by any combination of two intersecting lines and a point? By three parallel lines?

4. A carpenter wishing to determine whether a board or other surface is a plane, places a straight edge (try-square) upon it in various positions. What is the test of the straight edge and why does it determine the question involved?

5. Can two lines be so placed as not to lie in one plane?

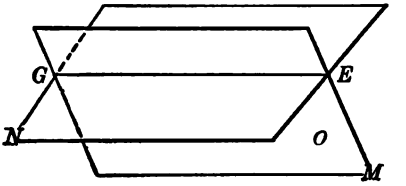
6. Can four points be so placed as not to lie in one plane? Give half a dozen illustrations of mechanical difficulties growing out of the answer.

7. Which is the more likely to stand firm, a three or a four legged stool? Why?

443. POSTULATE. *Two intersecting planes have at least two points in common.*

PROPOSITION II.

444. THEOREM. *The intersection of two planes is a straight line.*



Given two intersecting planes, M and N, with two points E and G in common. § 443.

To Prove that the intersection of M and N is the straight line EG. § 439.

Proof. SUG. 1. Where does line EG lie with respect to each plane? Why?

2. Let O be any point in plane M outside of line EG. Can O lie in plane N? Why? § 442.

3. What are the only points common to planes M and N?

Therefore—

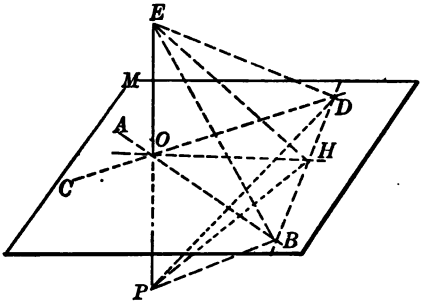
445. THE FOOT OF A LINE. The point in which a line meets a plane is the *foot* of the line.

446. PERPENDICULAR TO A PLANE. A line is *perpendicular to a plane* when it is perpendicular to every line in the plane passing through its foot. The plane is then said to be perpendicular to the line.

447. OBLIQUE TO A PLANE. When a line is oblique to one or more lines of a plane, it is *oblique to the plane.*

PROPOSITION III.

448. THEOREM. *If a straight line is perpendicular to two lines of a plane at their point of intersection, it is perpendicular to the plane.*



Given $EO \perp AB$ and CD at O, and plane M determined by AB and CD.

To Prove $EO \perp$ plane M.

Proof. SUG. 1. Extend OE to P, making $OP = OE$, and let OH be any line of the plane through O. Draw BD and let H be the point in which it meets OH. Connect both E and P with the points B, H, and D.

2. In the $\triangle BEP$ compare BE and BP. In $\triangle DEP$ compare DE and DP. § 73.

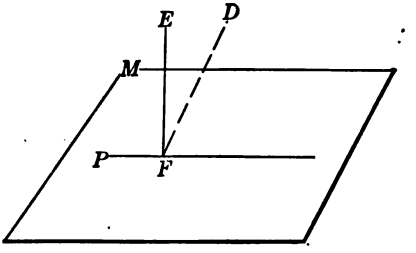
3. Compare $\measuredangle EBD$ and PBD; $\measuredangle EBD$ and PBD. Auth.

4. Compare $\measuredangle EBH$ and PBH; lines EH and PH. Auth.

5. Compare $\measuredangle EOH$ and POH; $\measuredangle EOH$ and POH. What relation does EO bear to OH? Or relate EO to OH by § 76.

Therefore—

449. Cor. *At a point in a plane only one perpendicular to a plane can be erected.*



Given $EF \perp$ plane M at point F.

To Prove EF the only perpendicular to M at F.

Proof. If another perpendicular can be erected, represent it by DF. The lines EF and DF determine a plane (§ 442) which will intersect plane M in a straight line as PF. Then in this plane, both EF and DF are perpendicular to PF at point F. Is this possible? Why?

Therefore—

8. What is the locus of a point common to two planes?

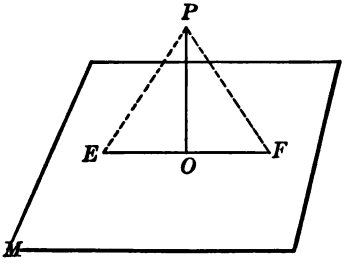
9. Why is the crease formed in folding a piece of paper for an envelope a straight line?

10. Erect a plane perpendicular to a line at a given point. § 448.

11. How can a carpenter erect a studding perpendicular to a floor with his square?

PROPOSITION IV.

450. THEOREM. *From a point to a plane there is one line which is shorter than any other.*



Given a plane M and a point P without the plane.

To Prove that from P to plane M there is one line shorter than any other.

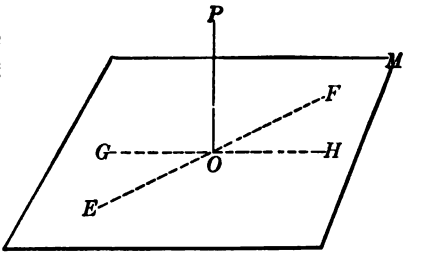
Proof. SUG. 1. If there is not one shortest line, there must be a group of equal shortest lines. Let PE and PF represent two such lines. Connect E and F and let O be the mid-point of EF. Join P and O.

2. With respect to length, compare PO with PE or PF.

Therefore—

12. Set up in the school room a pole perpendicular to the floor, using a right angle (a carpenter's square or a book cover). § 448.

451. Cor. I. *The shortest line from a point to a plane is the perpendicular from that point to the plane.*



Given PO the shortest line from point P to the plane M.

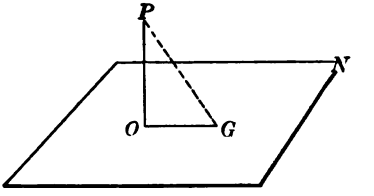
To Prove that PO is perpendicular to plane M.

Proof. Through the foot of PO draw in plane M any two lines as EF and GH. Then $PO \perp EF$ and $PO \perp GH$. Why?

$\therefore PO \perp$ plane M. Why?

Therefore—

452. Cor. II. *From a point without a plane only one perpendicular can be dropped to the plane.*



Given $PO \perp$ plane N from point P without the plane.

Proof. If there is a second perpendicular from P to N, represent it by PG. Then the plane PGO (§ 442) intersects plane N in line OG. Why?

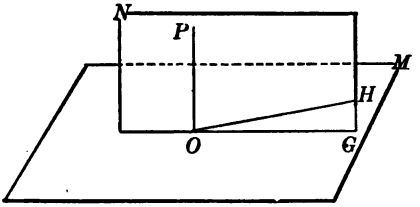
What relation does PG bear to line OG? Why? What relation does PG bear to plane N? Why?

Therefore—

453. Distance from a Point to a Plane. The length of the perpendicular from a point to a plane is the *distance from the point to the plane.*

PROPOSITION V.

454. THEOREM. *All perpendiculars to a line at a given point lie in one plane perpendicular to the line at that point.*



Given plane $M \perp PO$ at O and line OH any line $\perp PO$ at O.

To Prove that OH lies in plane M.

Proof. SUG. 1. The plane N determined by PO and OH will intersect plane M in a straight line through O, as OG. Why?

2. $PO \perp OG$. Why?

3. OG and OH both lie in plane N and must therefore coincide. Why?

4. $\therefore$ OH must lie in plane M. Why?

5. As OH was any line perpendicular to PO at O, the same is true of all such lines.

Therefore—

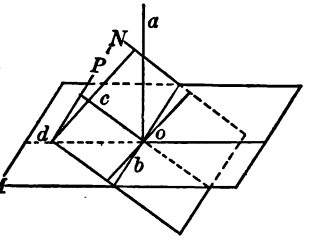
13. How many braces are required to hold the pole of the preceding exercise in position?

455. Cor. I. *Through a point in a line only one plane can be erected perpendicular to the line.*

Given a line a and a plane $M \perp$ to a at point O.

To Prove that M is the only plane $\perp a$ through O.

Proof. Suppose that there is a second plane, as N, $\perp a$ at O, and let b be the intersection of planes M and N. Then b is $\perp$ to a at O. Pass a plane P through line a which does not contain line b. This plane will cut M and N in two distinct lines, c and d, each perpendicular to a at O in plane P. But this, by § 454, is impossible. Why?



456. Cor. II. *From a point without a line only one plane can be drawn perpendicular to the line.*

Given point P not on line a and plane M through P and $\perp a$.

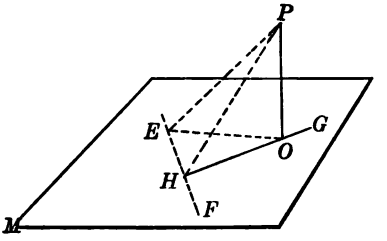
To Prove that M is the only plane through P and $\perp a$.

Proof. Let M meet line a in point A. If there is a second such plane, as N, let it meet a in point B. Pass a plane through P and line AB or a. This plane will cut M and N, each in a straight line. Complete the demonstration. Construction of fig. left to pupil.

14. Construct a plane perpendicular to a given line from a point without the line. § 448.

PROPOSITION VI.

457. PROBLEM. *To drop a perpendicular from a point to a plane.*



Given a plane M and point P not on M.

To Construct a line PO from $P \perp M$.

Construction—

SUG. 1. Draw any line EF in plane M and drop a perpendicular, PH, to EF in the plane of EF and P. Auth.

2. Through H in plane M draw $HG \perp EF$. Auth.

3. From P drop $PO \perp HG$. Auth.

4. To prove $PO \perp M$, draw a line from O to E, any point in EF except H, and join P and E.

5. $\overline{PH}^2 - \overline{OH}^2 = \overline{PO}^2$. Auth.

6. $\overline{EH}^2 + \overline{OH}^2 = \overline{OE}^2$. Auth.

7. Adding, $\overline{EP}^2 = \overline{PO}^2 + \overline{OE}^2$.

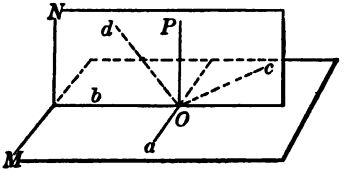
8. $\therefore PO \perp OE$.

9. $\therefore PO \perp M$. Why?

458. LOCUS IN SPACE. The *locus of a point in space* satisfying certain given conditions consist of those geometric figures in space to which the point is limited and every point of which satisfies the conditions. §§ 164-165.

PROPOSITION VII.

459. PROBLEM. *To erect a perpendicular to a plane at a given point in the plane.*



Given plane M and point O in M.

To Construct $OP \perp M$ at O.

Construction—

SUG. 1. In plane M draw a line a and then draw two lines c and d each perpendicular to a at O.

2. What relation does the plane of c and d bear to a?

3. This plane cuts M in line b. Why?

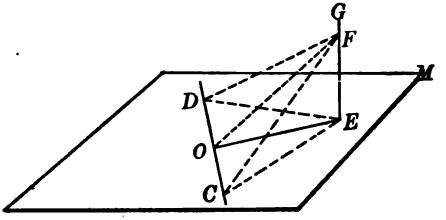
4. In this new plane draw $OP \perp b$. Auth. How is OP related to a? Why?

5. How is OP related to plane M? Why?

Compare this construction with Ex. 12, page 297.

PROPOSITION VIII.

460. THEOREM. *If, from the foot of a perpendicular to a plane, a line is drawn perpendicular to any given line in the plane and, from this point of intersection, a line is drawn to any point of the perpendicular to the plane, the last line is perpendicular to the given line in the plane.*



Given line $EG \perp$ plane M and CD any line in M, with $EO \perp CD$ and F any point in EG.

To Prove $OF \perp CD$.

Proof. SUG. 1. On line CD take $OD = OC$. Join F with C, D, and O, and E with C and D.

2. In $\triangle ECD$ compare EC and ED. Auth.

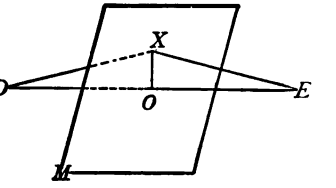
3. Compare FC and FD. § 65.

4. What relation does OF bear to CD? § 76.

Therefore—

15. Show that by marking at right angles to the edges of a stick of timber with a carpenter's square continuously the line will end at its starting point.

16. If a plane is perpendicular to a sect at its mid-point every point in the plane is equidistant from the extremities of the sect and every point outside the plane is not equidistant from the extremities.



SUG. Let X be any point in plane M, which is perpendicular to sect DE at its mid-point O. Prove $DX = EX$.

17. What is the locus of points in space equidistant from two given points?

18. Another demonstration for § 448. Draw from D a line DB terminated in line AB and bisected by OH at H. Auth. (Use the fig. of § 448.)

$\overline{EB}^2 + \overline{ED}^2 = 2\,\overline{EH}^2 + 2\,\overline{BH}^2$.

$\overline{OB}^2 + \overline{OD}^2 = 2\,\overline{OH}^2 + 2\,\overline{BH}^2$. §345.

§ 345. Subtract and reduce. Apply § 377.

19. In the fig. of § 460, given $EG \perp EO$, $EO \perp CD$, and $OF \perp CD$ at O, F being in EG. Prove $EG \perp$ plane M of EO and CD.

SUG. $\overline{EF}^2 = \overline{OF}^2 - \overline{EO}^2$ and

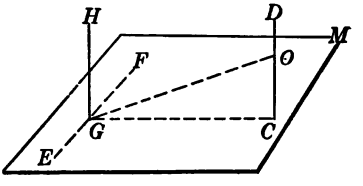
$\overline{EC}^2 = \overline{OC}^2 + \overline{OE}^2$.

Add and complete the demonstration.

20. The area of a circle is 20 square inches. What is the area of a circle of double the radius? Of one-half the radius? Of m times the radius? Of $\frac{1}{m}$ times the radius?

PROPOSITION IX.

461. THEOREM. *If one of two parallel lines is perpendicular to a plane, the other is also perpendicular to the plane.*



Given $GH \parallel CD$ and meeting plane M in G and C respectively, with $CD \perp M$.

To Prove $GH \perp M$.

Proof. SUG. 1. GH and CD determine a plane which meets plane M in GC. Why? Join G with O, any point in CD. Draw EF in plane M and $\perp GC$.

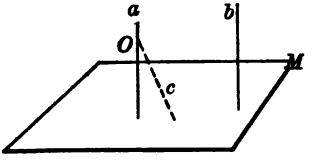
2. What relation does EF sustain to GO? (§ 460.) To GC? To plane HC? (§ 448.)

3. What relation does EF sustain to GH, or GH to EF? GH to GC? § 90. GH to plane M? Why?

21. If a is the radius of a circle with an area of 40 square inches, what is the radius of a circle of 80 square inches? Of 10 square inches? Of 160 square inches?

PROPOSITION X.

462. THEOREM. *Two lines perpendicular to the same plane are parallel.*



Given two lines a and b, each perpendicular to plane M.

To Prove $a \parallel b$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Suppose a is not parallel to b and through a point O on a draw a line $c \parallel b$.

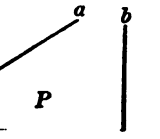
2. What relation does c bear to plane M? Why? § 461.

3. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

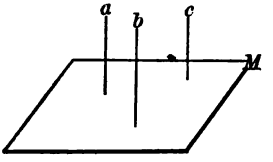
22. To draw a straight line which shall intersect each of two lines not in the same plane and shall pass through a point not in either line.

SUG. Pass a plane through the given point P and one line a. Also pass a plane through P and the second line b. These planes intersect in a line x through P. Why? This line x also meets both a and b. Why? What if a or b is $\parallel$ to intersection? § 463.



PROPOSITION XI.

463. THEOREM. *Two straight lines each parallel to a third straight line are parallel to each other.*



Given $a \parallel c$ and $b \parallel c$.

To Prove $a \parallel b$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Construct plane $M \perp c$. Auth.

2. What relation do a and b bear to M? Auth.

3. What relation do a and b bear to each other? Auth.

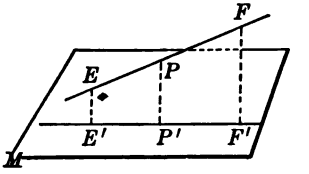
Therefore—

464. PROJECTION OF A POINT ON A PLANE. The foot of the perpendicular from a point to a plane is the *projection of the point on the plane.*

465. PROJECTION OF A LINE UPON A PLANE. The locus of the projections of the points of a line upon a plane is the *projection of the line upon the plane.*

PROPOSITION XII.

466. THEOREM. *The projection of a straight line upon a plane is a straight line.*



Given a plane M and a straight line EF not in M, with E' and F' the projections of E and F respectively upon M.

To Prove the straight line $E'F'$ the projection of EF.

Proof. SUG. 1. It is necessary and sufficient to show that the projection P' of any third point in EF lies in $E'F'$.

2. Since PP', EE', FF' are each $\perp M$, they are parallel. Auth.

3. EE' and FF' determine a plane, N, cutting M in line $E'F'$. Why?

4. In plane N, it is possible to draw a line through P which is parallel to FF' and hence $\perp M$, but this line must coincide with PP'. Why?

5. Since PP' lies in N, its foot in M must lie in $E'F'$.

Therefore—

23. How could a carpenter use Arts. 451 and 452 to determine that a studding is perpendicular to the floor?

24. A regular hexagon is circumscribed about a circle of radius 10 inches. Find the difference between the areas of the hexagon and the circle.

25. A regular hexagon is circumscribed about a circle and another regular hexagon is inscribed in the same circle. Find the difference between the areas of the hexagons in terms of the radius of the circle.

26. A trapezoid has bases 22 inches and 14 inches respectively with altitude 16 inches. What will be the altitude of a triangle with the same area if its base is equal to its altitude?

27. A trapezoid has bases b_1 and b_2, with altitude h. What will be the altitude of a triangle with the same area if its base is equal to its altitude?

28. **Given** triangle ABC. $a = 20$, $b = 18$, $c = 12$.

Solve for

(1) Area of triangle ABC.

(2) h_a, altitude on a.

(3) d_a, bisector on a.

(4) m_a, median on a.

29. The length of a circle is 40 feet.

(1) Find the area.

(2) Find the area of a square of the same perimeter.

(3) Find the area of an equilateral triangle of the same perimeter.

(4) Find the perimeter of a square of the same area.

(5) Find the perimeter of an equilateral triangle of the same area.

(6) Find the area of a regular hexagon of the same perimeter.

PROPOSITION XIII.

467. THEOREM. *If from a point to a plane the perpendicular and oblique lines be drawn*

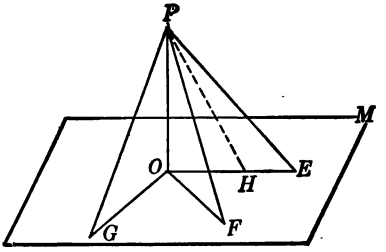
I. *The perpendicular is the shortest line from the point to the plane;*

II. *Oblique lines having equal projections upon the plane are equal;*

III. *If two oblique lines are equal, their projections upon the plane are equal;*

IV. *Of two unequal oblique lines, the line having the greater projection is the greater;*

V. *The greater of two oblique lines has the greater projection upon the plane.*



I. **Given** $PO \perp$ plane M.

To Prove PO shorter than any other line from P to M.

Proof. SUG. Compare $\triangle POG$ and PGO.

II. **Given** PG and PE oblique to M with their respective projections OG and OE equal.

To Prove $PG = PE$.

Proof. The demonstration is left to the pupil.

III. **Given** $PG = PE$, with OG and OE their respective projections.

To Prove $OG = OE$.

Proof. The demonstration is left to the pupil.

IV. **Given** oblique lines PE and PF, with OE and OF their respective projections, and $OE > OF$.

To Prove $PE > PF$.

Proof. SUG. 1. On OE take $OH = OF$ and draw PH.

2. Compare PE with PH; PE with PF. Complete the demonstration.

V. **Given** $PE > PF$.

To Prove $OE > OF$.

Proof. SUG. Use the indirect method.

Therefore—

468. LINE AND PLANE PARALLEL. *A straight line and a plane are parallel* if they can never meet, however far they may be extended.

469. PARALLEL PLANES. Two planes which cannot meet, however far they may be extended, are *parallel planes.*

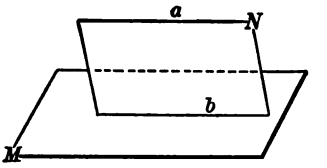
30. What is the locus of the foot of an oblique line in a plane when the oblique line is revolved with one end not in the plane stationary?

31. A line oblique to a plane intersects its own projection upon the plane.

32. The locus of a point in space equidistant from all points in a circle is a straight line through the center of the circle and perpendicular to its plane.

PROPOSITION XIV.

470. THEOREM. *A straight line not in a plane is parallel to the plane if it is parallel to a line in the plane.*



Given line a outside plane M and parallel to line b in plane M.

To Prove $a \parallel M$.

Proof. SUG. 1. a and b determine a plane N. Why? § 442.

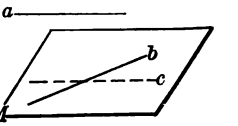
2. What is the intersection of M and N? Why? § 444.

3. If a and M have a point in common it must lie in b. Why? § 444.

4. This is impossible. Why? § 438.

Therefore—

471. COR. I. *A plane may be passed through one of two non-intersecting lines parallel to the other.*

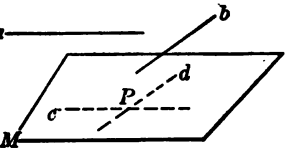


Given two non-intersecting lines a and b.

To Prove that a plane, M, can be passed through b parallel to a.

Proof. SUG. From any point in b draw the line c parallel to a. Then plane M determined by b and c is parallel to a. Why?

472. Cor. II. *Through a point not on either of two lines a plane can be passed parallel to both the lines.*



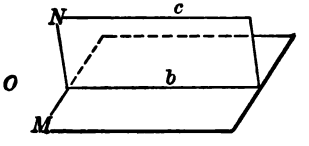
Given lines a and b and point P.

To Prove that a plane M parallel to a and to b can be passed through P.

Proof. Through P draw two lines, c and d, parallel to a and b respectively. Complete the demonstration.

PROPOSITION XV.

473. Theorem. *If a line is parallel to a plane, any plane that embraces the line and intersects the plane intersects it in a line parallel to the given line.*



Given line c parallel to plane M, and plane N through c and intersecting M in line b.

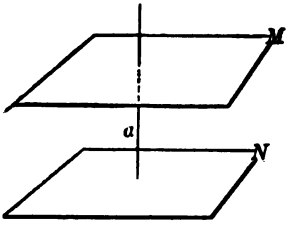
To Prove $b \parallel c$.

Proof. Sug. 1. If c and b are not parallel they will meet at some point as O. Why? This is impossible. Why?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XVI.

474. THEOREM. *Planes perpendicular to the same straight line are parallel.*



Given two planes M and N each perpendicular to line a.

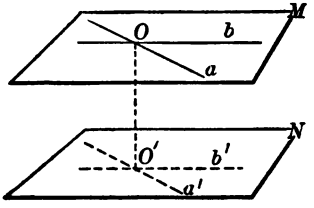
To Prove $M \parallel N$.

Proof. SUG. Use an indirect proof based on § 456.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XVII.

475. THEOREM. *If two intersecting lines in one plane are each parallel to a second plane, the planes are parallel.*



Given two lines a and b in plane M, meeting in O, each line parallel to plane N.

To Prove $M \parallel N$.

Proof. SUG. 1. At O, the common point of a and b, erect a $\perp$ to plane M and extend it to meet plane N at O'. Line OO' is $\perp$ to a and to b. Why?

2. Lines a and OO' determine a plane which intersects N in a line as a' through O'. Likewise b and OO' determine a plane which intersects N in b'. Auth.

3. What relation does a' bear to a? b' to b? Auth.

4. What relation does OO' bear to a' and to b'? Auth.

5. What relation does OO' bear to plane N? Auth.

6. What relation does N bear to M? Auth.

Therefore—

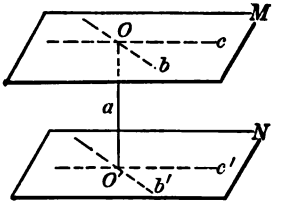
33. A ceiling is 8 feet high. A pole 10 feet long is held at a given point on the ceiling and revolved with the lower end touching the floor. Find the diameter of the circle described.

34. How could the pole in the preceding exercise be used to find that point on the floor which is directly under the point on the ceiling?

35. Show that the angle that the pole makes with the perpendicular is constant as the pole revolves.

PROPOSITION XVIII.

476. THEOREM. *A line perpendicular to one of two parallel planes is perpendicular to the other.*



Given plane $M \parallel$ plane N and line $a \perp M$ at O.

To Prove $a \perp N$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Through point O in plane M draw two lines as b and c. Through a and b and through a and c pass planes and let these two planes intersect plane N in lines b' and c' respectively.

2. What relation does b' bear to b? c' to c? Auth.

3. What relation does a bear to b and to c? To b' and to c'? Auth.

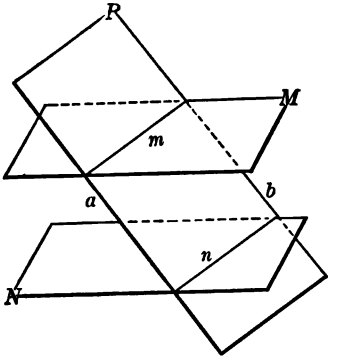
4. What relation does a bear to N? Auth.

Therefore—

477. DISTANCE BETWEEN PARALLEL PLANES. The length of the sect intercepted between two parallel planes and perpendicular to both is *the distance between the parallel planes.*

PROPOSITION XIX.

478. THEOREM. *If two parallel planes are cut by a third plane the intersections are parallel.*



Given two parallel planes M and N, cut by a third plane P in lines m and n respectively.

To Prove $m \parallel n$.

Proof. SUG. Show that m and n lie in the same plane and cannot meet.

Therefore—

479. COR. I. *Parallel lines intercepted between parallel planes are equal.*

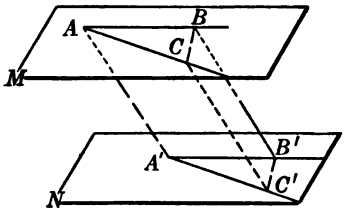
SUG. Assume lines a and b in § 478 to be parallel. Prove them equal.

480. COR. II. *Parallel planes are everywhere equidistant.*

36. A horse is tied with a rope 100 feet long to a point on a vertical pole 25 feet from the ground. What is the shape of his pasture and how far can he get from the foot of the pole?

PROPOSITION XX.

481. THEOREM. *If two angles, not in the same plane, have their respective sides parallel and extending in the same directions from the vertices, the angles are equal.*



Given $\angle BAC$ in plane M and $\angle B'A'C'$ in plane N, with $AB \parallel A'B'$ and $AC \parallel A'C'$, the respective directions from A and A' being the same.

To Prove $\angle BAC = \angle B'A'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Take points B, B', C, C' so that $AB = A'B'$ and $AC = A'C'$. Connect A and A', B and B', C and C', B and C, B' and C'.

2. Compare AA' and BB', AA' and CC', BB' and CC'.

3. Compare BC and $B'C'$; $\triangle BAC$ and $\triangle B'A'C'$; $\angle A$ and $\angle A'$. Auth.

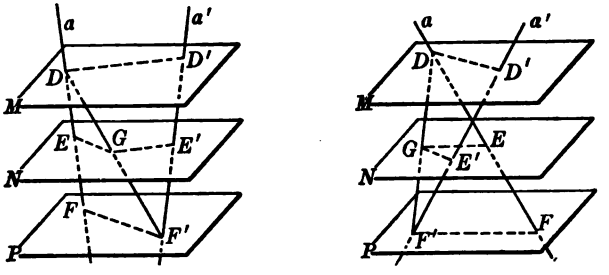
Therefore—

37. How many such planes (§ 471) are there?

38. If a line is parallel to a plane, it is parallel to its own projection upon the plane.

PROPOSITION XXI.

482. THEOREM. *If three parallel planes intersect two straight lines, the corresponding segments are proportional.*



Given three parallel planes M, N, P intersecting the two lines a and a' in the points D, E, F and D', E', F' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{DE}{EF}=\frac{D'E'}{E'F'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Join D and F' and let G be the intersection of this line with plane N.

2. Plane $DD'F'$ intersects planes M and N in what lines? Plane DFF' intersects planes N and P in what lines?

3. What relation does EG bear to FF'? $E'G$ to DD'? Why?

4. Compare the ratios $\frac{DE}{EF}, \frac{DG}{GF'}, \frac{D'E'}{E'F'}$.

§ 251.

5. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

39. Through a given point *in space* one and only one line can be drawn parallel to a given line. § 87.

40. Through a given point in space any number of lines can be drawn parallel to a given plane.

41. All lines through a given point and parallel to a given plane lie in one plane.

SUG. Drop a ⊥ from the given point to the given plane.

42. Through a given point only one plane can be passed parallel to a given plane.

43. Two planes parallel to the same plane are parallel to each other. § 476, § 474.

44. What is the locus of the foot of an oblique line 10 inches long drawn to a plane from a point eight inches from the plane? Compute the area of the figure bounded by the locus.

45. A straight line and a plane both perpendicular to the same straight line are parallel.

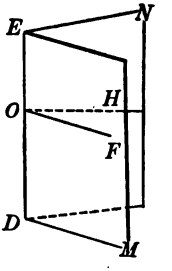
46. What is the locus of a line through a given point and parallel to a given plane?

47. If a straight line and a plane are parallel, any line parallel to the given line and not in the plane is parallel to the plane also.

48. What is the locus of a point at a given distance from a given plane?

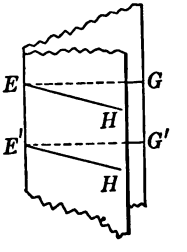
49. What is the locus of a point equidistant from two given points and also at a given distance from a given plane? When is there no solution?

483. DIHEDRAL ANGLE. Two planes which meet or intersect form a *dihedral angle.* The two planes M and N meeting in the line ED form a dihedral angle. The intersecting planes, M and N, are the *faces* of the angle and the line of intersection, ED, is the *edge.* A dihedral angle is read by reading in order one face, the edge, and the second face. When but one dihedral angle is formed at an edge, the angle may be read by naming the edge, as dihedral angle ED. A dihedral angle is often called a dihedral.



484. PLANE ANGLE OF A DIHEDRAL. An angle formed by two lines, one in each face of a dihedral, perpendicular to the edge at the same point is the *plane angle of the dihedral.* Lines FO and HO lying in the faces M and N respectively and each perpendicular to ED at O form the plane angle of the dihedral ED.

485. COR. I. *The plane angle of a dihedral is the same size from whatever point of the edge it is drawn.*



Given dihedral EE' with plane angles GEH and $G'E'H'$.

To Prove $\angle GEH = \angle G'E'H'$.

Proof. Left to the pupil. § 481.

486. COR. II. *The angle formed by the intersections of the faces of a dihedral with a plane perpendicular to the edge is the plane angle of the dihedral.*

Proof. Left to the pupil. § 484.

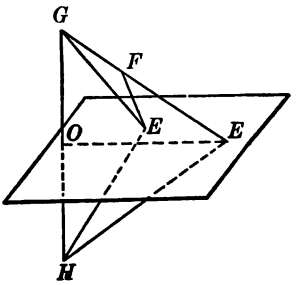
487. EQUAL DIHEDRALS. Two dihedral angles are *equal* when they can be made to coincide.

The magnitude of a dihedral does not depend upon the extent of its faces. If a plane be made to revolve about the edge as an axis from the position of one face to the position of the other face, it revolves or turns through the dihedral angle and the greater the amount of the turning the greater the angle.

50. A and B are two points equally distant from a plane and upon the same side of it; prove that line AB is parallel to the plane.

51. Determine a point E in a plane such that the difference between its distances from two given points on opposite sides of the plane is a maximum.

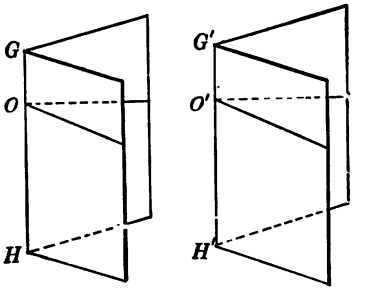
SUG. Drop a perpendicular to the plane from one of the points as H and extend it to G, an equal distance on the other side of the plane. Connect G with the second point F, this line meeting the plane in E. Prove E to be the required point, as follows:



$EH - EF = FG$. Take any other point as E' in the given plane, join it to F and H and prove $FG > E'H - E'F$.

PROPOSITION XXII.

488. THEOREM. *Two dihedral angles are equal if their plane angles are equal.*



Given two dihedrals GH and $G'H'$, with equal plane angles O and O' respectively.

To Prove dihedrals GH and $G'H'$ equal.

Proof. SUG. 1. Place the dihedrals so that the plane angles coincide.

2. How will the edges lie with regard to each other? Auth.

3. How will the respective faces lie with regard to each other? Auth.

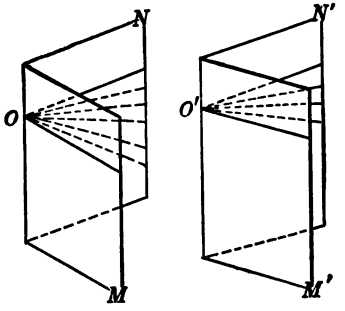
Therefore—

489. COR. *If two dihedrals are equal their plane angles are equal.*

52. From A, the mid-point of one side of a parallelogram draw lines dividing each of the adjacent sides into three equal parts and the opposite side into six equal parts. Prove that each of the twelve triangles thus formed equals one-twelfth of the parallelogram.

PROPOSITION XXIII.

490. THEOREM. *Two dihedral angles have the same ratio as their plane angles.*



Given two dihedral angles $M-O-N$ and $M'-O'-N'$, with plane angles O and O' respectively.

To Prove $\dfrac{\angle M-O-N}{\angle M'-O'-N'}=\dfrac{\angle O}{\angle O'}$.

Proof. CASE I. When the plane angles are commensurable.

SUG. 1. Divide the plane angles by a common unit of measure and suppose the unit to be contained in $\angle O$ and $\angle O'$ m and n times respectively. What then is the ratio of $\angle O$ to $\angle O'$?

2. Through the respective edges of the two dihedrals and the various division lines of the two plane angles pass planes. How do the dihedrals thus formed compare with one another? Auth. How many of them are there in $\angle M-O-N$?. In $\angle M'-O'-N'$?

3. What is the ratio of the two dihedrals? Apply § 247.

4. Complete the demonstration.

CASE II. When the plane angles are incommensurable.

SUG. Use the method of § 428 in working out a demonstration.

Therefore—

491. MEASURE OF DIHEDRAL ANGLES. Since dihedral angles are proportional to their plane angles, they are said to be *measured by their plane angles.* Thus a *right dihedral* angle is a dihedral the plane angle of which is a right angle. Similarly one of 27° is one the plane angle of which is 27°. Dihedral angles are *adjacent, vertical, acute, obtuse,* etc., according as the respective plane angles are adjacent, vertical, acute, obtuse, etc.

492. PERPENDICULAR PLANES. Planes which form a right dihedral angle are perpendicular planes.

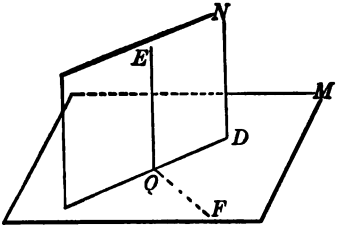
53. If two parallel planes intersect two parallel planes the four lines of intersection are parallel.

54. What is the locus of a point in space equidistant from two parallel planes?

55. Find a point X equidistant from two given points, equidistant from two other given points, and in a given plane. Is the problem ever impossible? Will any arrangement of the given parts permit an unlimited number of solutions?

PROPOSITION XXIV.

493. THEOREM. *If a straight line is perpendicular to a plane, every plane containing that line is perpendicular to the plane.*



Given line $EO \perp$ plane M and a plane N containing EO and intersecting M in OD.

To Prove plane $N \perp$ plane M.

Proof. SUG. 1. What must be known to make $N \perp M$?

2. In plane M erect $OF \perp OD$.

3. How many degrees in $\angle EOF$? Why?

4. $\angle EOF$ is the plane angle of the dihedral. Why?

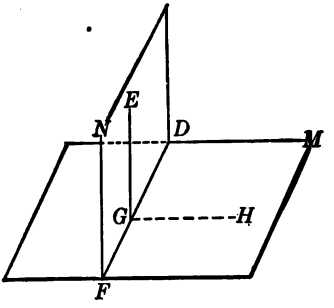
5. What relation does plane N bear to plane M? Why?

Therefore—

56. Find a point X equidistant from two given points, equidistant from two given planes, and at a given distance from a third plane. Discuss all possibilities.

PROPOSITION XXV.

494. THEOREM. *A line in one of two perpendicular planes perpendicular to their intersection is perpendicular to the other.*



Given plane $N \perp$ plane M with FD the line of intersection and in plane N a line $EG \perp FD$.

To Prove $EG \perp$ plane M.

Proof. SUG. 1. What must be proved in addition to the hypothesis in order to show that EG is perpendicular to plane M?

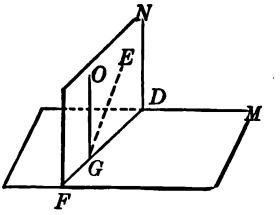
2. In plane M draw $GH \perp FD$ at G. Angle EGH is the plane angle of the dihedral. Why? How many degrees in $\angle EGH$? Why?

3. Complete the demonstration by showing that EG must be perpendicular to M. § 448.

Therefore—

57. What is the locus of a point equidistant from two given points A and B and also from two given points C and D? Discuss all possibilities due to the different positions of the pairs of points.

495. Cor. I. *If two planes are perpendicular to each other, a line perpendicular to one of them at any point of their intersection lies in the other.*



Given M and N, two perpendicular planes, FD their intersection, and $OG \perp M$ at G, a point in FD.

To Prove OG lies in plane N.

Proof. Sug. 1. Suppose OG does not lie in N and that EG is the line in N which is $\perp FD$ at G. What relation does EG bear to M by § 494?

2. How many perpendiculars can be erected to M at G?

3. What then of the supposition?

Therefore—

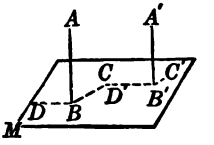
496. Cor. II. *If two planes are perpendicular, a perpendicular from any point in the first to the second lies in the first.*

Proof. Make a demonstration following the plan of § 495.

58. Another demonstration for § 461. Given $AB \parallel A'B'$ and $A'B' \perp$ plane M.

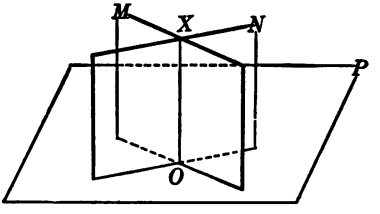
To Prove $AB \perp$ plane M.

Sug. Draw in plane M any two lines through B' as $B'C'$ and $B'D'$. Through B draw BC and BD parallel to $B'C'$ and $B'D'$ respectively. $\measuredangle A'B'C'$ and $A'B'D'$ are right angles. Why? They are equal to $\measuredangle ABC$ and ABD respectively. Why? Therefore $AB \perp M$. Why?



PROPOSITION XXVI.

497. THEOREM. *If two intersecting planes are each perpendicular to a third plane, their intersection is perpendicular to the third plane.*



Given two planes M and N, each $\perp$ plane P and intersecting in the line OX.

To Prove $OX \perp$ plane P.

Proof. SUG. 1. At point O which is common to all three planes erect the perpendicular to plane P.

2. Where does this perpendicular lie with reference to plane M? To plane N? § 495.

3. What relation does this perpendicular then bear to the intersection of M and N? Why?

Therefore—

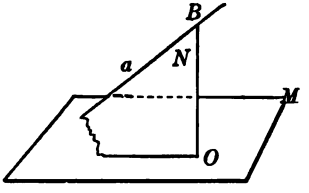
59. Vertical dihedral angles are equal.

SUG. Pass a plane through the angles perpendicular to the common edge and compare the resulting plane angles.

60. Adjacent dihedrals are supplementary if their exterior faces lie in the same plane.

PROPOSITION XXVII.

498. THEOREM. *Through a given straight line, oblique or parallel to a given plane, one, and but one, plane, can be passed perpendicular to the given plane.*



Given plane M with line a oblique or parallel to M.

I. **To Prove** that one plane can be passed through $a \perp M$.

Proof. SUG. 1. From any point as B in line a drop a line $\perp M$, as BO.

2. BO and a determine a plane, N. Why?

3. What relation does plane N bear to plane M? § 493.

II. **To Prove** that N is the *only* plane through line a perpendicular to M.

SUG. 1. Suppose there is a second plane P embracing line a and $\perp M$. What relation does line a bear to planes N and P? § 439.

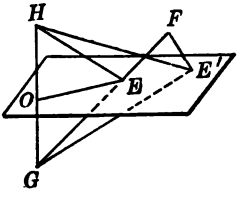
2. What relation must line a then bear to plane M? § 497.

3. Compare this conclusion with the hypothesis.

Therefore—

61. Determine a point E in a plane such that the sum of its distances from two points on the same side of the plane is the minimum.

SUG. Drop a perpendicular to the plane from one of the points as H and extend it to G, an equal distance beyond the plane. Join G to the second point F, this line meeting the plane in E. Prove E to be the required point. To do this, take any other point as E' in the given plane and prove $HE' + E'F > HE + EF$.

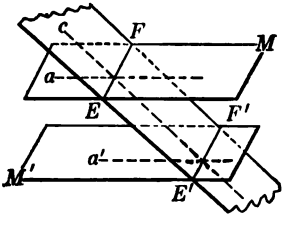


62. Two planes which bisect respectively two vertical dihedrals form one and the same plane.

63. A plane which bisects one of two vertical dihedrals bisects the other.

64. If a plane intersects two parallel planes the alternate interior dihedrals are equal.

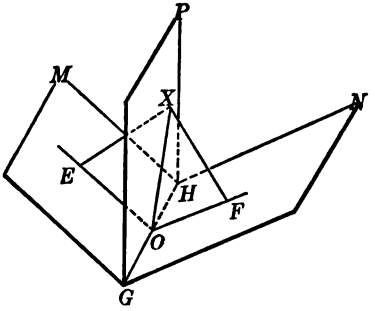
SUG. A plane perpendicular to the edge EF lies how with reference to edge $E'F'$? Why? It cuts the parallel planes M and M' in two lines as a and a'. How do a and a' lie with reference to each other? Why? Compare the plane angles of these dihedrals.



65. In the preceding problem prove the corresponding dihedrals equal and that the two dihedrals on the same side of the secant plane are supplementary.

PROPOSITION XXVIII.

499. THEOREM. *Every point in a plane which bisects a dihedral angle is equidistant from the faces of the dihedral angle.*



Given plane P bisecting the dihedral formed by the planes M and N, X any point in plane P, and XE and XF perpendiculars from X to M and N respectively.

To Prove $XE = XF$.

Proof. SUG. 1. XE and XF determine a plane. Let O represent the intersection of this plane with GH, the edge of the dihedral. Then OE and OF will be the intersections of this plane with M and N respectively.

2. What relation does plane XEF sustain to plane M and to plane N? To their intersection, GH? § 497.

3. XOE and XOF are the plane angles of the dihedrals $M-O-P$ and $N-O-P$ respectively. Why?

4. Compare $\angle XOE$ and $\angle XOF$, § 489; $\triangle XOE$ and $\triangle XOF$; XE and XF.

Therefore—

Query. What statement in the theorem makes it necessary that XE and XF be perpendicular to M and N respectively.

500. Cor. I. *Every point equidistant from the faces of a dihedral is in the bisector of the angle.*

Sug. With the figure of § 499, assume $XE = XF$ and prove $\angle XOE = \angle XOF$. Make a full detailed demonstration.

501. Cor. II. *Every point not in the plane which bisects a dihedral is unequally distant from the faces of the dihedral.*

Sug. Use the indirect method or a direct method similar to that of Ex. 85, p. 66.

66. A plane which is perpendicular to the intersection of two planes is perpendicular to the planes.

67. The plane formed by a line and its projection upon a given plane is perpendicular to the given plane.

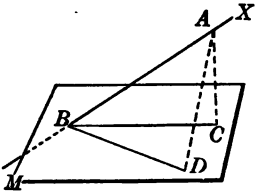
68. The projections of a line upon two parallel planes are equal.

69. What condition must be added to the converse of the following theorem in order that it be true? If two parallel planes are cut by a third plane the interior angles on the same side of the secant plane are supplementary.

70. The locus of points in space equidistant from two intersecting planes is the pair of planes bisecting the dihedrals formed by the given planes.

PROPOSITION XXIX.

502. THEOREM. *The acute angle which a straight line makes with its projection on a plane is the least angle the line makes with any line in the plane through its foot.*



Given line XB meeting plane M at B, BC its projection on M, and BD any line in M through B other than BC.

To Prove $\angle XBC < \angle XBD$.

Proof. SUG. 1. From any point in XB, as A, drop a perpendicular, AC, to M. Where will C lie? Why?

2. On the second line through B, take $BD = BC$ and join A and D.

3. Compare AC with AD. Auth.

4. Compare $\angle ABC$ with $\angle ABD$. § 124.

Therefore—

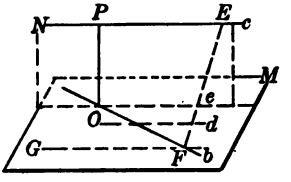
503. ANGLE OF A LINE TO A PLANE. The acute angle which a line makes with its projection on a plane is the *angle of the line to the plane.*

71. **The supplement of the angle of a line to a plane is the greatest angle which the line makes with any line in the plane through its foot.**

72. **A line makes equal angles with parallel planes.**

73. **There is one and but one perpendicular which can be drawn to two non-parallel lines which are not in the same plane.**

Given two lines, b and c, not in the same plane and not parallel. Pass a line d through one of them, as b, parallel to the other, c. Pass through b and d the plane M. How does M lie with reference to line c ? Through c pass a plane N perpendicular to M. Let line e be the intersection of M and N. Then $e \parallel c$. Why? Let the intersection of b and e be O and at O erect the line $OP \perp M$. This line lies in N. Why? Hence OP meets c and $OP \perp c$. Why?



Therefore there is at least one such common perpendicular to b and c.

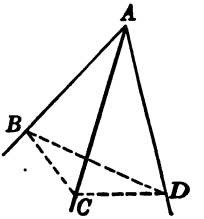
Suppose there is another such perpendicular as EF. The plane of line c and EF will intersect M in a line GF and be $\perp$ to M. Why? Thus there will be two planes embracing c and each $\perp M$, which is impossible. Why?

Therefore—

74. **In the preceding theorem the common perpendicular, OP, is the shortest line which can be drawn between the two given lines.**

504. POLYHEDRAL ANGLE. Three or more planes meeting at a common point form a *polyhedral angle;* or simply a *polyhedral.*

For example, $A - BCD$ represents a polyhedral angle formed by three planes. The common point, A, is the vertex of the angle, the intersections of the planes, AB, AC, AD, are the edges of the angle, and the portions of the planes included between the successive edges are the faces of the angle. The plane angles formed by the successive edges are the face angles of the polyhedral. The face angles and the dihedrals of the successive faces are the parts of the polyhedral.



505. CONVEX POLYHEDRAL ANGLE. If the intersections of a plane with all the faces of a polyhedral form a convex polygon the polyhedral is a *convex polyhedral angle.*

506. CLASSIFICATION OF POLYHEDRAL ANGLES. A polyhedral with three faces is a *trihedral angle,* or a *trihedral;* one having four faces is a *tetrahedral angle,* or *tetrahedral,* etc.

A trihedral angle with two equal face angles is *isosceles.*

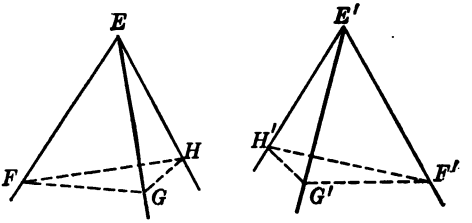
75. Find a point X equidistant from four given points not in the same plane.

SUG. Let the given points be A, B, C, D. What is the locus of points equidistant from A and B? From B and C? From A, B, and C? From C and D? Complete the demonstration.

507. CONGRUENT POLYHEDRAL ANGLES. Polyhedral angles which can be made to coincide are *congruent polyhedral angles.*

For two polyhedrals to be congruent, it is necessary that the respective parts of the two angles be equal and arranged in the same order.

508. SYMMETRICAL POLYHEDRAL ANGLES. Two polyhedral angles having the dihedrals and face angles of the one equal respectively to the corresponding parts of the other but arranged in the reverse order are *symmetrical polyhedral angles.*

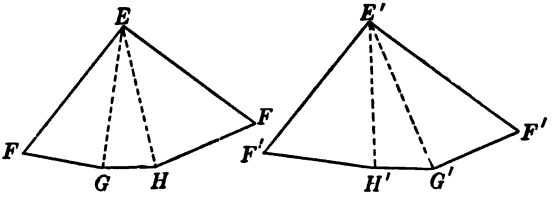


In general two symmetrical polyhedral angles cannot be made to coincide.

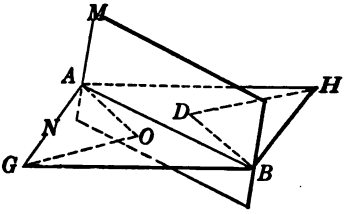
Polyhedrals $E - FGH$ and $E' - F'G'H'$ are symmetrical provided $\angle FEG = \angle F'E'G'$, $\angle GEH = \angle G'E'H'$, $\angle HEF = \angle H'E'F'$, dihedral EF = dihedral $E'F'$, etc., the arrangements of the respective parts in the two polyhedrals being opposite.

As an illustration of the symmetrical relation consider a pair of gloves. Two gloves for the same hand may be compared to equal polyhedrals and the pair to symmetrical polyhedrals.

76. Cut from pasteboard two figures like those in the accompanying figures, creasing them on the dotted lines. Note that all parts with corresponding notations are equal. The equality of the "parts" may be tested by superposition. The figures when bent into polyhedrals will not coincide.



77. If a plane be passed through either diagonal of a parallelogram, the perpendiculars to this plane from the extremities of the other diagonal are equal.



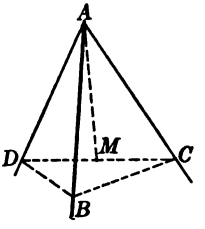
78. Having given a fixed straight line and two points not in the line, find a point in the fixed line equally distant from the given points.

79. What is the locus of a point equidistant from two given parallel planes and at the same time equidistant from two given points?

80. What is the locus of a point equidistant from two given parallel planes and at the same time equidistant from two other parallel planes?

PROPOSITION XXX.

509. THEOREM. *The sum of any two face angles of a trihedral angle is greater than the third.*



Given the trihedral $A - BCD$, in which face angle DAC is the greatest.

To Prove $\angle CAB + \angle BAD > \angle DAC$.

Proof. SUG. 1. It is unnecessary to prove the theorem for the cases in which the greatest angle, $\angle DAC$, is one of the two angles added. Why?

2. In the face DAC draw a line AM equal to AB making $\angle MAD$ equal to $\angle DAB$, and through B and M pass a plane cutting the two other edges in points D and C.

3. Compare $\triangle BAD$ with $\triangle MAD$; DM with DB. Auth.

4. Compare $DB + BC$ and $DM + MC$, compare BC and MC. Auth.

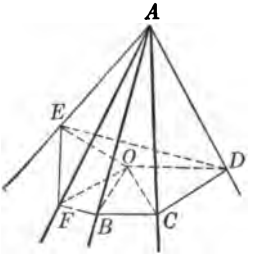
5. Compare $\angle BAC$ with $\angle MAC$. Auth.

6. Compare $\angle BAC + \angle BAD$ with $\angle DAC$.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXXI.

510. THEOREM. *The sum of the face angles of any convex polyhedral angles is less than four right angles.*



Given a polyhedral angle A with n face angles.

To Prove the sum of the face angles about vertex A to be less than 4 right angles.

Proof. SUG. 1. Pass a plane through the polyhedral cutting all the edges in the points B, C, D, F, etc. This cross section polygon will have n sides and the plane will form with the faces n "face" triangles with a common vertex A.

2. Let O be any point within this polygon and join O to the n vertices of the polygon, forming n "base" triangles with a common vertex O.

3. The sum of the angles of the face triangles equals the sum of the angles of the base triangles. Why?

4. $\angle ABC + \angle ABF > \angle CBF$, $\angle ACB + \angle ACD > \angle BCD$, etc.

5. Compare then the sum of all the base angles of the face $\triangle$ with the sum of all the base angles of the base $\triangle$.

6. Compare the sum of the face angles at A with the sum of the angles about O.

7. Compare the sum of the angles at A with four rt. $\angle$s.

Therefore—

81. If a line and a plane are parallel, a line drawn from any point in the plane parallel to the line will lie in the plane.

82. Parallel lines intersecting a plane make equal angles with the plane.

83. What is the locus in space of points equidistant from the sides of a plane angle?

84. Bisect a dihedral angle.

85. What is the locus of a point in a plane equidistant from two points without the plane?

86. Find a point X in a given line and equidistant from two points without the line.

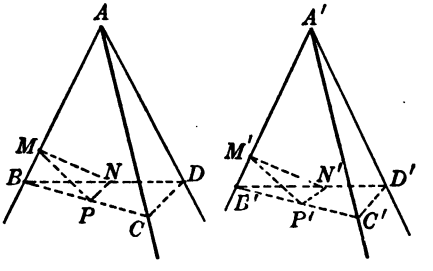
87. Find a point X in a plane and equidistant from three points without the plane.

88. What is the locus of a point X in a given plane, a given distance from a point not in that plane?

89. Find a point X in a plane and equidistant from the three edges of a trihedral.

PROPOSITION XXXII.

511. THEOREM. *If two trihedral angles have the three face angles of the one equal respectively to the three face angles of the other, the corresponding dihedral angles are equal.*



Given two trihedrals, A and A', with $\angle BAC = \angle B'A'C'$, $\angle CAD = \angle C'A'D'$, $\angle DAB = \angle D'A'B'$.

To Prove dihedral AB = dhl $A'B'$, dhl AC = dhl $A'C'$, and dhl AD = dhl $A'D'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Take points on the six edges so that $AB = AC = AD = A'B' = A'C' = A'D'$ and $AM = A'M'$. Through B, C, D and B', C', D' pass planes. In the faces BAC and BAD respectively draw MP and MN each $\perp AB$. MP and MN can meet BC and BD in P and N respectively for $\measuredangle ABC$ and ABD are acute. Why? Similarly draw lines $M'P'$ and $M'N'$ through point M'.

2. The dihedrals AB and $A'B'$ are equal if $\angle PMN = \angle P'M'N'$. Why?

3. Compare $\triangle ABC$ with $\triangle A'B'C'$; $\angle ABC$ with $\angle A'B'C'$, BC with $B'C'$. Auth.

4. Draw the similar conclusions from $\measuredangle ABD$ and $A'B'D'$. Also from $\measuredangle ACD$ and $A'C'D'$.

5. Compare $\triangle BMP$ with $\triangle B'M'P'$, BP with $B'P'$; MP with $M'P'$. Auth. Draw similar conclusions from $\triangle BMN$ and $\triangle B'M'N'$.

6. Compare $\triangle BCD$ with $\triangle B'C'D'$; $\angle CBD$ with $\angle C'B'D'$; $\triangle BPN$ with $\triangle B'P'N'$; NP with $N'P'$. Auths.

7. Compare $\triangle NMP$ with $\triangle N'M'P'$, $\angle M$ with $\angle M'$. Auth.

8. Compare dihedral AB with dihedral $A'B'$. Auth.

9. By similar arguments compare dihedrals AC and $A'C'$, AD and $A'D'$.

Therefore—

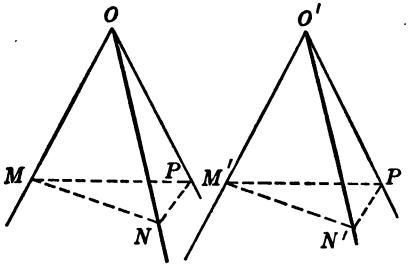
90. What is the locus of points equidistant from the faces of a trihedral? § 499.

91. What is the greatest number of equilateral triangles which can be put together to form a convex polyhedral angle?

92. How many different sized polyhedrals can be formed from equilateral triangles?

PROPOSITION XXXIII.

512. THEOREM. *If two trihedral angles have the three face angles of the one equal respectively to the three face angles of the other, they are either congruent or symmetrical.*



Given two trihedrals, O and O', with $\angle MOP = \angle M'O'P'$, $\angle PON = \angle P'O'N'$, and $\angle NOM = \angle N'O'M'$.

I. **To Prove** trihedrals O and O' congruent, the angles being arranged in the same order.

Proof. SUG. 1. Place O upon O' so that $\angle MOP$ coincides with $\angle M'O'P'$ and the two edges ON and $O'N'$ are on the same side of the plane MOP.

2. How does plane PON lie with reference to plane $P'O'N'$? Plane NOM with reference to plane $N'O'M'$? § 511.

3. Where does line ON lie with respect to $O'N'$? Why?

II. **To Prove** trihedrals O and O' symmetrical, the angles being arranged in reverse order.

Proof. By § 511 the corresponding dihedrals are equal. The parts are therefore respectively equal and by hypothesis the order of the angles is different in O and O'.

Therefore—§ 508.

93. How many different sized polyhedrals can be formed from squares? From regular pentagons? From regular hexagons? § 510.

94. How many different polyhedrals can be constructed from regular polygons?

95. Can a mosaic or patch work pattern be constructed from regular triangles? From squares? From regular pentagons. From regular hexagons? From regular heptagons? From regular n-gons? Give reasons for each conclusion.

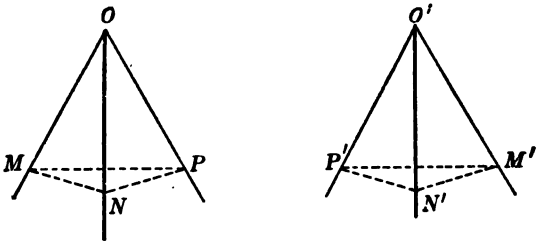
96. The foundations which bee keepers supply for the bees to build the honey comb upon is a mosaic constructed of regular polygons as near as possible to the shape of a circle. Of what polygons is it formed?

97. A circle would be a better shaped base for the body of the bee. Will the circle or polygon form of construction require the less material?

It is assumed in the preceding exercises that the amount of material used in making the cells is proportional to the amount used in making the base.

PROPOSITION XXXIV.

513. THEOREM. *Two symmetrical isosceles trihedral angles are congruent.*



Given two symmetrical isosceles trihedrals O and O' in which $\angle MOP = \angle M'O'P'$, $\angle PON = \angle P'O'N'$, $\angle NOM = \angle N'O'M'$, etc., and $\angle NOM = \angle PON$ and $\angle N'O'M' = \angle P'O'N'$.

To Prove trihedrals O and O' congruent.

Proof. SUG. 1. On account of the symmetry, which face angles and which dihedrals are equal?

2. Because each is isosceles, which face angles are equal?

3. Compare $\angle NOM$ with $\angle P'O'N'$; $\angle PON$ with $\angle N'O'M'$.

4. From step 3, rearrange the equal parts so that the order is the same for O and O'. § 507.

Therefore—

514. VERTICAL POLYHEDRAL ANGLES. When two polyhedrals are so placed that they have a common vertex and the sides of the one are extensions through the vertex of the sides of the other, they are vertical polyhedral angles.

98. Vertical trihedrals are symmetrical.

99. Vertical polyhedrals are symmetrical.

100. Are two planes perpendicular to the same plane necessarily parallel? Are two lines perpendicular to the same plane parallel? Are two planes perpendicular to the same line parallel?

101. Which is the longer, an oblique sect or its projection on a plane?

102. If three non-parallel planes are each perpendicular to a fourth plane their three lines of intersection are parallel.

103. If two parallel planes intersect a dihedral, the respective lines of intersection form equal angles.

104. If the mid-points of the adjacent sides of a skew quadrilateral (*i. e.*, one the four vertices of which are not in the same plane) are joined by straight lines, the figure enclosed is a parallelogram.

515. TRIRECTANGULAR TRIHEDRAL. A trihedral angle all of the face angles of which are right angles is a *trirectangular trihedral angle.*

105. In a trirectangular trihedral the dihedrals opposite the equal face angles are equal. Why? Is this true of any isosceles trihedral?

REVIEW

106. State in a theorem a possible condition by which one line can be proved parallel to another; a line can be proved parallel to a plane; a plane be proved parallel to a second plane.

107. State in a theorem a condition by which a line may be proved perpendicular to a second line; to a plane; a plane can be proved perpendicular to a second plane.

108. State in a theorem a condition by which two trihedrals can be proved congruent; can be proved symmetrical; two symmetrical trihedrals can be proved congruent.

109. What is the locus of points equidistant from the vertices of a triangle?

110. Locate a point in a given plane equidistant from all points of a circle which is in another plane.

111. Find a point X which is equidistant from two parallel planes, from two intersecting planes, and from two given points.

112. If two supplementary adjacent dihedrals are bisected by planes, the bisecting planes form a right dihedral.

113. If from any point within a dihedral angle perpendiculars are drawn to the faces of the dihedral, the angle formed is the supplement of the dihedral.

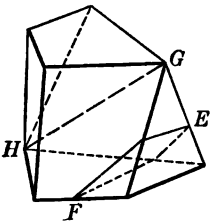
114. If from any point without a dihedral perpendiculars are drawn to the faces of the dihedral, the angle formed by the perpendiculars is equal to the dihedral.

115. Two trihedrals having two face angles and the included dihedral of the one equal respectively to the corresponding parts of the other are either congruent or symmetrical.

CHAPTER VIII.

POLYHEDRONS.

516. POLYHEDRON. A geometric solid bounded by planes is a *polyhedron.* The intersections of the planes are the *edges;* the intersections of the edges are the *vertices;* the portions of the planes bounded by the edges are the *faces;* the face upon which the polyhedron is supposed to rest is its *base.* Any face may be taken as the base. Any straight line connecting two vertices not in the same face is a *diagonal of the polyhedron.*



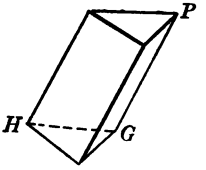
517. POLYHEDRONS CLASSIFIED. Polyhedrons are classified according to the number of faces. One of four faces is a *tetrahedron,* of six faces is a *hexahedron,* of eight faces is an *octahedron,* of twelve faces is a *dodecahedron,* of twenty faces is an *icosahedron,* etc.

518. PLANE SECTION OF A POLYHEDRON. The intersection of a plane and a polyhedron is a *plane section* or a *section* of the polyhedron. *FE* is a plane section of polyhedron.

519. CONVEX POLYHEDRON. A polyhedron such that every plane section is a convex polygon is a *convex polyhedron.*

Only convex polyhedrons will be considered in this book.

520. PRISM. A polyhedron bounded by two parallel planes, and a group of planes which intersect in parallel lines is a *prism.*



The faces formed by the parallel planes are the *bases,* usually designated as upper and lower base. The other faces are the *lateral faces.* The intersections of the lateral faces with one another are the *lateral edges* and their intersections with the bases are the *basal edges.*

521. RIGHT SECTION. A section of a prism made by a plane perpendicular to the lateral edges is a *right section.*

522. OBLIQUE SECTION. A section of a prism made by a plane which is oblique to the lateral edges is an *oblique section.*

523. ALTITUDE OF A PRISM. The distance between the bases of a prism is its *altitude.* § 477.

524. CLASSIFICATION OF PRISMS. Prisms are classified as *triangular, quadrangular,* etc., according as their bases are triangles, quadrilaterals, etc.

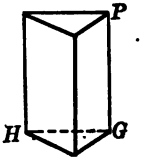
PRELIMINARY THEOREMS.

525. THEOREM I. *The lateral edges of a prism are equal.* § 479.

526. THEOREM II. *The lateral faces of a prism are parallelograms.* § 520.

527. THEOREM III. *The acute angles made by the lateral edges with the planes of the bases are equal.* § 503.

528. RIGHT PRISM. A prism in which the lateral edges are perpendicular to the bases is a *right prism.*



The edge of a right prism is also its *altitude.*

529. OBLIQUE PRISM. A prism in which the lateral edges are not perpendicular to the bases is an *oblique prism.*

530. REGULAR PRISM. A right prism the bases of which are regular polygons is a *regular prism.*

1. Find a point that is equidistant from the two faces of a dihedral angle and equidistant from three points.

2. What is the locus of a point equidistant from the vertices of a regular hexagon?

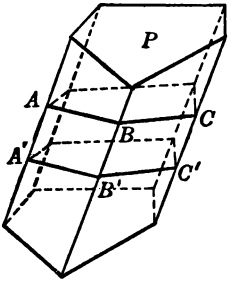
3. Planes perpendicular to two intersecting lines cannot be parallel.

4. Find the locus of a point equidistant from two parallel planes, and at the same time equidistant from the faces of a dihedral angle.

5. Four face angles of a polyhedral angle are respectively 87°, 128°, 36°, and 15°. What is the limit of the sum of the remaining face angles?

PROPOSITION I.

531. THEOREM. *Sections of a prism made by parallel planes are congruent polygons.*



Given ABC and $A'B'C'$, two parallel sections of a prism P.

To Prove $ABC \cong A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What two relations do the lines AB, BC, CD .... bear to the lines $A'B'$, $B'C'$, $C'D'$, ... respectively? § 478.

2. Compare $\measuredangle ABC$, BCD, etc., with $\measuredangle A'B'C'$, $B'C'D'$, etc., respectively. Auth.

Therefore—

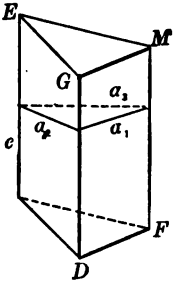
532. COR. I. *The bases of a prism are congruent polygons.*

533. COR. II. *A section of a prism made by a plane parallel to the base is congruent to the base.*

534. COR. III. *All right sections of a prism are congruent polygons.*

PROPOSITION II.

535. THEOREM. *The lateral area of a prism is equal to the product of the perimeter of a right section and a lateral edge.*



Given the prism M with p the perimeter and a_1, a_2, a_3, etc., the successive sides of a right section, e the length of the equal lateral edges, and S the lateral area.

To Prove $S = e \times p$.

Proof. SUG. 1. How do the successive sides of the right section lie with respect to the successive edges which they intersect.

2. What is the area of the face EF in terms of a_1 and e?

3. Express the area of each lateral face.

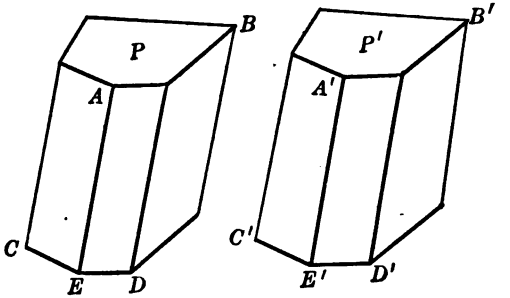
4. By adding these areas find the total lateral area, S, in terms of a_1, a_2, a_3, etc., and e and then in terms of e and p.

Therefore—

536. COR. *The lateral area of a right prism equals the product of the perimeter of the base and a lateral edge.*

PROPOSITION III.

537. THEOREM. *If two prisms have the three faces of a trihedral of one congruent to the three faces of a trihedral of the other and similarly placed, the prisms are congruent.*



Given two prisms P and P' in which the three faces AB, AC, AD forming the trihedral A are respectively congruent to the three faces $A'B'$, $A'C'$, $A'D'$ forming the trihedral A' and are similarly placed.

To Prove $P \cong P'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare trihedrals A and A'. § 512.

2. Apply P' to P so that face $A'B'$ coincides with face AB. Why can this be done?

3. In what plane does face $A'C'$ fall? Face $A'D'$? Why? § 511.

4. Where does line $A'E'$ fall? Why? Where do points E', C', D' fall? Why? Where does plane $C'D'$ fall? Why?

5. Compare faces $C'D'$ and CD. § 532.

6. Complete the superposition. § 526.

Therefore—

538. Cor. I. *Two right prisms are congruent if their altitudes are equal and their bases congruent.*

539. Truncated Prism. The portion of a prism included between the base and a section made by a plane not parallel to the base is a *truncated prism.*

540. Cor. II. *If two truncated prisms have the three faces about a trihedral of one congruent respectively to the three faces about a trihedral of the other and similarly placed, the truncated prisms are congruent.*

Proof. Draw figures and make a proof according to the method of § 537.

6. Find the lateral area of an oblique prism whose lateral edge is 15 feet and whose right section has a perimeter of 6 yards.

7. Find the lateral area of a regular hexagonal prism whose basal edge is 6 feet and whose lateral edge is 8 feet.

8. Find the total area of the prism in the preceding exercise.

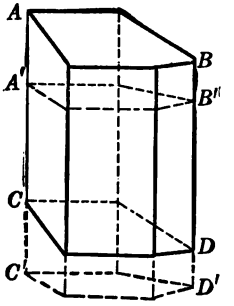
9. If two regular prisms have bases equal in area the ratio of their lateral areas is equal to the ratio of their lateral edges.

10. A truncated regular triangular prism has its lower basal edges 8 feet, its lateral edges 5 feet, 6 feet and 7 feet respectively. Find its lateral area.

11. In a regular prism the line joining the centers of the bases passes through the center of every section parallel to the bases.

PROPOSITION IV.

541. THEOREM. *An oblique prism is equal to a right prism the base of which is a right section of the oblique prism and the altitude of which is equal to the lateral edge of the oblique prism.*



Given an oblique prism, BC, with a right section $A'B'$ and a lateral edge AC.

To Prove prism BC equal to a right prism with base $A'B'$ and an altitude equal to AC.

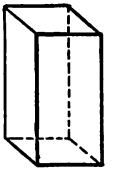
Proof. SUG. 1. Extend the lateral edges making $A'C' = AC$, and through C' pass a plane $\parallel$ plane $A'B'$. Then $A'D'$ is a right prism.

2. Compare the faces about the trihedral A with the faces about the trihedral C.

3. Compare the truncated prism AB' with the truncated prism CD'.

4. Compare prism BC with prism $B'C'$.

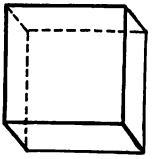
Therefore—



542. PARALLELOPIPEDS. A prism the bases of which are parallelograms is a *parallelopiped.*

543. RIGHT PARALLELOPIPED. A parallelopiped the edges of which are perpendicular to the bases is a *right parallalopiped.*

544. RECTANGULAR PARALLELOPIPED. A right parallelopiped the bases of which are rectangles is a *rectangular parallelopiped.*



545. CUBE. A rectangular parallelopiped all the faces of which are squares is a *cube.*

546. VOLUME OF A POLYHEDRON. The measure of a polyhedron in terms of some other polyhedron taken as the unit of measure is the *volume of the polyhedron.*

547. UNIT OF MEASURE FOR VOLUME. A cube with an edge equal to a given linear unit is the *unit of measure for volume.*

If a polyhedron contains a cubic inch twenty-five times, the volume of the polyhedron is twenty-five cubic inches.

12. Which has the greater area, a right or an oblique prism whose edges are respectively equal?

13. What is the least number of faces possible for a polyhedron?

PRELIMINARY THEOREMS.

548. THEOREM I. *All faces of a parallelopiped are parallelograms.*

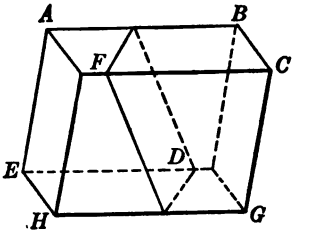
THEOREM II. *All faces of a rectangular parallelopiped are rectangles.*

THEOREM III. *All faces of a cube are congruent squares.*

THEOREM IV. *Any pair of opposite faces of a parallelopiped may be taken as bases.*

PROPOSITION V.

549. THEOREM. *Opposite faces of a parallelopiped are parallel and congruent parallelograms, and any section by a plane cutting four parallel edges is a parallelogram.*



Given a parallelopiped AG with bases AC and EG, AH and BG being one pair of opposite faces, and FD a section made by a plane cutting four parallel edges.

To Prove faces AH and BG parallel and congruent parallelograms, and FD a $\square$.

Proof. SUG. 1. AH and BG are parallelograms. Why?

2. Prove them congruent.
3. Prove them parallel. § 470, § 475.
4. Prove opposite sides of FD parallel.

Therefore—

14. Every section of a prism made by a plane parallel to a lateral edge is a parallelogram.

15. If from any point in space perpendiculars are drawn to the lateral faces of a prism, or to the lateral faces extended, these perpendiculars are all in the same plane.

16. Any straight line drawn through the middle point of any diagonal of a parallelopiped, terminating in two opposite faces is bisected at that point.

17. The four diagonals of a rectangular parallelopiped are equal to one another.

18. The square of a diagonal of a rectangular parallelopiped is equal to the sum of the squares on three concurrent edges.

19. The sum of the squares upon the four diagonals of a rectangular parallelopiped is equal to the sum of the squares upon the twelve edges.

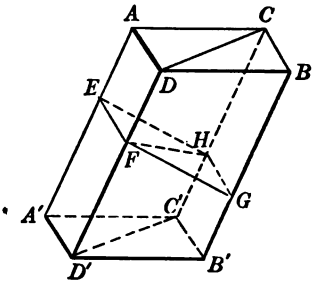
20. Prove the preceding exercise for any parallelopiped. § 337, § 338.

21. Prove that the lateral area of a right prism is less than the lateral area of any oblique prism having the same base and an equal altitude.

SUG. Draw an oblique and a right prism upon the same base with equal altitudes. No face of the oblique prism has a less altitude than the corresponding face of the right prism. Why? Some faces of the oblique prism must have altitudes greater than those of the corresponding faces of the right prism. Why? The altitudes of the faces are defined with respect to the common bases.

PROPOSITION VI.

550. THEOREM. *A plane passed through two diagonally opposite edges of a parallelopiped divides the parallelopiped into two equal triangular prisms.*



Given parallelopiped CD' divided by a plane through two opposite edges CC' and DD' into two triangular prisms $A'D'C'-A$ and $B'C'D'-B$.

To Prove $A'D'C'-A = B'C'D'-B$.

Proof. SUG. 1. A right section as HF intersects a $\square$ on the parallelopiped and this is divided into two congruent $\triangle$ by the plane CD'. Why?

2. Compare $\triangle$-prism $A'C'D'-A$ with a right prism on EHF as base with an altitude equal to $D'D$. Compare $\triangle$-prism $B'C'D'-B$ with a right prism on GHF as base with an altitude equal to $C'C$. Auth.

3. Compare these two right prisms. § 538.

4. Compare $A'C'D'-A$ with $B'C'D'-B$.

Therefore—

22. Find the lateral area of an oblique parallelopiped whose right section has a perimeter of 36 yards and whose lateral edge is 5 feet.

23. How many feet of lumber are required to make a rectangular parallelopiped whose dimensions are 8 feet, 6 feet, and 11 feet respectively, provided each board is 18 feet long and 7 inches wide, and no piecing allowed?

In the preceding exercise how much lumber is wasted?

24. Make a list of theorems on polyhedrals and in connection with each write out a plane geometry theorem which closely corresponds to it.

25. From two points on the same side of a plane draw two lines to a point in the plane that shall make equal angles with the plane.

26. The lines joining the mid-points of opposite sides of a skew quadrilateral bisect each other. Ex. 104, p. 347.

27. A plane perpendicular to a line in a plane is perpendicular to that plane.

28. If two or more planes intersect in one straight line, the perpendiculars drawn to them from any one point lie in the same plane.

29. In § 550 prove $A'B'C'-A$ and $B'C'D'-B$ symmetrical.

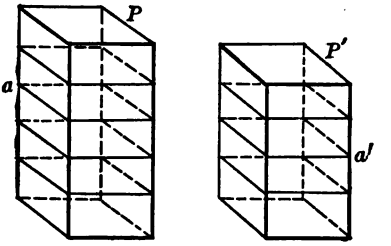
30. The four diagonals of a parallelopiped bisect each other.

31. How many square feet of lumber are used in making a regular hexagonal tank 6 feet on a basal edge and 3 feet on a lateral edge, the top to be open?

32. What is the area of a rectangular parallelopiped each edge of which is a?

PROPOSITION VII.

551. THEOREM. *Two rectangular parallelopipeds having congruent bases are proportional to their altitudes.*



Given two rectangular parallelopipeds P and P' with congruent bases and altitudes a and a' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'}=\frac{a}{a'}$.

Proof. CASE I. a and a' commensurable.

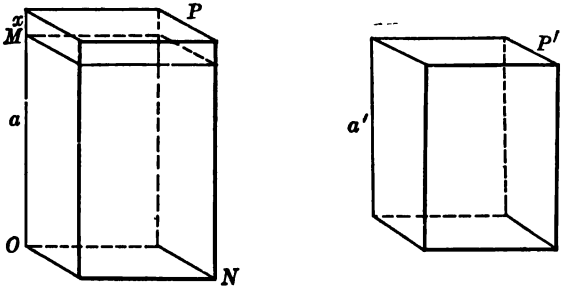
SUG. 1. Divide the altitudes by a common unit of measure, supposing it to be contained m and m' times in a and a' respectively. What is the ratio of the altitudes?

2. Through the points of division of the altitudes pass planes parallel to the bases. What kind of parallelopipeds are formed. Compare them in number and volume. Auth. What is the ratio of P and P'?

3. Compare the ratios of the altitudes and the parallelopipeds.

CASE II. a and a' incommensurable.

SUG. 1. Divide the altitudes a and a' by any unit commensurable with a'. In the division of a there will be a remainder x less than the unit. Why? By taking this unit smaller and smaller this remainder may be made to decrease indefinitely. Why?



2. Through this last point of division, M, pass a plane parallel to the base. As the unit in use is decreased what change takes place in the altitude OM? What change takes place in the parallelopiped MN? In the parallelopiped with altitude x? What is the limit of the variable altitude OM? Of the variable parallelopiped MN?

3. $\therefore \frac{OM}{a'} \doteq \frac{a}{a'}$ and $\frac{MN}{P'} \doteq \frac{P}{P'}$.

4. $\frac{MN}{P'} = \frac{OM}{a'}$. Why?

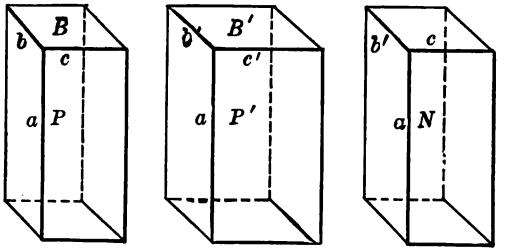
5. $\therefore \frac{P}{P'} = \frac{a}{a'}$. § 426.

Therefore—

552. DIMENSIONS OF A PARALLELOPIPED. The *dimensions* of a parallelopiped are its altitude and base. Consequently the three dimensions of a rectangular parallelopiped are any three concurrent edges.

PROPOSITION VIII.

553. THEOREM. *Two rectangular parallelopipeds having equal altitudes are proportional to their bases.*



Given two rectangular parallelopipeds P and P' with equal altitudes a, their bases B and B' having the dimensions b, c, and b', c' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{B}{B'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Construct a third rectangular parallelopiped N with the altitude a and base with dimensions b', c.

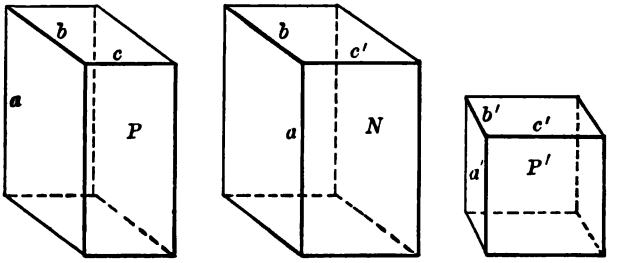
2. $\frac{P}{N} = \frac{b}{b'}$ and $\frac{N}{P'} = \frac{c}{c'}$.

3. Hence $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{bc}{b'c'} = \frac{B}{B'}$. Why?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION IX.

554. THEOREM. *Two rectangular parallelopipeds are to each other as the product of their three dimensions.*



Given two rectangular parallelopipeds P and P', with dimensions a, b, c and a', b', c' respectively.

To Prove $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{a \times b \times c}{a' \times b' \times c'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let N be a rectangular parallelopiped with the dimensions a, b, c'.

2. Then $\frac{P}{N} = \frac{c}{c'}$ and $\frac{N}{P'} = \frac{a \times b}{a' \times b'}$. Why?

3. $\frac{P}{P'} = \frac{a \times b \times c}{a' \times b' \times c'}$. Why?

Therefore—

555. Cor. I. *The volume of a rectangular parallelopiped is the product of its three dimensions.*

Given a rectangular parallelopiped P with dimensions a, b, c.

To Prove Vol. $P = abc$.

Proof. Sug. 1. Take as the unit of volume a cube U with an edge equal to the linear unit in which a, b, c are expressed.

2. $\dfrac{P}{U} = \dfrac{a \times b \times c}{1 \times 1 \times 1} = abc.$

3. $\therefore$ Vol. $P = abc.\ U.$

Therefore—

In the applications of this theorem the three dimensions must be expressed in terms of the same linear unit and the unit of volume must be a cube with an edge equal to this linear unit.

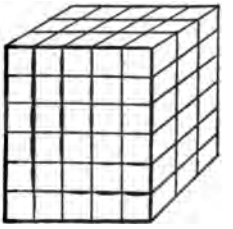
556. Cor. I. *Two rectangular parallelopipeds having two dimensions respectively equal are to each other as their third dimensions.*

557. Cor. II. *The volume of a cube equals the cube of its edge.*

33. A gable for a dormer window is triangular in shape with an angle of 60° at the ridge. If the length of the rafters is 6 feet, what is the area of the largest circular window that can be inserted, making allowance for a 4-inch frame around the window?

34. The diagonals of a rectangular parallelopiped are equal.

558. By comparison of the theorem and the definition of volume (§ 546) it will be observed that the volume of a rectangular parallelopiped is equal to the product of the measures of the three edges meeting at any vertex times the unit of volume. The expression "product of the three dimensions" is understood to mean the product of the measures of these lines. § 361, note.



When each dimension of the rectangular parallelopiped is divisible by the linear unit which is the edge of the unit volume, the truth of the theorem on volume may be shown by dividing the parallelopiped into unit cubes.

35. Determine a point in one side of a triangle equally distant from the other two sides.

36. What is the volume of a cube the edge of which is 7 inches?

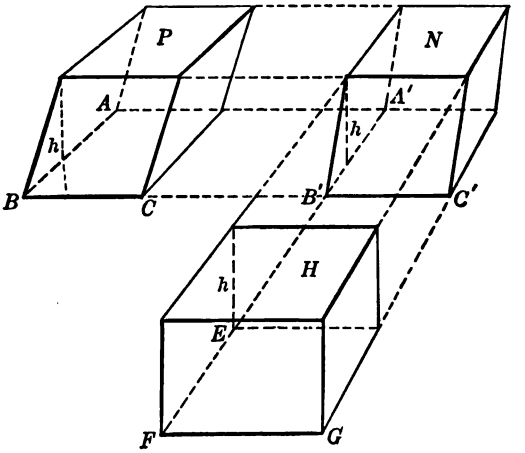
37. What is the volume of a rectangular parallelopiped the dimensions of which are 4 inches, 7 inches, 12 inches? $\sqrt{6}$ feet, $\sqrt{12}$ feet, $\sqrt{18}$ feet? $\sqrt{12}$, $\sqrt{18}$, $\sqrt{24}$? $\sqrt{8}$, $\sqrt{24}$, $\sqrt{12}$?

38. The edges of a rectangular parallelopiped are 8, 12, 16. What is the length of a diagonal? What is its length if the dimensions are $\sqrt{8}$, $\sqrt{9}$, $\sqrt{18}$?

39. Find the total surface area of a regular triangular prism with basal edges of 4 feet and lateral edges of 8 feet.

PROPOSITION X.

559. THEOREM. *Any parallelopiped is equal to a rectangular parallelopiped having an equal base and altitude.*



Given a parallelopiped P with base ABC and altitude h.

To Prove P = a rectangular parallelopiped H having a base $EFG = ABC$ and altitude h.

Proof. SUG. 1. Extend edge BC of P and the three edges parallel to BC and at some convenient point on line BC take $B'C' = BC$. Through B' and C' pass planes perpendicular to line $B'C'$, forming the parallelopiped N with base $A'B'C'$. Extend the edge $A'B'$ and the three edges par-

allel to $A'B'$ and at some convenient point take $EF = A'B'$. Through E and F pass planes perpendicular to EF forming the parallelopiped H.

2. Show that N is a right parallelopiped and H is a rectangular parallelopiped. Show that P, N, and H have the same altitude and equal bases.

3. Compare P and N. §§ 548 IV, 541. Compare N and H.

4. Compare P and H.

Therefore—

560. Cor. I. *The volume of any parallelopiped is equal to the product of its three dimensions.*

Given a parallelopiped P with dimensions a, b, c.

To Prove Vol. $P = abc$.

Proof. P equals a rectangular parallelopiped with dimensions a, b, c. Why? The volume of this second parallelopiped is abc.

Therefore—

561. Cor. II. *Two parallelopipeds with equal bases are to each other as their altitudes.*

Proof. Let the dimensions be a, b, c and a, b', c' respectively. Use § 560 to find the ratio.

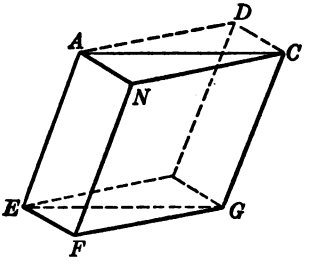
562. Cor. III. *Two parallelopipeds with equal altitudes are to each other as their bases.*

Proof. Let the dimensions be a, b, c and a, b', c' respectively. Use § 560 to find the ratio.

563. Cor. IV. *Two parallelopipeds are to each other as the products of their three dimensions.*

PROPOSITION XI.

564. Theorem. *The volume of a triangular prism is equal to the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given the triangular prism $EFG - N$, denoting its volume by V, its base by B, and its altitude by h.

To Prove $V = hB$.

Proof. Sug. 1. Extend the planes of the bases. Through the edges AE and CG pass planes parallel to the faces NG and NE respectively. The figure DF is a parallelopiped. Why?

2. What is the volume of DF in terms of B and h? Why?

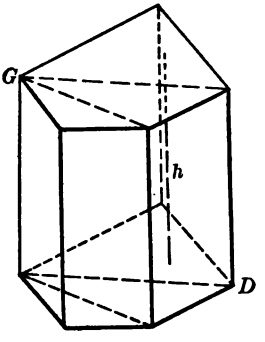
3. What is the volume of the Δ-prism in terms of DF? § 550.

4. What is the volume of the Λ-prism in terms of B and h?

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XII.

565. THEOREM. *The volume of any prism is equal to the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given the prism GD with V, B, and h denoting its volume, base, and altitude respectively.

To Prove $V = hB$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Through any one lateral edge pass diagonal planes. Into what kind of figures is the prism divided?

2. Denote the respective volumes and bases of these figures by V_1, B_1; V_2, B_2; V_3, B_3, etc. Then

$V_1 = h \times B_1$.

$V_2 = h \times B_2$.

$V_3 = h \times B_3$, etc. Why?

3. $V = V_1 + V_2 + V_3 \ldots .$

$= hB_1 + hB_2 + hB_3 + \ldots .$

4. Determine V in terms of h and B.

Therefore—

566. COR. I. *If two prisms have equal bases, their volumes are proportional to their altitudes.*

567. COR. II. *If two prisms have equal altitudes their volumes are proportional to their bases.*

40. Find the lateral area of a regular pentagonal prism each edge of which is 3 inches.

41. If a secant plane intersects two planes so that the lines of intersection are parallel and the corresponding dihedrals are equal, the two planes are parallel.

42. Prove the preceding example when the equal dihedrals are the alternate interior angles; prove it for equal alternate exterior angles.

43. Compare the volumes of two rectangular parallelopipeds the respective edges of which are 2 feet, 3 feet, 7 feet, and 5 feet, 3 feet, and 8 feet.

44. A parallelopiped has an altitude of 8 inches and its base is a rhombus with a 10-inch side, the shorter diagonal being 12 inches. Find the volume.

45. Find the volume of a regular hexagonal prism, the lateral edge being 10 inches and the basal edge 5 inches.

46. Find the volume of a rectangular parallelopiped, the lateral edge being 20 feet and the basal edges being 5 feet.

47. Find the volume of a parallelopiped, the base being 8 inches square, the lateral edge 13 inches, and the perpendicular let fall from a vertex of one base striking the other base 5 inches from the corresponding vertex.

48. Find the volume of a hexagonal prism, having for its base a regular polygon, the lateral edge being 25 inches, the basal edge 10 inches, and the inclination of the lateral edge to the base being 60°. Find the volume if the inclination is 45°.

49. The specific gravity of iron is 7.4. What is the weight of a rectangular tank including the cover $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick, made of iron, the inside measurements being 20 inches by 20 inches by 4 feet? Make a diagram showing how the answer can be obtained with the least computation.

50. A right triangular tank has a lateral edge of 15 feet and basal edges of 8 feet, 7 feet, and 5 feet, inside measurements. Find its total area and its capacity in gallons. $7\frac{1}{2}$ gallons = 1 cubic foot approximately.

51. How can one obtain the volume of an irregular piece of rock by immersing it?

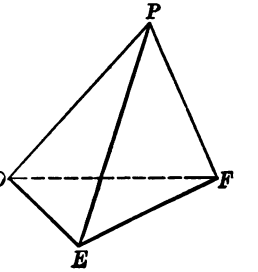
52. What is the ratio of two rectangular solids the dimensions of which are 3, 8, 12, and 4, 9, 20 respectively?

53. The apothem of the base of a regular hexagonal prism is 10 and its lateral edge is 20. Find its volume and total area.

54. The apothem of the base of a cube is 4. Find volume and total area.

55. The edges of three cubes are 7 inches, 12 inches, and 13 inches respectively. Find the volume of each and the total area of each.

568. PYRAMID. A polyhedron all but one of the faces of which meet in the same point is a pyramid. The point in which these faces meet is the *vertex*. The face which does not meet the vertex is the *base* and the other faces are the *lateral faces*. The intersections of the lateral faces are the *lateral edges* and the intersections of the lateral faces with the base are the *basal edges*.



Point out the various parts of the pyramid above.

569. ALTITUDE OF A PYRAMID. The length of the perpendicular from the vertex to the plane of the base is the *altitude* of the pyramid. It may also be taken as the perpendicular distance between the plane of the base and a plane through the vertex parallel to the base. Why?

570. PYRAMIDS CLASSIFIED. A pyramid is *triangular*, *quadrangular*, *pentagonal*, etc., according as its base is a triangle, a quadrilateral, a pentagon, etc.

In a triangular pyramid any face may be taken for the base, the vertex of the opposite polyhedral angle then being the vertex of the pyramid.

571. REGULAR PYRAMID. A pyramid with a regular base, such that the vertex lies in the perpendicular erected at the center of the base, is a *regular pyramid*.

572. SLANT HEIGHT. The perpendicular from the vertex of a regular pyramid to any basal edge is the *slant height* of the regular pyramid.

573. TRUNCATED PYRAMID. That portion of a pyramid included between the base and a plane cutting all the lateral edges is a *truncated pyramid.*

574. FRUSTUM OF A PYRAMID. A truncated pyramid in which the cutting plane is parallel to the base is a *frustum of a pyramid.* The section made by the cutting plane is the *upper base* of the frustum.

575. ALTITUDE OF A FRUSTUM. The perpendicular distance between the bases is the *altitude* of the frustum.

COROLLARIES TO THE DEFINITIONS.

576. COR. I. *The lateral faces of a pyramid are triangles.*

577. COR. II. *In a regular pyramid the lateral edges are equal, the lateral faces are congruent triangles, and the slant height is the same irrespective of the face in which it is drawn.*

578. COR. III. *In a frustum of a regular pyramid the lateral edges are equal, the lateral faces are congruent trapezoids, and the slant height is the same irrespective of the face in which it is drawn.*

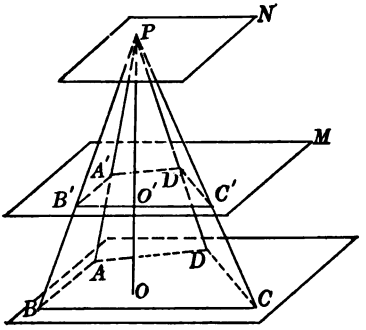
56. A rectangular box 12 inches by 18 inches by 22 inches, outside measurement, is made of 1-inch boards. What is its capacity in cubic inches? How many cubical boxes $2\frac{3}{4}$ inches on an edge can be packed in it? What is its capacity in gallons?

PROPOSITION XIII.

579. THEOREM. *If a pyramid is cut by a plane parallel to the base,*

I. *The lateral edges and the altitude are cut proportionally;*

II. *The section is a polygon similar to the base.*



Given a pyramid $P-AC$ with base $ABCD$, and with altitude PO. Cut the pyramid $P-AC$ with plane $M \parallel$ to base $ABCD$, making section $A'B'C'D'$.

I. **To Prove** $\frac{PA}{PA'} = \frac{PB}{PB'} = \frac{PC}{PC'}$, etc., $= \frac{PO}{PO'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Through the vertex P pass plane $N \parallel$ plane M.

2. Compare the ratios

$$\frac{PA}{PA'}, \frac{PB}{PB'}, \frac{PC}{PC'}, \frac{PO}{PO'}.$$ § 482.

II. **To Prove** $A'B'C' \sim ABC$.

Proof. Sug. 1. What is the definition of similar polygons?

2. $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{PB}{PB'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'}$, etc. Why?

3. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

580. Cor. *The bases of a frustum of a pyramid are similar polygons.*

PROPOSITION XIV.

581. Theorem. *If a section of a pyramid is parallel to the base, the ratio of the section to the base equals the ratio of the squares of the distances from the vertex to the section and the base.*

Given a pyramid, as in § 579, with section $A'B'C'$ parallel to the base $ABC\ldots$ and with PO' and PO the respective distances of the section and the base from the vertex P.

To Prove $\frac{A'B'C'\ldots}{ABC\ldots} = \frac{\overline{PO'}^2}{\overline{PO}^2}$.

Proof. Sug. $\frac{A'B'C'\ldots}{ABC\ldots} = \frac{\overline{A'B'}^2}{\overline{AB}^2} = \frac{\overline{PA'}^2}{\overline{PA}^2} = \frac{\overline{PO'}^2}{\overline{PO}^2}$.

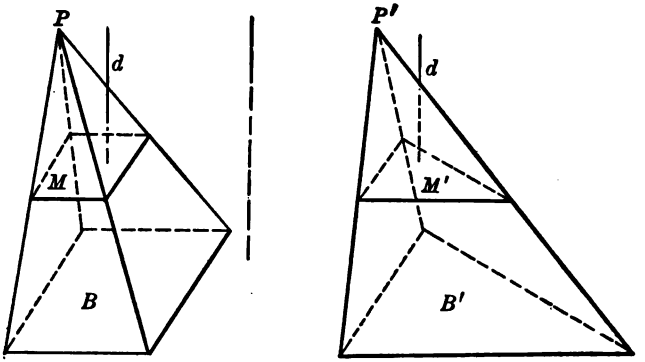
Give the authority for each of these statements.

Therefore—

57. A cistern is in the form of a regular hexagonal prism. The lateral edge is 7 feet and the basal edge is 6 feet, inside measurements. What is its capacity in gallons?

PROPOSITION XV.

582. THEOREM. *In pyramids having equal bases and equal altitudes, sections made by planes parallel to the respective bases and at equal distances from the respective vertices are equal.*



Given two pyramids, P and P', with equal altitudes h, equal bases B and B' respectively; M and M' being sections of P and P' parallel to the respective bases and at the same distance d from the respective vertices.

To Prove $M = M'$.

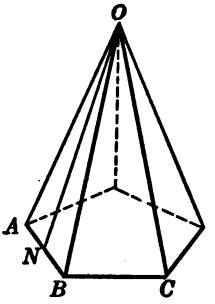
Proof. SUG. 1. $\frac{M}{B} = \frac{d^2}{h^2}$ and $\frac{M'}{B'} = \frac{d^2}{h^2}$. Why?

58. The volume of a rectangular parallelopiped is 6720 cubic inches and its edges are in the ratio of 3, 5, 7. Find the three edges.

59. The three edges of a rectangular parallelopiped meeting in a point are 2 feet, 5 feet, and 10 feet. Find its lateral area and volume.

PROPOSITION XVI.

583. THEOREM. *The lateral area of a regular pyramid is equal to one-half the product of the perimeter of the base and the slant height.*



Given the regular pyramid O, its lateral area denoted by S, its slant height ON by l, and the perimeter of its base by p.

To Prove $S = \frac{1}{2} lp$.

Proof. Left to the student.

60. A right triangular prism has an altitude of 20 inches and basal edges of 10 feet, 19 feet, and 12 feet. Find its lateral area and volume. Two methods.

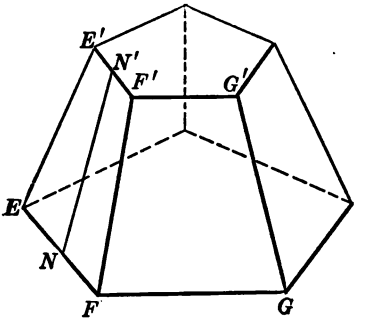
61. The diagonal of a rectangular parallelopiped is 24 and its edges are in the ratio of 2, 3, 4. Find the total area and the volume.

62. A cubical cistern holds 900 barrels of $31\frac{1}{2}$ gallons. How many square feet of surface has it?

63. Find the interior surface of a rectangular cistern, the edges being in the ratio of 3, 4, 5 and its capacity 900 barrels.

PROPOSITION XVII.

584. THEOREM. *The lateral area of the frustum of a regular pyramid is equal to the product of the slant height by one-half the sum of the perimeters of the bases.*



Given $E'G$ the frustum of a regular pyramid, its lateral area denoted by S, its slant height, NN', by l, and the respective perimeters of the two bases by p and p'.

To Prove $S = \frac{1}{2} \times l\,(p + p')$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Find the area of each face and add these areas.

2. What is the coefficient in the addition?

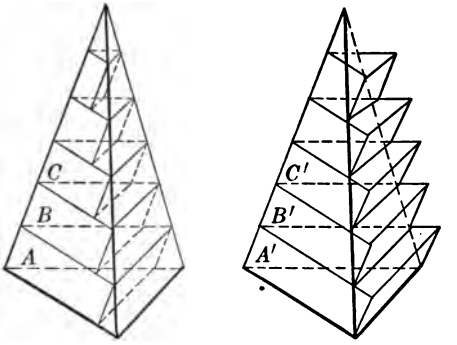
Therefore—

A RIGHT PYRAMID. A pyramid whose altitude from the vertex falls to the center of the circle that circumscribes the base is *a right pyramid.*

63a. A right triangular pyramid has an altitude of 20′ and basal edges 10′, 12′, and 19′. Find its lateral area.

SUG. §342. And 340, or 346, or 369.

585. INSCRIBED PRISMS. If a triangular pyramid is cut by any number of planes parallel to its base and through the lines in which these planes cut one of the lateral faces of the pyramid other planes are passed parallel to the opposite lateral edge of the pyramid, certain triangular prisms are formed. These are *inscribed prisms*, as A, B, C, etc., or *circumscribed prisms*, as $A'B'C'$, etc., according as this second set of planes meet the successive planes of the first set within the pyramid or without the pyramid.



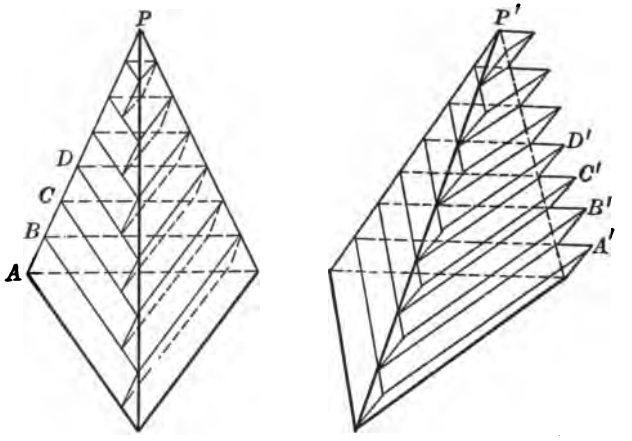
586. POSTULATE. *A pyramid has a volume greater than the combined volumes of any set of inscribed prisms and less than any set of circumscribed prisms.*

64. A regular quadrangular pyramid of basal edge 6 ft. and altitude 4 feet is cut by a plane parallel to the base and bisecting the altitude. What is the area of the section?

65. In the preceding exercises at what distance from the vertex must the plane be passed so that the area of the section formed shall be one-half the area of the base?

PROPOSITION XVIII.

587. THEOREM. *The volumes of two triangular pyramids with equal altitudes and equal bases are equal.*



Given two triangular pyramids P and P', with equal altitudes h and equal bases.

To Prove $P = P'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Divide the equal altitudes of P and P' into any number of equal parts x and through the points of division pass planes parallel to the bases and form in P a set of inscribed prisms, A, B, C . . . and in P' a set of circumscribed prisms A', B', C'. . .

2. Prisms $B' = A$, $C' = B$, $D' = C$, etc. Why? § 564.

3. Denote $A + B + C + \ldots$ by V and $A' + B' + C' + \ldots$ by V'. Then $V' - V = A'$. Why?

4. Suppose that $P' > P$, *i. e.*, $P' - P$ equals some definite number K. By § 586 $P' < V'$ and $P > V$ so that $P' - P < V' - V$.

5. Hence $P' - P < A'$. Why? By taking the length x small enough the prism A' can be made as small as is desired, even less than K, since its altitude x is decreased. § 564. Hence P' cannot be greater than P.

6. Form the inscribed prisms in P' and the circumscribed prisms in P. It can now be proved that P' cannot be less than P.

Therefore—

66. The total area of a regular triangular prism is twice its lateral area. The lateral edge is four feet. Find the basal edge.

67. A regular triangular prism and a regular triangular pyramid stand on the same base and have the same lateral area. Find the ratio of their altitudes.

68. The volume of a regular triangular prism is 64 cu. ft. Its altitude is $\frac{4}{3}\sqrt{3}$ ft. Find the basal edge.

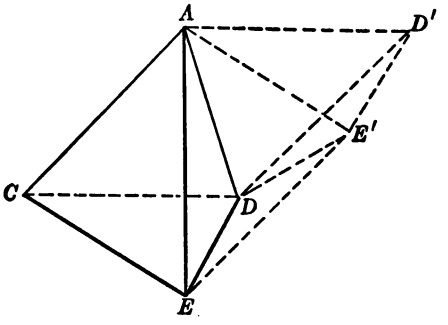
69. A regular triangular pyramid and a regular triangular prism stand on the same base and have equal altitudes. Find the ratio of their lateral areas, of their total areas.

70. A regular pyramid has a basal edge of 13 inches, and a section parallel to the base has a side of 9 inches. What is the ratio of their distances from the vertex?

71. A regular prism has for a base a regular decagon of radius 12 inches, and a lateral edge 2 feet. Find its volume in gallons.

PROPOSITION XIX.

588. THEOREM. *The volume of a triangular pyramid is one-third the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given the triangular pyramid $A - ECD$, its volume denoted by V, its base by B, and its altitude by h.

To Prove $V = \frac{1}{3} h \times B$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Through A pass a plane parallel to the base, extend the planes of the faces ACE and ACD, and through ED pass a plane parallel to AC. The resulting figure is a prism. Why?

2. $A - EE'D'D$ is a quadrangular pyramid. The plane of $AE'D$ divides it into two equal pyramids, $A - EE'D$ and $A - E'D'D$.

3. $A - ECD = D - E'D'A = A - E'DE$.

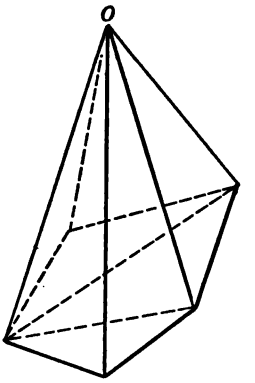
4. $A - ECD = \frac{1}{3}$ prism. What is its base and altitude? Authority for each statement.

6. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XX.

589. THEOREM. *The volume of any pyramid is equal to one-third the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given pyramid O, denoting its volume by V, its base by B, and its altitude by h.

To Prove $V = \frac{1}{3} h \times B$.

Proof. The proof, similar to that of § 565, is left to the pupil.

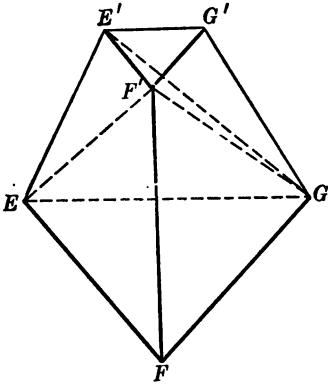
590. COR. I. *If two pyramids have equal bases their volumes have the same ratio as their altitudes.*

591. COR. II. *If two pyramids have the same altitude, their volumes have the same ratio as their bases.*

592. COR. III. *Any two pyramids are proportional to the products of their bases and altitudes.*

PROPOSITION XXI.

593. THEOREM. *The volume of a frustum of a triangular pyramid is equal to the sum of the volumes of three triangular pyramids each with the altitude of the frustum and with bases equal respectively to the upper base of the frustum, the lower base of the frustum, and a mean proportional to the bases of the frustum.*



Given frustum of a triangular pyramid F, with upper base B_1 and lower base B_2.

To Prove $F = \frac{1}{3}h\,(B_1 + B_2 + \sqrt{B_1 B_2})$.

Proof. SUG. 1. By a plane through $GE'F'$ cut off a triangular pyramid P, with base B_1 and altitude h. What is its volume?

2. By a plane through GEF' cut off a triangular pyramid P_2 with base B_2 and altitude h. What is its volume?

3. The remaining portion is a triangular pyramid, P_3.

$$\frac{P_3}{P_1} = \frac{\triangle GEE'}{\triangle GE'G'} = \frac{GE}{G'E'} = \frac{\sqrt{B_2}}{\sqrt{B_1}}. \quad \text{Why?}$$

4. $P_3 = P_1 \frac{\sqrt{B_2}}{\sqrt{B_1}} = \frac{1}{3} hB_1 \frac{\sqrt{B_2}}{\sqrt{B_1}}$

$= \frac{1}{3} h \sqrt{B_1 B_2}$. Why?

5. $F = P_1 + P_2 + P_3$

$= \frac{1}{3} h (B_1 + B_2 + \sqrt{B_1 B_2})$.

Therefore—

72. Find the volume of a regular triangular pyramid with basal edge of 4 feet and altitude of $5\sqrt{3}$ feet.

73. The point of meeting of the three medians of an equilateral triangle is two-thirds of the length of the median from each vertex.

74. The edges of a regular tetrahedron are each a feet. Find its slant height, altitude, base area, lateral area, total area, and volume.

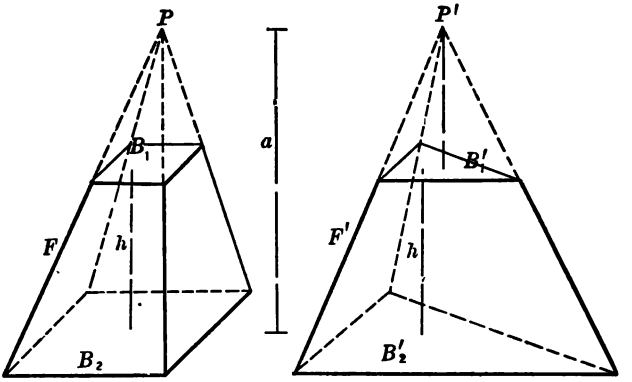
75. Find the volume of a regular hexagonal prism with a radius of 2 feet and lateral edge of 2 yards. What is its capacity in gallons? In bbls.? What is its lateral area? Its total area?

75a. Find the volume of the pyramid in exercise 63a.

75b. What is the locus of the vertices of equal pyramids having the same base? Having equal bases in the same plane?

PROPOSITION XXII.

594. THEOREM. *The volume of the frustum of any pyramid is equal to the sum of the volumes of three pyramids each with the altitude of the frustum and with bases equal respectively to the upper base of the frustum, the lower base of the frustum, and a mean proportional to the two bases of the frustum.*



Given the frustum F with upper base B_1, lower base B_2, and altitude h.

To Prove $F = \frac{1}{3} h\,(B_1 + B_2 + \sqrt{B_1 B_2})$.

Proof. SUG. 1. The lateral edges of F will, if extended, meet in a point forming a pyramid P. Why? Construct a triangular pyramid P' with the same altitude a as P and a base B_2' equal to the base B_2 of P. Cut from P' a frustum F' with altitude h.

2. Compare the volumes of P and P'. Auth.

3. Compare B_1' and B_1. § 582.

4. The pyramids with bases B_1 and B_1' and altitudes $a - h$ are equal. Why?

5. Hence the frustum $F = F'$. Why?

6. $F' = \frac{1}{3} h (B_1' + B_2' + \sqrt{B_1' B_2'})$. Why?

7. $\therefore F = \frac{1}{3} h (B_1 + B_2 + \sqrt{B_1 B_2})$.

Therefore—

76a. A monument is 25 feet high, 18 inches square at one end, 30 inches square at the other, and of uniform slope. What is its volume in cubic feet? If its specific gravity is $7\frac{1}{2}$, what does it weigh in tons?

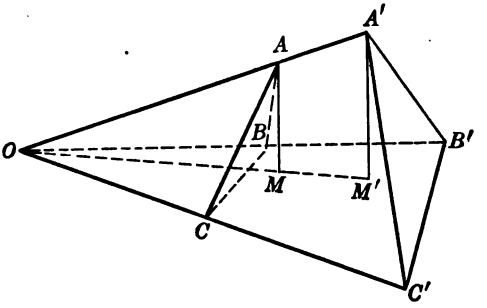
76b. If the lateral faces of the monument were extended to form a pyramid what would be the volume of the part added?

76c A stone shaft is 6′ square at the base and tapers uniformly for 24′ to 2′ square, from which size it tapers to a point making the total altitude 30′. Find its volume.

76d. How many thousand shingle will it take to cover a hexagonal church tower 10′ on a side at the base and 75′ high, making an allowance of $\frac{1}{6}$ for waste, the shingle being laid 5 inches to the weather.

PROPOSITION XXIII.

595. THEOREM. *Two tetrahedrons having a trihedral angle of one equal to a trihedral angle of the other have the same ratio as the products of the three edges including the equal trihedral angles.*



Given two tetrahedrons $O-ABC$ and $O'-A'B'C'$ with equal trihedrals O and O'.

To Prove $\dfrac{O-ABC}{O'-A'B'C'} = \dfrac{OA \times OB \times OC}{O'A' \times O'B' \times O'C'}$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Superpose trihedral O' upon trihedral O and from points A and A' drop perpendiculars to the opposite face meeting it in points M and M' respectively.

2. Then $\dfrac{O-ABC}{O-A'B'C'}$

$= \dfrac{AM \times \triangle OBC}{A'M' \times \triangle OB'C'}$. Why?

3. Also $\frac{\triangle OBC}{\triangle OB'C'} = \frac{OB \times OC}{OB' \times OC'}$. Why?

4. Points O, M, M' are in a straight line. Why?

5. $\frac{AM}{A'M'} = \frac{OA}{OA'}$. Why?

6. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

596. SIMILAR POLYHEDRONS. If two polyhedrons have the same number of faces similar each to each and similarly placed and have their corresponding polyhedral angles equal, the polyhedrons are *similar*.

The equal angles and the lines and faces in the two polyhedrons which are similarly situated are called *homologous* angles, lines, and faces, respectively.

PRELIMINARY THEOREMS.

597. THEOREM I. *Homologous lines in similar polyhedrons are proportional.*

598. THEOREM II. *Homologous faces in similar polyhedrons are proportional to the squares of homologous lines.*

599. THEOREM III. *The surfaces of similar polyhedrons are proportional to the squares of homologous lines.* § 374.

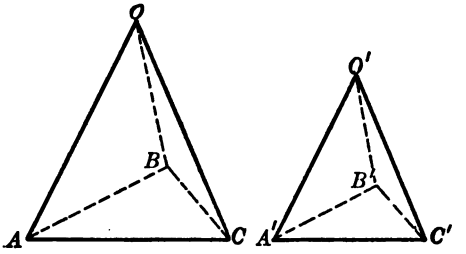
77. Volumes of similar solids are to each other as the square roots of the cubes of their surfaces.

78. If the amount of lumber used is to be the same in either case which provides the greater capacity, one barn or two, the barns being similar in shape?

PROPOSITION XXIV.

600. THEOREM. *Two similar tetrahedrons are proportional to the cubes of homologous edges.*

Given two similar tetrahedrons, O and O', edges OA, OB, OC . . . being homologous to $O'A'$, $O'B'$, $O'C'$ . . . respectively.



To Prove $\frac{O}{O'} = \frac{\overline{OA}^3}{\overline{OA'}^3}$

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare the trihedral angles O and O'. $\frac{O}{O'} = \frac{OA \times OB \times OC}{O'A' \times O'B' \times O'C'}$

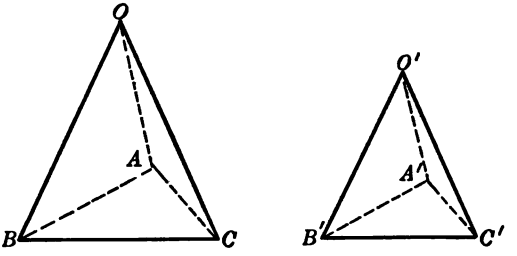
$= \frac{OA}{O'A'} \times \frac{OB}{O'B'} \times \frac{OC}{O'C'}$. Why?

2. Compare $\frac{OA}{O'A'}, \frac{OB}{O'B'}, \frac{OC}{O'C'}$ Auth.

3. Substitute for $\frac{OB}{O'B'}$ and $\frac{OC}{O'C'}$ in (1).

PROPOSITION XXV.

601. THEOREM. *Two tetrahedrons are similar if three faces of one are respectively similar to three faces of the other.*



Given two tetrahedrons O and O' with the three faces about O similar to the three faces about O' respectively.

To Prove $O \sim O'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare trihedrals O and O'. Auth.

2. Compare lines AB, BC, CA with $A'B'$, $B'C'$, $C'A'$ respectively. Auth.

3. Compare $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$. Auth.

4. The corresponding trihedrals and dihedrals are equal. Why?

5. The conditions for similarity are fulfilled. Why?

Therefore—

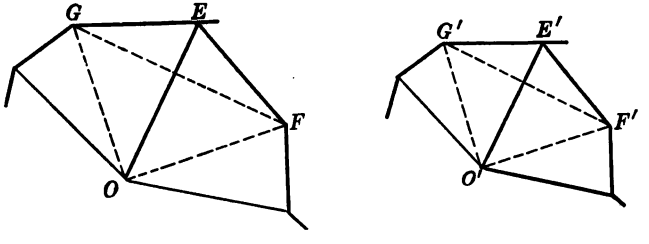
79. If the dimensions of a window be multiplied by π, by what factor is its lighting capacity increased?

602. Cor. *Two tetrahedrons having a dihedral of one equal to a dihedral of the other and the including faces of the first dihedral similar respectively to the including faces of the second dihedral and similarly placed are similar.*

Proof. Sug. Prove the faces opposite the equal dihedrals similar.

PROPOSITION XXVI.

603. Theorem. *Two similar polyhedrons can be divided into tetrahedrons similar each to each and similarly placed.*



Given P and P' similar polyhedrons.

To Prove that P and P' can be divided into tetrahedrons similar each to each and similarly placed.

Proof. Sug. 1. Through any two corresponding vertices as O and O' draw in each of the including faces all possible diagonals. The corresponding faces of P and P' are thus divided into the same number of triangles, similar each to each and similarly placed. Why?

2. Let OE and $O'E'$ be two corresponding edges and let OF and OG be the two diagonals including between them OE. Similarly let $O'F'$ and $O'G'$ be the corresponding lines of P'. Cut from P and P' the respective tetrahedrons $O - EFG$ and $O' - E'F'G'$. By Sug. (1) $\triangle OEF \sim \triangle O'E'F'$ and $\triangle OEG \sim \triangle O'E'G'$. Also dihedral OE = dihedral $O'E'$. Why? Hence tetrahedron $O - EFG \sim$ tetrahedron $O' - E'F'G'$. § 602.

3. In the remaining portions of P and P' the new faces $\triangle FOG$ and $\triangle EFG$ are similar respectively to $F'O'G'$ and $E'F'G'$. Why? Also the ratio of the new edges OF, OG, FG to $O'F'$, $O'G'$, $F'G'$ respectively, are equal to $\frac{OE}{O'E'}$, (Why?) the original ratio of similitude.

4. Since the trihedral angles O and O' of the removed tetrahedrons are equal, so are the remaining polyhedral angles O and O'.

5. Hence the remaining polyhedrals are similar. Why?

6. Repeat the process on the remaining portions of P and P'.

Therefore—

604. REGULAR POLYHEDRON. A polyhedron in which all the faces are regular congruent polygons and in which the polyhedral angles are equal is a *regular polyhedron.* A regular polyhedron must be *convex.*

PROPOSITION XXVII.

605. THEOREM. *At most only five regular polyhedrons can be formed.*

Given SUG. 1. Show that three, four, or five regular triangles can be so used as to form a convex polyhedral angle.

2. Show that more than five regular triangles cannot form a convex polyhedral.

3. Make a similar test for the regular tetragon or square. § 510.

4. How many regular pentagons may be used? Auth.

5. Show that no regular polygon of more than five sides can be used to form a convex polyhedral.

Therefore—

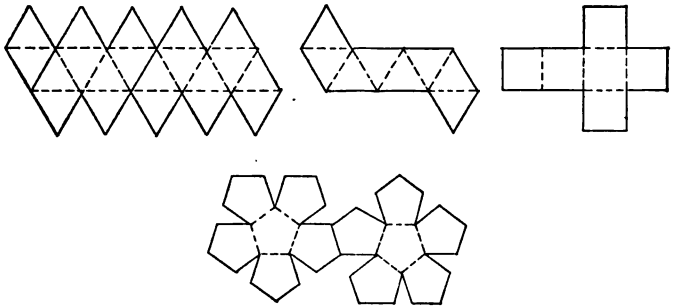
80. Similar polyhedrons have the same ratio as the cubes of homologous edges.

SUG. According to the demonstration of 603, the polyhedrons may be divided into tetrahedrons. Let them be respectively P_1, P_1', P_2, P_2', etc. Let a_1 and a_1' be homologous edges of P_1 and P_1', etc. Then by 600.

$\frac{P_1}{P_1'} = \frac{a_1^3}{a_1'^3}$, $\frac{P_2}{P_2'} = \frac{a_2^3}{a_2'^3}$, etc. But the ratios of the a's are equal. Why? Hence the ratios of the P's are equal and $\frac{P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \ldots}{P_1' + P_1' + P_3' + \ldots}$

$= \frac{P_1}{P'} = \frac{a_1^3}{a_1'^3}$.

606. SCHOLIUM. That five regular polygons can all be constructed is illustrated as follows: Cut the patterns below from cardboard and cut the material half through along the dotted lines. Fold each so as to form a polyhedron, pasting strips of paper along the edges to keep them in shape. It is possible to prove that these figures can actually exist by purely mathematical reasoning.



81. If the surface of a box be trebled in building a second box of the same shape, by what is the capacity increased?

82. What increase in material is required in building a new grain box having the same shape as the old one but of double capacity?

83. The perimeter of the mid section of a frustum of a pyramid equals one-half the sum of the perimeters of the bases.

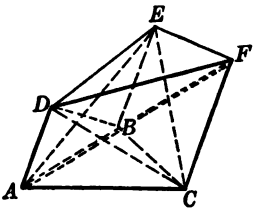
84. A grain bin holds 100 bu. Another bin has each dimension equal to twice the corresponding dimension of the first. What is its capacity?

85. The surfaces of two similar solids are to each other as the cube roots of the squares of their volumes.

86. The total areas of regular polyhedrons have the same ratios as the squares of their altitudes or as the squares of any two homologous edges.

87. Find the volume of a regular quadrangular pyramid with basal edge of 8 feet and slant height of 5 feet.

88. The volume of a truncated triangular prism is equal to the sum of the volumes of three pyramids having the base of the prism as a common base and the vertices of the inclined section as respective vertices.



To Prove $EFD - ABC = E - ABC + D - ABC + F - ABC$.

Pass planes through each vertex of the truncating section, DEF, and the respective opposite edges of the base. Plane EAC cuts off the first pyramid. There is left $E - ADFC$. Plane EDC cuts off $E - ACD = B - ADC$ or $D - ABC$, §587, the second pyramid. The remaining pyramid, $E - DCF$ or $D - FEC = D - FCB$ (equal bases). But $D - FCB = A - FCB$, the third pyramid.

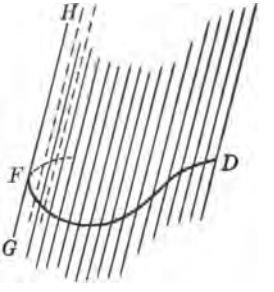
89. Find the volume of a truncated triangular right prism with basal edges of 5 feet, 5 feet, eight feet and lateral edges of 7 feet, 8 feet, 9 feet, respectively. Use two methods of finding the base.

90. The volume of any truncated triangular prism equals the product of a right section and one-third the sum of the lateral edges.

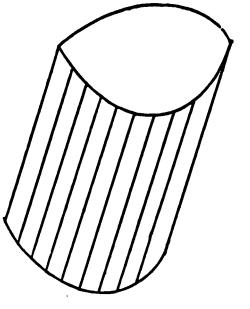
CHAPTER IX.

The Three Round Bodies.

607. Cylindrical Surface. A surface formed by a moving straight line which always remains parallel to its original position and continually touches a fixed curved line is a *cylindrical surface.* The moving straight line is the *generatrix* and the fixed curve is the *directrix.* The generatrix in any one of its positions is an *element* of the surface. If the directrix is a closed curve, the cylindrical surface is a *closed* cylindrical surface.



608. A Cylinder. A solid bounded by a closed cylindrical surface and two parallel planes cutting the elements is a *cylinder.* The plane surfaces are the *bases* of the cylinder and the cylindrical surface is the *lateral* surface of the cylinder. The distance between the two bases is the *altitude* of the cylinder.



609. Right Section. A section of a cylinder made by a plane perpendicular to an element is a *right section.*

610. Circular Cylinder. A cylinder the bases of which are circles is a *circular cylinder.* The line joining the centers of the bases is the *axis* of the cylinder.

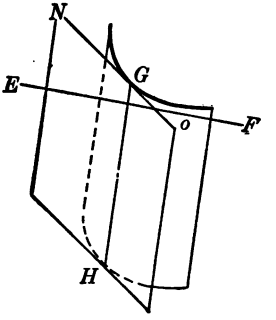
611. RIGHT CYLINDER. A cylinder the bases of which are perpendicular to the elements is a *right cylinder.*

612. OBLIQUE CYLINDER. A cylinder in which the elements are not perpendicular to the bases is an *oblique cylinder.*

613. CYLINDER OF REVOLUTION. A cylinder generated by the revolution of a rectangle about one of its sides is a *cylinder of revolution.*

614. SIMILAR CYLINDERS. Cylinders generated by the revolution of similar rectangles about homologous sides are *similar cylinders.*

615. TANGENTS TO A CYLINDER. If a *line* touches the lateral surface of a cylinder but does not intersect it, it is *tangent* to the cylinder. If a *plane* embraces an element of a cylinder but does not intersect the surface, it is *tangent* to the cylinder.



EF is tangent to the cylinder at *O* and plane *N* is tangent in the element *GH*.

PRELIMINARY THEOREMS.

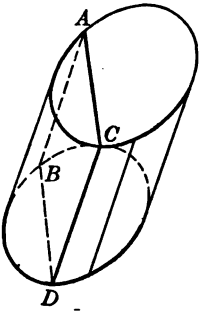
616. THEOREM I. *The elements of a cylinder are parallel and equal.*

617. THEOREM II. *A right section of a cylinder is perpendicular to every element.*

618. THEOREM III. *A cylinder of revolution is a right circular cylinder.*

PROPOSITION I.

619. THEOREM. *Every section of a cylinder made by a plane embracing an element is a parallelogram.*



Given the plane AD embracing the element AB.

To Prove that plane AD intersects the surface of the cylinder in $\boxed{S}$ $ABDC$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let D be the point in which the plane cuts the perimeter of the base the second time and through D draw the element DC. How does DC lie with respect to BA? Why?

2. DC and BA determine a plane containing BA and D. Why?

3. How many planes can contain BA and D? Where then does DC lie with respect to the given plane ABD? With respect to the intersection of the plane and the cylinder?

4. Complete the proof by showing that $ABDC$ is a $\boxed{S}$.

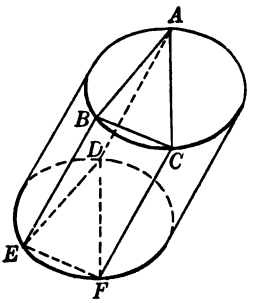
Therefore—

620. Cor. I. *A plane containing an element of a cylindrical surface without being tangent intersects the surface in a second element also.*

621. Cor. II. *Every section of a right cylinder by a plane which embraces an element is a rectangle.*

PROPOSITION II.

622. Theorem. *The bases of a cylinder are congruent.*



Given a cylinder AD with bases ABC and DEF.

To Prove bases ABC and DEF congruent.

Proof. Sug. 1. Let A, B, C be any three points in the perimeter of one base and draw the element AD. Pass planes through the element AD and the points B and C, intersecting the cylinder in the elements BE and CF respectively. $ADEB$, $ADFC$, $BCFE$ are ▭. Why?

2. Compare $\triangle ABC$ and DEF. Auth.

3. Superpose $\triangle ABC$ upon $\triangle DEF$. As A, B, and C are any three points of the perimeter ABC, where does the perimeter ABC fall?

4. Compare the two bases.

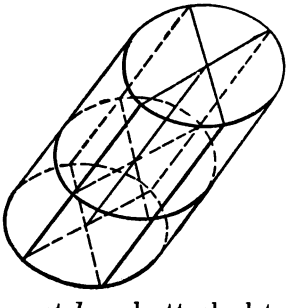
Therefore—

623. Cor. I. *Any two parallel sections cutting the elements of a cylinder are congruent.*

624. Cor. II. *All sections of a cylinder parallel to the bases are congruent to the bases.*

625. Cor. III. *The axis of a circular cylinder passes through the centers of all sections which are parallel to the bases.*

Sug. Draw any two diameters in one base. Pass planes through these two diameters and the elements at their extremities. Where will these two planes intersect the section? The other base? Where does the axis lie with respect to these planes?

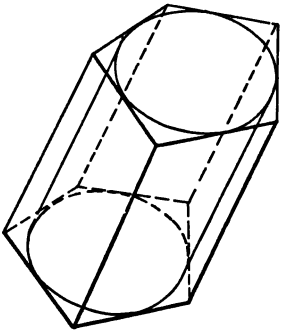


1. Sect a is perpendicular to sect b and attached to it. If b is revolved about its free extremity in one plane what figure is formed by a?

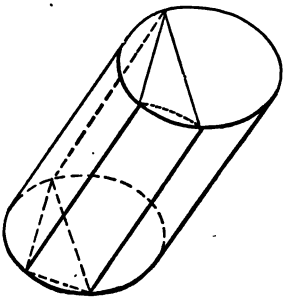
2. Cut a cylinder of revolution by a plane parallel to an element in such a manner that the section shall be a rectangle congruent to the rectangle which generates the cylinder.

3. A plane tangent to a cylinder of revolution is perpendicular to the plane of any right section.

626. CYLINDER INSCRIBED IN A PRISM. If each lateral face of a prism is tangent to a cylinder and the bases of the prism are circumscribed about the corresponding bases of the cylinder, the prism is *circumscribed about the cylinder* and the cylinder is *inscribed in the prism.*



627. CYLINDER CIRCUMSCRIBED ABOUT A PRISM. If each lateral edge of a prism is an element of a cylinder and the bases of the prism are inscribed in the corresponding bases of the cylinder, the prism is *inscribed in the cylinder* and the cylinder is *circumscribed about the prism.*



628. POSTULATE I. *The volume of a circumscribed prism, the areas and perimeters of its bases and sections, and its lateral area are greater than the corresponding parts of an inscribed cylinder.*

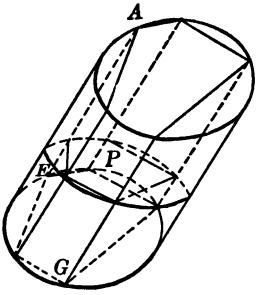
629. POSTULATE II. *The volume of an inscribed prism, the areas and perimeters of its bases and sections, and its lateral area are less than the corresponding parts of a circumscribed cylinder.*

A cylinder is 8′ in diameter and 12′ high. How much lumber 1″x12″x12′ will it take to built 2 parallel partitions 2′ from the axis?

630. POSTULATE III. *If the number of sides of a prism inscribed in a cylinder or circumscribed about a cylinder be indefinitely increased in such a manner that the sides of the prism be all indefinitely decreased, the volume, lateral surface, bases, sections, perimeters of bases and sections of the cylinder are the limits of the corresponding parts of the prism.*

PROPOSITION III.

631. THEOREM. *The area of the lateral surface of a cylinder is equal to the perimeter of a right section multiplied by an element of the surface.*



Given cylinder AG, its lateral area denoted by S, the perimeter of a right section by p, and an element by e.

To Prove $S = p \times e$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Inscribe in the cylinder a prism, denoting its lateral area by S', the perimeter of its right section p by p'. Its edge is e. Why?

2. Then $S' = p' \times e$. Why?

3. Indefinitely increase the number of faces in the manner indicated in § 630. What are the limits of S', p', and $p' \times e$?

4. $\therefore S = p \times e$. Why?

Therefore—

632. Cor. I. *The lateral area of a cylinder of revolution is equal to the product of the circumference of the base and an element, or the altitude, i. e.,* $S = 2\pi rh$.

633. Cor. II. *The lateral areas of similar cylinders are to each other as the squares of their altitudes or as the squares of the radii (or diameters) of their bases.*

Sug. Denote the lateral areas by S_1 and S_2, the altitudes by h_1 and h_2, the radii by r_1 and r_2, the diameters by d_1 and d_2 respectively. Then $\frac{S_1}{S_2} = \frac{2\pi r_1 h_1}{2\pi r_2 h_2} = \frac{r_1 h_1}{r_2 h_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} \times \frac{h_1}{h_2} = \frac{r_1^2}{r_2^2} = \frac{h_1^2}{h_2^2} = \frac{d_1^2}{d_2^2}$. Give the reasons for each statement.

634. Cor. III. *The total area, A, of a cylinder of revolution, which is the sum of the lateral area and the areas of the two bases, is given by the formula* $A = 2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2 = 2\pi r(r + h)$.

635. Cor. IV. *The total areas of two similar cylinders are to each other as the squares of their altitudes, or as the squares of their radii (or diameters).*

Proof. Left to the student.

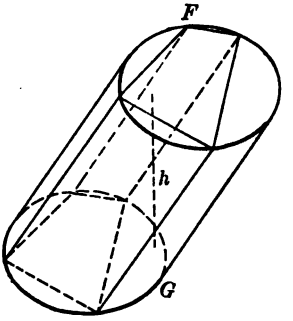
4. How many feet of lumber will it take to build the walls of a circular silo 15 feet in diameter and 25 feet high, allowing $\frac{1}{5}$ for matching?

5. A cistern is 10 feet deep and 8 feet in diameter. How many square yards of cement is needed to line it?

6. The total area of a right circular cylinder is 80π square feet and the radius of the base is 5 feet. Find the altitude.

PROPOSITION IV.

636. THEOREM. *The volume of a cylinder is equal to the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given a cylinder FG, its volume denoted by V, its base by B, and its altitude by h.

To Prove $V = B \times h$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Inscribe in the cylinder a prism, its volume denoted by V' and its base by B'. Its altitude will be h. Why?

2. Then $V' = B' \times h$. Why?

3. Indefinitely increase the number of sides of the prism in the manner indicated in § 629. What is the limit of V'? Of B'? Of the product $B' \times h$? Why?

4. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

637. COR. I. *The volume of a cylinder of revolution is expressed in terms of its altitude h and radius r by the formula* $V = \pi r^2 h$.

638. COR. II. *The volumes of two similar cylinders of revolution are to each other as the cubes of their altitudes or as the cubes of their radii (or their diameters).*

Proof. Left to the pupil. See § 633.

7. Which generates the greater lateral area, the revolution of a rectangle about its longer side or about its shorter side?

8. What must be the shape of a piece of paper which exactly covers the lateral surface of an oblique cylinder? Of a right cylinder?

9. A cistern holding 75 barrels is 8 feet deep. What is its diameter? How many square yards of cement are required to line it?

10. A cylindrical tank on a water works tower has a lateral area of 1,232 square feet. The radius of its base is $\frac{1}{4}$ the altitude. Find the altitude and the radius. Find the total area. What would be the lateral area if the altitude were doubled. Find its total area under the same condition.

11. What is the locus of a point in space at a given distance from an unlimited straight line?

12. A saw log is 16 feet long and 18 inches in diameter at the small end. How many board feet in the largest squared timber that can be sawed from it?

13. A cylindrical water reservoir is 110 feet in diameter and 20 feet deep. How many barrels does it hold? How many square yards of cement are necessary to line it?

14. A rock submerged in a tank 29 feet in diameter and 8 feet deep raised the water 2 feet. What was the volume of the rock?

15. A farmer feeds his 60 cows 2 bushels of ensilage each day. The silo is cylindrical, 30 feet in diameter and 40 feet deep. How long will the ensilage last?

16. There are wine tanks 15 feet deep and 10 feet in diameter. How many quart bottles can be filled from one of them?

17. What is the ratio of the lateral area of a right circular cylinder to the sum of the bases?

18. What is the locus of a sect at a given distance from a straight line to which it is parallel?

19. What is the locus of point X which is at a given distance from a straight line and equally distant from two fixed points.

20. What is the locus of a point at a given distance from the lateral surface of a cylinder? Is it possible for one element of the locus to lie within the cylinder? Under what condition?

REVIEW.

639. State the formula for

1. The lateral area of a cylinder of revolution.

2. The total area of a cylinder of revolution.

3. The volume of a cylinder of revolution.

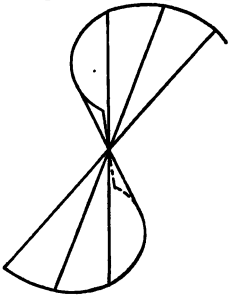
4. The ratio of the lateral area of two similar cylinders.

5. The ratios of the lateral areas of any two cylinders of revolution.

6. The ratios of the volumes of two similar cylinders.

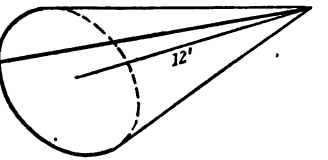
Cones.

640. Conical Surface. A curved surface formed by a moving straight line which passes through a fixed point and continually touches a fixed curve is a *conical surface*. The moving straight line is the *generatrix* and the fixed curve is the *directrix*. The generatrix in any one of its positions is an *element* of the surface. The fixed point is the *vertex* of the conical surface. If the directrix is a closed curve, the conical surface is a *closed* surface. The portions of the conical surface on the two sides of the vertex are the *nappes* of the conical surface and are designated as *upper* and *lower nappes*.



Usually only one nappe of a conical surface is considered.

641. A Cone. A solid bounded by one nappe of a closed conical surface and a plane cutting all the elements is a *cone*. The plane section is the *base* of the *cone*. The conical portion of the bounding surface is the *lateral surface* of the cone and the vertex of the conical surface is the vertex of the cone. The parts of the elements between the vertex and the base are the *elements* and the distance from the vertex to the plane of the base is the *altitude* of the cone.



642. Circular Cone. A cone with a circular base is a *circular cone*, and the straight line joining the vertex to the center of the base is the *axis of the circular cone*.

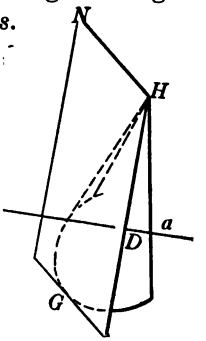
643. Right Cone. A cone with its axis perpendicular to the base is a *right cone*.

644. OBLIQUE CONE. A cone such that the axis is not perpendicular to the base is an *oblique cone.*

645. CONE OF REVOLUTION. A cone generated by the revolution of a right triangle about one leg as an axis is a *cone of revolution.* Any element of a cone of revolution is its *slant height.*

646. SIMILAR CONES. Cones of revolution that can be generated by the revolution of similar right triangles about homologous sides are *similar cones.*

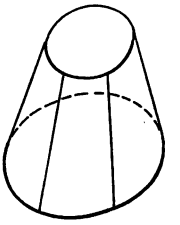
647. TANGENTS TO A CONE. A line which touches the conical surface in a point but does not intersect it is a *tangent line* to the cone. A plane which embraces an element but does not intersect the conical surface is a *tangent plane* to the cone.



Line a is a tangent to the cone at the point of tangency D and plane N is tangent to the cone along the element GH.

648. A TRUNCATED CONE. That portion of a cone included between the base and a plane cutting all the elements is a *truncated cone.*

649. A FRUSTUM OF A CONE. A truncated cone such that the cutting plane is parallel to the base is a *frustum of a cone.* The base of the cone is the *lower base* of the frustum, the section is the *upper base,* the distance between the two parallel planes is the *altitude.* If the frustum be a portion of a cone of revolution, the portion of the slant height of the cone included between the bases of the frustum is the *slant height of the frustum.*



PRELIMINARY THEOREMS.

650. THEOREM I. *Every cone of revolution is a right circular cone.*

651. THEOREM II. *The axis of a cone of revolution is its altitude.*

652. THEOREM III. *All elements of a cone of revolution are equal (i. e., the slant height is constant and equal to the hypotenuse of the generating triangle).*

21. From a given point without a cylinder draw a plane tangent to the cylinder.

22. A protecting wall for an embankment 500 feet long is 12 feet wide at the bottom, 3 feet wide at the top, and 18 feet high. How many cubic yards of stone in the wall?

23. How many brick, 2 inches $\times$ 4 inches $\times$ 8 inches, are required to build a chimney two bricks thick with a flue 8 inches $\times$ 12 inches and 25 feet high, if the mortar averages $\frac{1}{2}$-inch thick? Make a drawing of two tiers of brick when properly laid.

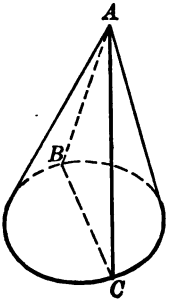
24. To construct a triangle with two sides and the median to the third side given.

SUG. Construct a $\square$. having the two sides and a diagonal twice the median.

25. If from any point within a regular tetrahedron perpendiculars be drawn to the four faces, the sum of these perpendiculars equals the altitude of the tetrahedron.

PROPOSITION V.

653. THEOREM. *Every section of a cone embracing the vertex is a triangle.*



Given a plane embracing the vertex A and intersecting the perimeter of the base in the points B and C.

To Prove that the $\triangle ABC$ is the section made by the plane.

Proof. SUG. 1. The plane must cut the perimeter in the points as B and C.

2. The plane embraces two points of the element AB and two points of the element AC.

3. AB and AC are intersections of the plane and the conical surface.

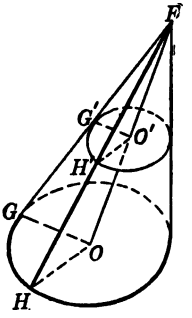
4. What kinds of lines are AB and AC?

Therefore—

654. Cor. I. *A plane containing an element of a conical surface without being tangent intersects the surface in a second element also.*

PROPOSITION VI.

655. Theorem. *Every section of a circular cone made by a plane parallel to the base is a circle.*



Given $F-OGH$ a circular cone with base $O-GH$ and a section $O'-G'H'$ parallel to the base, G', H', O' being the points in which the plane intersects the elements FG, FH, and the axis FO respectively.

To Prove $O'-G'H'$ a $\odot$.

Proof. Sug. 1. O is the center of the base and G and H are taken as any two points on the perimeter of the base. The figures $FG'GOO'$ and $FH'HOO'$ are plane figures. Why?

2. Compare the $\triangle$ $FG'O'$ and FGO; $\triangle$ $FH'O'$ and FHO; ratios $\frac{FO'}{FO}$, $\frac{O'G'}{OG}$ and $\frac{O'H'}{OH}$.

Auth.

3. Compare $O'G'$ and $O'H'$.

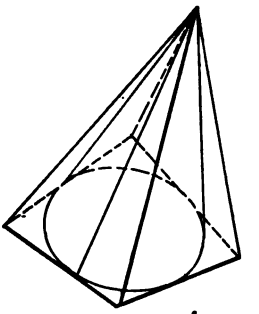
4. $\therefore$ $O'—G'H'$ is a circle. Why?

Therefore—

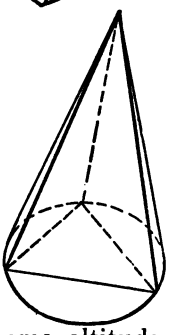
656. Cor. *The axis of a circular cone passes through the centers of all sections parallel to the base.*

What is the character of the polygon which revolved about one of its sides generates a frustum of a cone of revolution?

657. Cone Inscribed in a Pyramid. If the vertex of a pyramid coincides with the vertex of a cone and the base of the pyramid is circumscribed about the base of the cone, the pyramid is *circumscribed about the cone* and the cone is *inscribed in the pyramid.*



658. Cone Circumscribed About a Pyramid. If the vertex of a pyramid coincides with the vertex of a cone and the base of the pyramid is inscribed in the base of the cone, the pyramid is *inscribed in the cone* and the cone is *circumscribed about the pyramid.*



26. Two circular cylinders have the same altitude, but the volume of one is four times that of the other. Find the ratio of their radii.

PRELIMINARY THEOREMS AND POSTULATE.

659. THEOREM I. *The faces of a pyramid circumscribed about a cone are tangent to the cone.*

660. THEOREM II. *The edges of a pyramid inscribed in a cone are elements of the cone.*

661. THEOREM III. *The slant height of a regular pyramid circumscribed about a right circular cone equals the slant height of the cone.*

662. POSTULATE I. *The volume of a circumscribed pyramid, the area and perimeter of its base, and its lateral area are greater than the corresponding parts of an inscribed cone.*

663. POSTULATE II. *The volume of an inscribed pyramid, the area and perimeter of its base, and its lateral area are less than the corresponding parts of a circumscribed cone.*

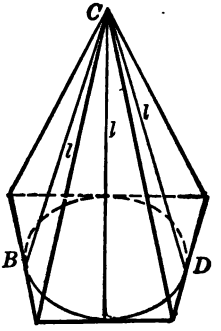
664. POSTULATE III. *If the number of sides of a pyramid inscribed in or circumscribed about a cone be indefinitely increased in such a manner that the faces of the pyramid be all indefinitely decreased, the volume, lateral surface, base, perimeters of the base, and sections of the cone are the limits of the corresponding parts of the pyramid.*

26a. A right circular cone has an altitude of 8′ and diameter of 4′. How many brick 2″ by 4″ by 8″ will it take to lay a partition embracing the axis, no chips less than halves broken off in fitting a brick are used. Ans. 84.

27. In each of two right circular cylinders the altitude is equal to the diameter and the volume of one is $\frac{1}{27}$ that of the other. Find the ratio of the altitudes.

PROPOSITION VII.

665. THEOREM. *The lateral area of a cone of revolution is equal to one-half the product of the perimeter of its base and its slant height.*



Given C — BD a cone of revolution, **its lateral** area denoted by S, the perimeter of its base by p, and its slant height by l.

To Prove $S = \frac{1}{2} p \times l$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Circumscribe about the cone a regular pyramid, with lateral area denoted by S', perimeter of the base by p'. The slant height of the pyramid is l. Why?

2. Determine the lateral area S' in terms of p' and l.

3. Complete the demonstration. See the method of § 631.

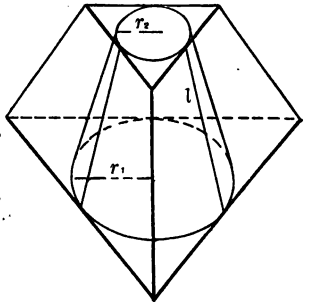
Therefore—

666. COR. I. *If r be the radius of the base of a cone of revolution, then the lateral area is given by the formula* $S = \frac{1}{2} l \times 2 \pi r = \pi rl$.

667. Cor. II. *The lateral areas of two similar cones are to each other as the squares of their altitudes or as the squares of the radii (or diameters) of their bases.*

Sug. See method of § 633.

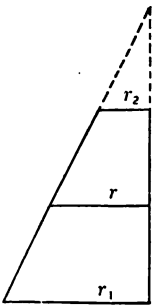
668. Cor. III. *The lateral area of the frustum of a cone of revolution is equal to one-half the product of its slant height and the sum of the perimeters of its bases.*



Sug. If a regular pyramid be circumscribed about the cone from which the frustum is cut, the cutting plane will cut from the pyramid a frustum which will be circumscribed about the frustum of the cone. Denote the radii of the two bases by r_1 and r_2, the lateral area by S, and the slant height by l. Prove that S is equal to $\pi\, l\,(r_1 + r_2)$.

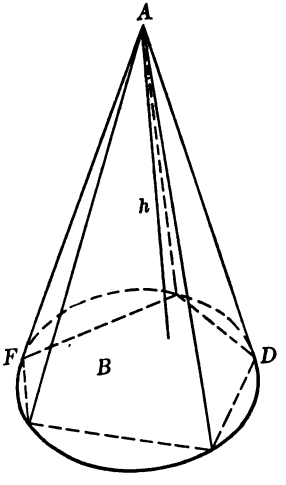
669. Cor. IV. *If r represent the radius of the section of a frustum of a cone of revolution midway between the bases, prove $S = 2\,\pi\, rl$.*

Sug. Show $r = \frac{1}{2}\,(r_1 + r_2)$.



PROPOSITION VIII.

670. THEOREM. *The volume of a cone is equal to one-third the product of its base and its altitude.*



Given the cone $A - FD$ with altitude h, base B, and volume V.

To Prove $V = \frac{1}{3} B \times h$.

SUG. 1. Inscribe in the cone a pyramid, denoting its base by B', and its volume by V'. Its altitude will be h. Why?

2. Complete the proof by an adaptation of the method of Prop. VII.

Therefore—

671. COR. I. *The volume of a circular cone is given by the formula* $V = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 h$.

672. Cor. II. *The volumes of similar cones are to each other as the cubes of the radii of their bases, as the cubes of their altitudes, or as the cubes of their slant heights.*

Sug. Adapt the method of § 667.

673. Cor. III. *The volume of a frustum of a cone of revolution is equal to one-third the product of the altitude and the sum of the upper base, the lower base, and a mean proportional between the two bases, i. e.,* $V = \frac{1}{3} h (B_1 + B_2 + \sqrt{B_1 B_2})$ *in which* B_1 *and* B_2 *denote the two bases.*

Sug. Inscribe in the original cone a pyramid. The frustum of the pyramid made by the cutting plane of the cone will be inscribed in the frustum of the cone. Proceed as in Cor. III, Prop. VII.

674. Cor. IV. *The volume of a frustum of a cone of revolution is given by the formula*

$$V = \frac{1}{3} \pi h (r_1^2 + r_2^2 + \sqrt{r_1 \times r_2}).$$

Review.

675. State the formulas for

1. The area of a circle.

2. The lateral area of a cone of revolution.

3. The lateral area of the frustum of a cone of revolution.

4. The volume of a circular cone.

5. The ratio of the volumes of two similar cones.

6. The ratio of the lateral areas of two similar cones.

28. A granite monument is 30 feet high. The base is 4 feet in diameter. It diminishes gradualy in size to a cross section circle 15 inches in diameter, 6 feet from the top. The remainder of the monument is conical. Find its volume in cubic yards and its weight in tons, the specific gravity being 2.65.

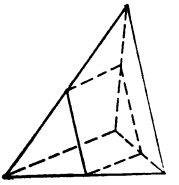
29. How many square yards of canvas in a conical tent $12\frac{1}{2}$ feet high with a base diameter of 12 feet?

30. Find the volume of the solid generated by the revolution upon one of its sides as an axis of an equilateral triangle with an edge of 6 feet.

31. Find the ratios of the volumes generated by the revolution of a right triangle about side a, about side b, and about hypotenuse c respectively.

32. The altitude of the frustum of a cone of revolution is $\frac{1}{3}$ the altitude of the cone. What is the ratio of their volumes?

33. A section of a tetrahedron cutting four edges at their mid points is a parallelogram.



34. A grain bin is 6 feet $\times$ 12 feet $\times$ 20 feet. How many bushels does it hold?

35. The radii of the two bases of a frustum of a cone are 4 feet and 9 feet respectively, and the altitude is 30 feet. Find the volume.

Indicate and work mentally.

36. What is the locus of a rod 12 feet long, one end being stationary on the ceiling of a room 8 feet high and the other end resting on the floor?

37. Find the area of the plane figure enclosed on the floor in the preceding exercise and the volume enclosed by the floor and the locus.

38. A tent has a diameter of 16 feet and a vertical side wall of 5 feet. The covering is conical in shape and the center pole is 12 feet high. How many cubic feet of air does the tent contain?

39. Find the lateral area, total area, altitude, and volume of the cone that can be circumscribed about a regular tetrahedron with an 8 inch edge.

40. A cylinder and a cone of revolution have the same altitude and concentric bases. The diameter of the base of the cone is three times that of the cylinder. How far from the vertex of the cone do the two lateral surfaces intersect? Suppose the diameter of the cylinder to be $\frac{3}{4}$ that of the cone, where do the surfaces intersect?

41. What is the locus of lines making a given angle with a given line at a given point in the line?

42. The altitude of a cone is trisected by planes parallel to the base. Compare the parts into which the cone is divided. Make a similar comparison when the altitude is divided into four equal parts.

43. What kind of a triangle is the section of a right cone through the vertex?

44. What is the volume of a piece of timber 15 feet long, the bases being squares of 12 inches and 14 inches respectively?

45. If four similar cylinders have their altitudes proportional to 3, 4, 5, 6, prove that the volume of the largest one equals the sum of the volumes of the three others.

46. A log 20 feet long has a diameter at the smaller end of 16 inches. What proportion of the log is cut into slabs if the largest possible squared stick of timber is sawed from it? What proportion will be slabs if the largest rectangular stick be sawed, the edges having the ratio of 3 to 4? Of 2 to 3?

47. A cylindrical vessel with a diameter equal to its altitude holds 1414 $\frac{2}{7}$ cubic feet of water. What are its dimensions?

48. What are the dimensions of a cylindrical vessel holding 1414 $\frac{2}{7}$ cubic feet if its altitude is twice its diameter? What are the dimensions if the ratio of the diameter and the altitude is $\frac{2}{5}$?

49. What are the dimensions of a quart cup if the ratio of its diameter and its altitude is $\frac{3}{4}$?

50. What is the diameter of a cylindrical peck measure 8 inches deep?

51. Allowing two inches for the seam, how large a sheet of iron will be required for a joint of 8-inch stove pipe? Of 6-inch stove pipe?

52. Measure the diameter of a quart cup and compute its depth. Verify by measurement.

53. A rectangle is 5x8. Which side as an axis will produce the greater cylinder of revolution? What is the ratio of the two cylinders?

54. Find the lateral area of a regular pentagonal pyramid with basal edge of two feet and slant height of one yard.

55. Find the total area of a regular quadrangular pyramid with basal edge of 12 feet and lateral edge of 10 feet. Find the volume.

56. The base of a regular pyramid is a square with a side of 6 feet and the lateral area is $\frac{5}{8}$ of the total area. Find the altitude and the slant height.

57. What is the ratio of the four parts into which a pyramid is divided by parallel planes dividing the altitude into four equal parts?

58. If a plane is passed through the extremities of three concurrent edges of a cube, prove (1) that the tetrahedron cut off is $\frac{1}{6}$ of the cube; (2) that four such tetrahedrons can be cut off of a cube; (3) that the remainder of the cube is a regular tetrahedron equal to $\frac{1}{3}$ of the cube.

59. How much of a cube is cut off by a plane passing through the mid-points of three concurrent edges? What part is removed when this is done for each set of three concurrent edges?

SUG. Take a as the edge of the cube. Determine the bases and altitudes of the figures and compute the volumes.

60. Use the rule for finding the volume of a pyramid in order to find the volume of an 8-inch cube.

61. How many cubic feet are removed in boring a 6-inch well 180 feet deep?

62. How large an object at a distance of 20 feet will be obscured by an inch square placed $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet from the eye?

The Sphere.

676. A Sphere. A solid bounded by a surface all points of which are equally distant from a fixed point within is a *sphere.*

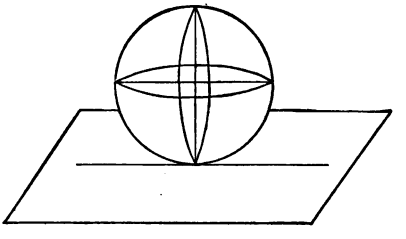
The fixed point is the *center* of the sphere and the bounding surface is the *surface* of the sphere.

677. Radius of a Sphere. Any straight line drawn from the center of a sphere to its surface is a *radius* of the sphere.

678. Diameter of a Sphere. Any straight line drawn through the center of a sphere and terminated by the surface is a *diameter* of the sphere.

679. A Line Tangent to a Sphere. A line which touches a sphere at one and only one point is a *tangent* to the sphere.

680. A Plane Tangent to a Sphere. A plane which touches a sphere at one and only one point is *tangent* to the sphere.



681. Point of Tangency. The point in which a tangent line or a tangent plane touches a sphere is the *point of tangency or point of contact.*

Two spheres are tangent when they have one and only one point in common.

Preliminary Theorems.

682. Theorem I. *All radii of a sphere are equal and all diameters of a sphere are equal.*

683. Theorem II. *Two spheres are equal if their radii are equal.*

In the case of spheres, equality implies congruence.

684. Theorem III. *The radii of two equal spheres are equal.*

685. Theorem IV. *The revolution of a semicircle about its diameter generates a sphere.*

686. Theorem V. *A straight line which intersects a sphere intersects the surface in two points.*

687. Theorem VI. *A plane or the surface of a sphere intersects the surface of a sphere in a closed line.*

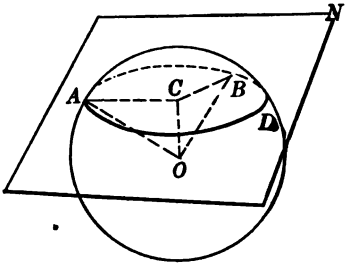
63. How many inches from the vertex of a cone of revolution 12 feet high must a plane be passed parallel to the base in order to bisect the cone? In order to trisect it, at what distances must the two planes be passed?

64. The interior of a rectangular bin with edges in the ratio of 2, 3, 4 has a surface of 676 square feet. How many bushels does it hold?

65. The sides of a right section of a truncated triangular prism are 8 feet, 9 feet, 15 feet and the lateral edges are 5 feet, 9 feet, 12 feet respectively. Find the lateral area and the volume.

PROPOSITION IX.

688. THEOREM. *Every section of a sphere by a plane is a circle.*



Given the plane N intersecting the sphere O in the closed line ABD.

To Prove ABD a circle.

Proof. SUG. 1. Drop a $\perp$ to a plane N from the center O, meeting plane N in C. Let A and B be any two points in the perimeter of the section. Draw AC and BC.

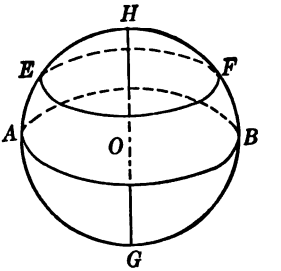
2. Compare AC and BC.

3. $\therefore$ ABD is a circle. Why?

Therefore—

689. A GREAT CIRCLE OF A SPHERE. A circle of a sphere which contains the center of the sphere is a *great circle of the sphere.*

690. A SMALL CIRCLE OF A SPHERE. A circle of a sphere which does not contain the center is a *small circle of the sphere.*



691. Axis of a Circle of a Sphere. The diameter of a sphere perpendicular to a circle of a sphere is the *axis of the circle* of the sphere.

692. Poles of a Circle. The extremities of the axis of a circle are its *poles*.

AB is a great circle, EF is a small circle, GH is the axis of $\odot EF$ and also of $\odot AB$ if the two ⊛ are parallel, G and H are the poles.

693. Cor. I. *The center of the sphere is the center of every great circle of the sphere.*

694. Cor. II. *Two circles of a sphere equally distant from the center are equal.*

695. Cor. III. *Of two circles of a sphere unequally distant from the center, that one which is nearer the center is the greater.*

696. Cor. IV. *The axis of a circle intersects it at its center.*

697. Cor. V. *All great circles of a sphere are equal.*

698. Cor. VI. *Two great circles of the same sphere intersect in a common diameter.*

699. Cor. VII. *A great circle of a sphere bisects the sphere and the surface of the sphere.*

700. Cor. VIII. *Any three points on the surface of a sphere determine a circle of the sphere.*

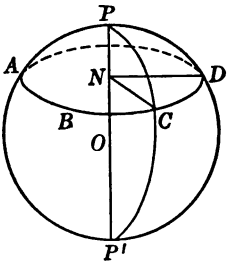
701. Cor. IX. *Through two points on the surface of a sphere, not the extremities of a diameter, one and only one great circle can be drawn.*

66. A plane embracing the axis of a circle is perpendicular to the circle. If the arc of a circle is bisected by a plane embracing the axis, every point in the plane is equidistant from the extremities of the arc.

702. DISTANCE ON A SPHERE. The *distance* between two points on the surface of a sphere is the shorter arc of the great circle joining them.

PROPOSITION X.

703. THEOREM. *All points on a circle of a sphere are equally distant from each of its poles.*



Given $ABCD$, a $\odot$ of a sphere O, P and P' being its poles, C and D any two points on the $\odot$, PC and PD great circle arcs.

To Prove arc PC = arc PD and arc $P'C$ = arc $P'D$.

Proof. SUG. 1. P and C determine a great circle which also passes through P'. The same is true of P and D. Why?

2. Draw CN and DN, radii of $\odot$ ACD.

3. Compare the chords PC and PD.

4. Compare the arcs PC and PD.

5. Compare arcs PCP' and PDP'; arcs $P'C$ and $P'D$.

Therefore—

704. POLAR DISTANCE. The distance on the surface of a sphere from a circle to its nearer pole is the *polar distance of the circle.*

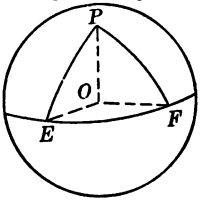
The polar distance of a circle is less than a great semicircle.

705. COR. I. *The polar distance of a great circle is a quadrant, i. e., an arc of ninety degrees.*

SUG. What angle at the center of the sphere subtends the polar distance of a great circle?

PROPOSITION XI.

706. THEOREM. *A point which is at the distance of a quadrant from each of two points on the surface of a sphere, not the extremities of a diameter, is a pole of the great circle embracing those points.*



Given two points E and F on sphere O, E and F not the extremities of a diameter, and a third point P such that arc PE = arc PF = a quadrant.

To Prove P is a pole of the great circle EF.

Proof. SUG. 1. E and F determine a great circle. Why?

2. Join E and F to O, the center of $\odot EF$, and P to O.

3. What are the angles POE and POF? Why?

4. What is PO with regard to $\odot EF$? What is P? Why?

Therefore—

Note.—By the truth of Prop. XI arcs of great circles can be drawn on the surface of a sphere in a manner similar to that by which arcs can be drawn on a plane with given radii and centers. To do this a point is located at a quardant's distance from the two points through which the great circle is to pass. If the dividers be now opened so as to span the chord subtending a great circle quadrant and one point placed on the fixed point as a pole, the free end can be made to describe the desired great circle. The means for determining the quadrant and its chord will be found in § 707.

67. Find the volume of a monolith 24 feet high, 9 feet square at one end and 4 feet square at the other.

Solve without pencil.

68. Find the slant height, the apothem, the lateral surface, the total surface, and the volume of a regular tetrahedron with an edge of 5.

69. Compare the polar distances of equal circles on the same sphere.

70. A right circular cylinder has a radius R and altitude H.

(1) Find the volume of a regular hexagonal prism inscribed in the cylinder.

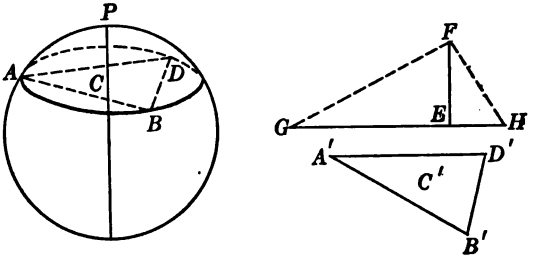
(2) Find the volume of a regular hexagonal pyramid whose base is inscribed in the base of the cylinder and whose altitude is H.

(3) Find the volume of the cone circumscribed about the pyramid.

(4) If $R = 10$ feet and $H = 4$ feet find the volume of each of the preceding figures.

PROPOSITION XII.

707. PROBLEM. *Given a material sphere, to find its radius or its diameter.*



SUG. 1. Take any point P on the surface of the sphere as a pole and with the dividers describe a circle C.

2. Take any three points A, B, D on this circle and by means of the dividers construct a $\triangle A'B'D'$ congruent to $\triangle ABD$.

3. Determine the center C' of the circle circumscribed about $\triangle A'B'D'$.

4. Draw EF equal to the radius $C'A'$ and through E draw an unlimited straight line $\perp EF$.

5. From F lay off FH = chord PB and at F erect $FG \perp FH$, G being its intersection with EH.

6. Prove that GH is the diameter of the sphere and find the radius.

71. Construct on a plane a circle equal to a great circle of a given sphere.

72. Determine the diameter of a base ball, a croquet ball, or some other spherical object.

73. Construct on a plane a circle equal to a given small circle on a sphere.

708. Cor. *Given a diameter of a sphere, a quadrant of the sphere can be determined.*

Proof. Left to the pupil.

74. What is the locus of a point at a given distance from a given point and also equidistant from two other given points. Is the problem always possible? Is the locus ever a single point?

75. Determine a point X at a given distance from a fixed point, equidistant from two parallel planes, and equidistant from two given points.

76. In a given plane, find a point which is equidistant from the vertices of a triangle which is in another plane. Use locus.

77. What is the locus of a point which is at a given distance, a, from a given plane, and at a given distance greater than a from a given point in the given plane?

78. Find a point X equidistant from two parallel lines, from two intersecting lines, and a given distance from a given point. What is the greatest number of solutions? What is the least number? Under what conditions is the problem impossible?

79. All lines tangent to a sphere from the same point are equal and touch the sphere in a circle of the sphere.

Sug. Connect the center of the sphere with the given point and with two or more points of contact.

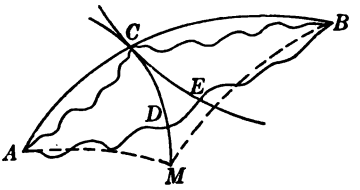
80. To draw a great circle that shall bisect an arc of a circle.

81. Describe a great circle through two points on the surface of a sphere.

82. Construct a small circle on the surface of a sphere through three given points.

PROPOSITION XIII.

709. THEOREM. *The shorter of the two great circle arcs joining two points on the surface of a sphere is less than any other line on the sphere which joins the two points.*



Given two points A and B on the surface of the sphere, AB the great circle arc joining them, and ADB any other line on the surface from A to B.

To Prove that arc AB is shorter than line ADB.

Proof. SUG. 1. Take C any point on the arc AB and with A and B as poles describe circles with AC and BC as their respective polar distances. Let M be any point on the first of these circles except point C. Join M to A and to B by great arcs. Imagine radii drawn to the center of the sphere from A, M, and B. Then $AM+MB>BA$. Why? See § 509, § 297, $AC = AM$ and hence $BM > BC$. Consequently M does not lie on the second circle and the two circles have but the one point C in common.

2. Let D and E be the points in which the two circles meet the line ADB. As A is the pole of the $\odot CD$, a line may be drawn from A to C congruent to the line AD and one can be drawn for a like reason from B to C congruent to line BE. That is, a line can be constructed from A to B through C which is shorter than the given line ADB by the line DE. Thus, no matter what line be drawn from A to B other than arc AB, C, and hence every point of arc AB, lies in a line still shorter. Therefore every point of arc AB lies in the shortest line from A to B.

3. If now D be any point not on arc AB it cannot lie on the shortest line from A to B. This is seen if the circle about A as pole and with radius AD be drawn determining a point C by its intersection with arc AB. For then, as above, there can be drawn another line from A to B through C which is shorter than any line which can be drawn through D.

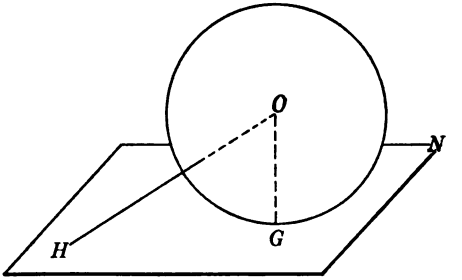
4. Hence AB must be the shortest line.

Therefore—

710. Inasmuch as the great circle arc is the shortest line between two points on the surface of a sphere, distances on a sphere are measured along great circle arcs. It will be natural then to expect on the surface of a a sphere a surface or spherical geometry corresponding to plane geometry with figures formed from great circle arcs instead of straight lines. This will appear in the sequel.

PROPOSITION XIV.

711. THEOREM. *A plane perpendicular to a radius at its outer extremity is tangent to the sphere.*



Given sphere O, radius OG and plane $N \perp OG$ at G.

To Prove plane N a tangent plane to the sphere.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let H be any point in plane N other than G and draw OH.

2. Where does H lie with respect to the sphere? Why?

3. Complete the demonstration.

Therefore—

712. COR. I. *A plane tangent to a sphere is perpendicular to the radius at the point of contact.*

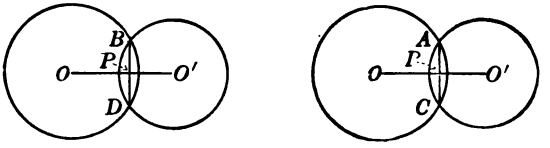
713. COR. II. *Any straight line through the point of tangency and in the tangent plane is tangent to the sphere.*

714. COR. III. *Any straight line perpendicular to a radius at its extremity is tangent to the sphere.*

Note.—Of all figures in plane geometry the circle most closely resembles the sphere in its characteristics. It is interesting to note the resemblance of certain propositions and their proofs in plane and in solid geometry. The change of two words in Prop. XIV makes the theorem one of plane geometry. Compare the demonstrations of the two theorems. See note p. 437.

PROPOSITION XV.

715. THEOREM. *The intersection of the surfaces of two spheres is a circle.*



Given two spheres O and O' whose surfaces intersect in a closed line, two points of which are A and B.

To Prove line AB is a circle.

Proof. SUG. 1. The plane AOO' intersects the two spheres in two great circles intersecting each other in the points A and C. Likewise the plane BOO' intersects the two spheres in two great circles which intersect each other in the points B and D. Why?

2. Chords AC and BD intersect OO' in the same point P. Why?

3. Compare $\triangle AOP$ with $\triangle BOP$. Auth. AP with BP.

4. AP and BP lie in the plane $\perp OO'$ at P. Why? Hence the closed line AB is a circle.

Therefore—

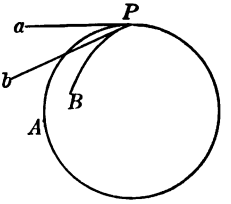
Such comparisons of plane and solid geometry theorems make an excellent reveiw of much of the subject and will also in many instances serve to make more clear the meaning and the demonstrations of solid geometry theorems.

716. Cor. I. *The line joining the centers of two intersecting spheres is perpendicular to the plane of their intersection and passes through the center of the circle of intersection.*

717. Cor. II. *The plane of the intersection of two equal spheres is the perpendicular bisector of their line of centers.*

718. Angle of Two Arcs. The angle between the tangents of two arcs at their point of intersection is the *angle of the arcs.*

719. Spherical Angle. The angle formed by the arcs of two great circles is a *spherical angle.*



PA and PB are two great circles and a and b are tangent to the great circles respectively at P. spherical angle APB equals the plane angle aPb.

720. Cor. *A spherical angle equals the dihedral angle formed by the planes of the great circles forming the spherical angle.*

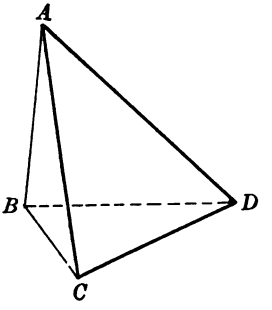
Sug. The tangents to the great circles are in the respective planes of the circles and perpendicular to the edge of the dihedral at the same point. Why?

721. A Circumscribed Sphere. When all the vertices of a polyhedron lie in the surface of a sphere, the sphere is *circumscribed* about the polyhedron and the polyhedron is *inscribed* in the sphere.

722. An Inscribed Sphere. When the faces of a polyhedron are all tangent to a sphere, the sphere is *inscribed* in the polyhedron and the polyhedron is *circumscribed* about the sphere.

PROPOSITION XVI.

723. THEOREM. *One and only one sphere can be circumscribed about any tetrahedron.*



Given a tetrahedron $ABCD$.

To Prove that one and only one sphere can be circumscribed about $ABCD$, i. e. to prove that there is one and only one point X equidistant from A, B, C, and D.

Proof. SUG. 1. What is the locus of points equidistant from A and B? From B and C? Auth.

2. Show that the two loci just found must intersect. What is then the locus of points equidistant from A, B, and C?

3. What is the locus of points equidistant from C and D?

4. Show that the loci in Sug. 2 and Sug. 3 intersect.

5. Show that this intersection is the required point X.

6. Show that only one such point exists.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XVII.

724. THEOREM. *One and only one sphere can be inscribed in a tetrahedron.*

Given a tetrahedron $ABCD$. § 723.

To Prove that one and only one sphere can be inscribed in $ABCD$.

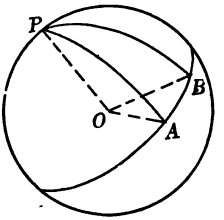
Proof. SUG. 1. What is the locus of points equidistant from ABC and ABD? ABC and ACD? Auth.

2. Complete the demonstration on the outline of the demonstration § 723.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XVIII.

725. THEOREM. *A spherical angle is measured by the arc of a great circle described from the vertex of the angle as a pole and intercepted between the sides of the angle.*



Given two great circle arcs PA and PB forming a spherical angle at P, AB being an arc of that great circle of which the pole is P intercepted by AP and BP.

To Prove that spherical angle APB is measured by arc AB.

Proof. SUG. 1. OA and OB are radii of the great circle ABO and lie respectively in the planes of the great circles PA and PB. What relation do they bear to PO? Auth.

2. What relation does $\angle AOB$ bear to the dihedral angle $A - PO - B$? Auth.

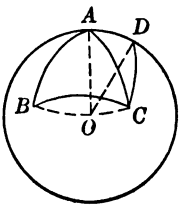
3. What relation does arc AB bear to $\angle AOB$? To $\angle APB$? Auth.

Therefore—

726. SPHERICAL POLYGON. A portion of the surface of a sphere bounded by arcs of great circles is a *spherical polygon.* The bounding arcs are the sides of the polygon, the intersections of the sides are the *vertices,* of the polygon, and the spherical angles are the *angles* of the polygon.

The planes of the sides of a spherical polygon form a polyhedral angle with vertex at the center of the sphere. The sides of a spherical polygon are great circle arcs and may be expressed in degrees of arc. They measure the corresponding face angles of the polyhedral. The spherical angles of a spherical polygon measure the dihedrals of the ploy hedral.

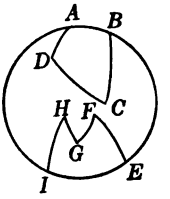
A *diagonal* of a spherical polygon is a great circle arc joining any two non-adjacent vertices.



$ABCD$ is a spherical polygon, AB is a side, A is a vertex, $O - ABCD$ is the subtended polyhedral angle, AB measures $\angle AOB$, $\angle A$ measures dihedral OA and AC is a diagonal.

727. SPHERICAL POLYGONS classified. Spherical polygons, like plane polygons, are classified as *triangular*, *quadrangular*, etc., according to the number of angles or sides. They may be *right-angled*, *isosceles*, *equilateral*, etc., as are plane triangles. They may be *congruent* in that they may be applied to each other as are congruent plane triangles for two great circle arcs coincide if two points are common to them, just as is true of straight lines. They may be *equal* in area without being congruent. In congruent spherical polygons the homologous parts are respectively equal. Equal spherical angles may be made to coincide.

728. CONVEX SPHERICAL POLYGON. A spherical polygon is *convex* when none of its sides if extended will cut the polygon.



ABCD is convex.

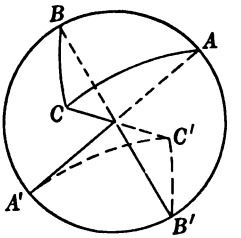
729. CONCAVE SPHERICAL POLYGONS. A spherical polygon which is not convex is *concave* or *reentrant*. *EFGH* is concave.

730. SYMMETRICAL SPHERICAL TRIANGLES. Two spherical triangles such that the subtended trihedral angles are equal but arranged in reverse order are *symmetrical spherical triangles*. By 508 it is seen that the homologous parts of two symmetrical polyhedral angles are equal but arranged in reverse order.

Symmetrical triangles exist in plane geometry but in that case either of them could be removed from the plane and turned over, thus reversing the order of its parts, and making the two triangles congruent. The distinction of congruent and symmetric was then un-

necessary. On account of the curvature of the surface of a sphere, no portion of it can be turned over and applied to any other portion. A distinction between congruent and symmetrical is in this case necessary.

731. OPPOSITE OR VERTICAL SPHERICAL POLYGONS. The polygons intercepted, or subtended, on the surface of a sphere by two opposite or vertical polyhedrals with their vertex at the center of the sphere are *opposite spherical polygons.*

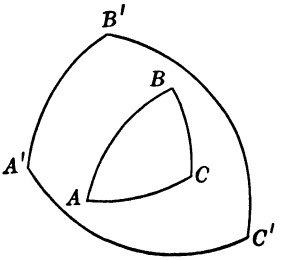


ABC and $A'B'C'$ are opposite spherical polygons.

732. COR. I. *Opposite spherical polygons are symmetrical.*

733. COR. II. *Three planes not having a common line of intersection and all embracing the center of a sphere intersect the surface in two symmetrical spherical triangles.*

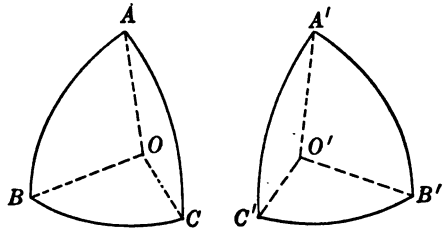
734. POLAR OF A TRIANGLE. In the spherical triangle ABC, let A' be that one of the two poles of arc BC which lies on the same side of BC as does the vertex A. In the same manner define B' and C' respective poles of arcs AC and AB. The triangle $A'B'C'$ is the *polar triangle* of ABC.



It is to be noted that the sides of ABC if extended will form eight spherical triangles including ABC. Of these but one answers the conditions of the definition of the polar. Ex. 83.

PROPOSITION XIX.

735. THEOREM. *Two isosceles symmetrical spherical triangles are congruent.*



Given two symmetrical spherical triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$ with $AB = BC$ and $A'B' = B'C'$.

To Prove $ABC \cong A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Compare the face angles of the subtended trihedrals which are measured by AB and BC; by $A'B'$ and $B'C'$. What kind of trihedrals are these?

2. Compare the two trihedrals.

3. Put the two trihedrals in coincidence and compare the spherical triangles.

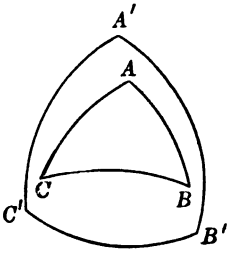
Therefore—

82. Demonstrate proposition § 735 by superposition.

83. Draw on a spherical blackboard or other sphere eight such spherical triangles and distinguish a triangle and its polar. § 734.

PROPOSITION XX.

736. THEOREM. *If one spherical triangle is the polar of a second, then the second triangle is the polar of the first.*



Given $\triangle A'B'C'$ the polar of $\triangle ABC$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC$ the polar of $\triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. What must be proved concerning A, B, C in order to show that $\triangle ABC$ is the polar of $\triangle A'B'C'$?

2. By § 706 prove that A is a pole of $B'C'$, that B is a pole of $C'A'$, and that C is a pole of $A'B'$.

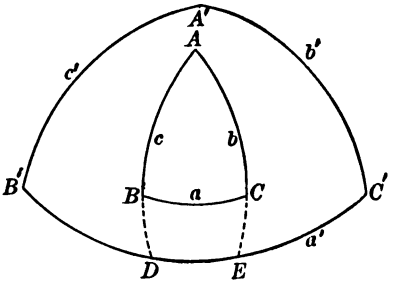
3. Suppose that A is not on the same side of $B'C'$ as is A' and draw the great circle AA'. Suppose it to meet BC in X and $B'C'$ in X'. Then both $A'AX$ and AX' are quadrants. Why? But as $AX' < A'AX$, the supposition is false and A and A' are on the same side of $B'C'$.

Therefore—

737. POLAR TRIANGLES. Two spherical triangles such that each is the polar of the other are *polar triangles.*

PROPOSITION XXI.

738. THEOREM. *In two polar triangles each angle of one is measured by the supplement of the side opposite it in the other.*



Given two polar triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$, with corresponding sides a, b, c and a', b', c' opposite the respective angles A, B, C, A', B', C'.

To Prove $\angle A = 180° - a'$, etc.

Proof. SUG. 1. By what is a spherical angle measured?

2. Extend the sides of $\angle A$ to meet a' in D and E. Which arc measures $\angle A$?

3. $a' = B'E + EC' = B'E + C'D - DE$.

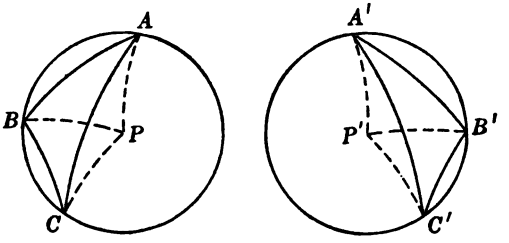
4. How many degrees in arc $B'E$? In arc $C'D$? Why?

5. Express arc DE in terms of a'.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXII.

739. THEOREM. *Two symmetrical spherical triangles are equal.*



Given two symmetrical spherical triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$ on the same, or on equal spheres.

To Prove $\triangle ABC = \triangle A'B'C'$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let P and P' be the respective poles of the small circles ABC and $A'B'C'$, lying on the same hemisphere as the respective $\triangle$. Draw the great circle arcs PA, PB, PC, $P'A'$, $P'B'$, $P'C'$.

2. Compare the chords AB, $A'B'$, etc. Compare the circles ABC and $A'B'C'$. Auth.

3. Compare the arcs PA, PB, PC, $P'A'$, $P'B'$, $P'C'$. Auth.

4. Compare $\triangle PAB$ with $\triangle P'A'B'$; $\triangle PBC$ with $\triangle P'B'C'$; $\triangle PCA$ with $\triangle P'C'A'$. Auth.

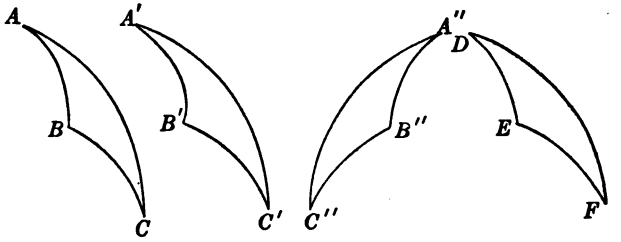
5. If P lies within $\triangle ABC$ then $\triangle ABC = \triangle PAB + \triangle PBC + \triangle PCA$. If P lies without $\triangle ABC$ then $\triangle ABC = \triangle PAB + \triangle PBC - \triangle PCA$. Similarly for $\triangle A'B'C'$.

6. Compare $\triangle ABC$ with $\triangle A'B'C'$.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXIII.

740. THEOREM. *Two triangles on the same sphere, or on equal spheres, having two sides and the included angle of one equal to two sides and the included angle of the other, are either congruent or else symmetrical, and therefore equal.*



Given spherical triangles ABC, $A'B'C'$, and $A''B''C''$ with $AB = A'B' = A''B''$, $BC = B'C' = B''C''$, and $\angle B = \angle B' = \angle B''$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle A'B'C'$, in which the order of arrangement of the respective parts is the same, and $\triangle ABC$ symmetrical to $\triangle A''B''C''$, in which order of arrangement is different.

Proof. CASE I.

SUG. Superpose $\triangle ABC$ on $\triangle A'B'C'$. See § 727.

CASE II.

SUG. 1. Let $\triangle DEF$ be symmetrical to $\triangle A''B''C''$.

2. Compare $\triangle DEF$ with $\triangle ABC$. Case I.

3. Compare $\triangle DEF$ with $\triangle A''B''C''$. § 730.

4. Compare $\triangle A''B''C''$ with $\triangle ABC$.

Therefore—

A frustum of a triangular pyramid has for its lower base a triangle with sides 9 feet, 12 feet, and 15 feet respectively. Its upper base is a triangle with sides 3 feet, 4 feet and 5 feet respectively. Its altitude is 8 feet. Find its volume.

741. EQUAL POLYHEDRALS. Two polyhedrals which when placed with their vertices at the center of the same sphere intersect on the surface equal spherical polygons are *equal polyhedrals*, or *equal solid angles.*

742. COR. *Two trihedrals having a dihedral and the including face angles of one equal respectively to a dihedral and the included face angles of the other are either congruent or else symmetrical and equal.*

SUG. Use Prop. § 740, and § 720.

83. What is the locus of a point in space such that the sum of the squares of its distances from two fixed points equals the square of the distance between the two fixed points?

84. Construct a plane tangent to a sphere at a given point.

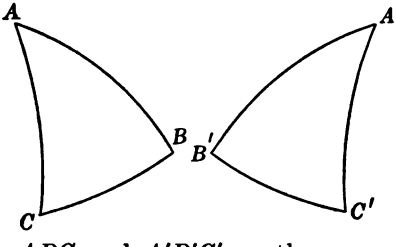
85. What is the locus of points at given distance from two given points?

Discuss all possibilities.

86. Find a point X which is at given distances from two given points and equally distant from two other given points. Discuss all possibilities, showing that there are two, one, or no solutions.

PROPOSITION XXIV.

743. THEOREM. *Two triangles on the same, or on equal, spheres having two angles and the included side of one equal to two angles and the included side respectively of the other are either congruent or else symmetrical and therefore equal.*



Given $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ on the same or on equal spheres, with $\angle A = \angle A'$, $\angle B = \angle B'$, and arc AB = arc $A'B'$.

To Prove $\measuredangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ either congruent or else symmetrical and equal.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let $\measuredangle EFG$ and $E'F'G'$ be the respective polars of ABC and $A'B'C'$ with sides e, f, g, e', f', g', opposite $\measuredangle E, F, G, E', F', G'$ respectively. The pupil may construct the polar triangles.

2. Then $e = e', f = f', \angle G = \angle G'$.

3. Then by § 738 $\measuredangle EFG$ and $E'F'G'$ are either congruent or symmetrical. Homologous parts of $\measuredangle EFG$ and $E'F'G'$ are then equal.

4. Since $\angle E = \angle E'$, $\angle F = \angle F'$, and $g = g'$, it follows that $CB = C'B'$, $AC = A'C'$ and $\angle C = \angle C'$.

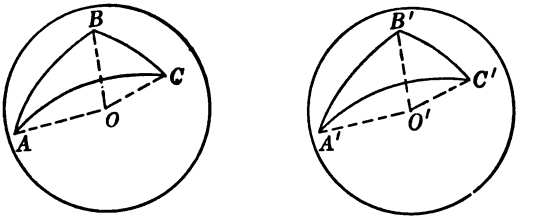
5. Compare $\measuredangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$. Auth.

Therefore—

744. Cor. *Two trihedrals having two dihedrals and included face angle of one equal to two dihedrals and the included face angle of the other respectively are either congruent or symmetrical.*

PROPOSITION XXV.

745. Theorem. *Two triangles on the same sphere, or on equal spheres, having the three sides of one equal respectively to the three sides of the other, are either congruent or else symmetrical and therefore equal.*



Given two spherical triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$ on the same or equal spheres with $AB = A'B'$, $BC = B'C'$, $CA = C'A'$.

To Prove $\triangle ABC$ and $A'B'C'$ either congruent or else symmetrical and equal.

Proof. Sug. 1. Connect the vertices with the respective centers O and O'.

2. Compare the face angles of the respective trihedrals O and O'.

3. Compare the trihedrals O and O'.

4. Compare the triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$.

Therefore—

PROPOSITION XXVI.

746. THEOREM. *Two triangles on the same sphere, or on equal spheres, having the three angles of one equal respectively to the three angles of the other are either congruent or else symmetrical and therefore equal.*

Given two triangles ABC and EFG on the same or equal spheres, with $\angle A = \angle E$, $\angle B = \angle F$, $\angle C = \angle G$ with respective sides a, b, c, e, f, g.

The pupil may construct the figure from description in the text.

To Prove $\triangle ABC$ and EFG congruent or else symmetrical.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let $\triangle A'B'C'$ and $E'F'G'$ be the respective polars of $\triangle ABC$ and EFG, with respective sides a', b', c', e', f', g'. Compare a' and e', b' and f', c' and g'. Auth.

2. Compare $\triangle A'B'C'$ and $E'F'G'$. Auth.

3. Compare $\triangle A'$, B', C' with $\measuredangle E'$, F', G' respectively. Auth.

4. Compare sides a, b, c with e, f, g respectively. Auth.

5. Compare $\triangle ABC$ and EFG. Auth.

Therefore—

747. COR. *Two trihedrals having the three dihedrals of one equal to the three dihedrals of the other respectively are either congruent or symmetrical and therefore equal.*

PROPOSITION XXVII.

748. THEOREM. *Each side of a spherical triangle is less than the sum of the other two.*

SUG. Construct the subtended trihedral angle at the center of the sphere and use § 509.

PROPOSITION XXVIII.

749. THEOREM. *The sum of the sides of a convex spherical polygon is less than* 360° *of arc.*

SUG. Construct the subtended polyhedral and use § 510.

750. COR. I. *The sum of the sides of a convex spherical polygon is less than a great circle.*

751. COR. II. *No side or diagonal of a convex spherical polygon is as great as* 180° *of arc.*

87. A straight line tangent to a circle of a sphere lies in the plane which is tangent to the sphere at the point of contact.

88. What is the locus of a line tangent to a sphere at a given point?

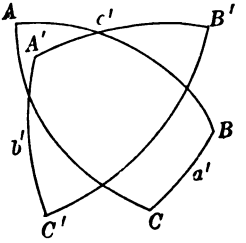
89. The angles opposite the equal sides of an isosceles spherical triangle are equal.

90. If two angles of a spherical triangle are equal, the triangle is isosceles.

SUG. Construct the polar of the given triangle.

PROPOSITION XXIX.

752. THEOREM. *The sum of the angles of a spherical triangle is greater than* 180° *and less than* 540°.



Given $\triangle ABC$.

To Prove $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C > 180°$ and $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C < 540°$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Let $\triangle A'B'C'$ be the polar of $\triangle ABC$. Then $A = 180° - a'$, $B = 180° - b'$, $C = 180° - c'$. Why?

2. Then $A + B + C = 540° - (a' + b' + c')$. Why?

3. $a' + b' + c' < 360°$. Why?

4. Hence $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C$ greater than 180° and $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C \angle 540°$. Why?

Therefore—

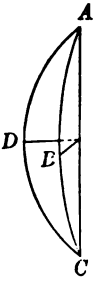
90. The arc of a great circle drawn from the vertex of an isosceles triangle to the middle of the base is perpendicular to the base and bisects the vertex angle.

753. SPHERICAL EXCESS. A spherical triangle, unlike a plane triangle, may have two or three right angles, or two or three obtuse angles. The number of degrees in the angles of a spherical triangle in excess of two right angles is the *spherical excess* of the triangle.

754. COR. *The spherical excess of a spherical triangle is less than four right angles.*

755. LUNE. A portion of the surface of a sphere included between two semicircles is a lune. The angle between the great circles is the angle of the lune.

ABCDA is a lune, *A* and C are its angles and *ABC*, *ADC* are its edges.



PRELIMINARY THEOREMS.

756. THEOREM I. *The angle of a lune is equal to the dihedral angle of the planes of the great circles forming the lune.*

757. THEOREM II. *The angle of a lune is measured by the arc of a great circle described from either vertex as a pole and intercepted between the sides of the lune.*

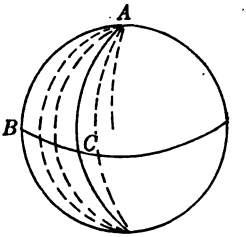
758. THEOREM III. *Two lunes on the same sphere, or on equal spheres, are equal if their angles are equal.*

759. TRI-RECTANGULAR TRIANGLES. The eight spherical triangles into which a spherical surface is divided by three great circles the planes of which are perpendicular to one another are *tri-rectangular* triangles, i. e., each contains three right angles.

760. SPHERICAL DEGREE. If a tri-rectangular triangle be divided into ninety equal parts, one of these parts is a *degree of surface* or *spherical degree.*

PROPOSITION XXX.

761. THEOREM. *The surface of a lune is to the surface of the sphere as the angle of the lune is to four right angles.*



Given a sphere O with surface S and a lune with angle BAC and surface S'.

To Prove $\frac{S'}{S} = \frac{\angle\, BAC}{4 \text{ rt. } \measuredangle}$.

Proof. CASE I. $\angle\, BAC$ commensurable with 4 rt. $\measuredangle$ or 360°.

SUG. 1. From A as a pole draw the great circle BC. Since the angles at A are measured by the arcs which they intercept on this great circle, arc BC and the great circle BC are commensurable. Divide the arc BC and the circle

BC by a common unit of measure and through each point of division and A pass a great circle. Compare the small lunes into which lune BAC and the spherical surface are divided.

2. Using one of these lunes as a unit compare the ratio $\frac{S'}{S}$ with the ratio $\frac{\text{arc } BC}{\odot BC}$.

3. Using the angle of the unit lune as a unit, compare the ratio $\frac{\angle BAC}{360°}$ with the ratio $\frac{\text{arc } BC}{\odot BC}$.

4. Compare the ratio $\frac{S'}{S}$ with the ratio $\frac{\angle BAC}{360°}$

CASE II. $\angle BAC$ not commensurable with 4 rt. $\measuredangle$ or 360°.

SUG. Proceed as in § 428.

762. COR. I. *The number of spherical degrees in a lune is double the number of angular degrees in its angle.*

SUG. Let S denote the number of spherical degrees in the lune and A the number of angular degrees in the angle. Then $\frac{S}{720} = \frac{A}{360}$, whence $S = 2A$.

763. Cor. II. *The surface of a lune equals the product of a tri-rectangular triangle by twice the number of right angles in the angle of the lune.*

Sug. Denote the tri-rectangular triangle by T and the number of right angles in the angle of the lune by A. Then $\frac{A \text{ rt. } \measuredangle}{4 \text{ rt. } \measuredangle} = \frac{S}{8T}$.

$\therefore S = 2A \times T$.

91. If the angle of a lune is a right angle. What is the area of the lune in terms of $\top$? Cut an apple or other sphere to verify your conclusion.

92. If one circle of a sphere passes through the poles of a second circle of a sphere, the planes of the two circles are perpendicular to each other.

93. Find a point X at a distance m from one point, a distance n from a second point, and a distance p from a third point. When is there no solution? When is there one? When two? Is there any other possibility?

94. By a plane parallel to the base divide a pyramid into two equal parts.

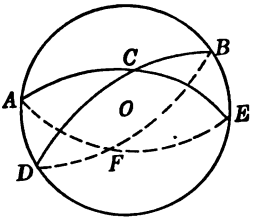
95. What is the area in terms of $\top$ of a lune whose angle is 45°? Verify by cutting an apple or other sphere. What is the area of a lune whose angle is 120°? 75°?

96a. The angles of a spherical triangle are 70°, 96°, and 84°. How many degrees in the respective sides of the polar triangle?

96b. The sides of a triangle are 90°, 65°, and 125°. How many degrees in the respective angles of the polar triangle?

PROPOSITION XXXI.

764. THEOREM. *The sum of the areas of the two vertical spherical triangles formed on a hemisphere by two intersecting great circles equals a lune with an angle equal to the angle of the intersecting arcs.*



Given a hemisphere $O - ABCD$ with two great circles ACE and BCD intersecting at C and forming two vertical spherical $\triangle ACD$ and BCE.

To Prove $\triangle ACD + \triangle ECB =$ lune $CAFD$.

Proof. SUG. Compare $\triangle ECB$ with its opposite, $\triangle AFD$.

Therefore—

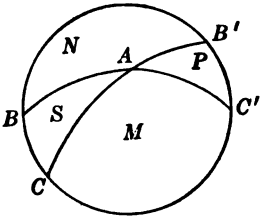
97. If the arc of a great circle is drawn from the vertex of an isosceles spherical triangle perpendicular to the base it bisects the base, the triangle and the vertical angle.

Spherical Degree

One three hundred sixtieth part of the surface of a hemisphere, or one seven hundred twentieth part of the surface of a sphere, is a *spherical degree*.

PROPOSITION XXXII.

765. THEOREM. *The number of spherical degrees in a spherical triangle equals the number of angular degrees in its spherical excess.*



Given $\triangle ABC$, S denoting its area in spherical degrees, A, B, and C denoting the number of angular degrees in the angles of $\triangle ABC$, and E denoting its spherical excess.

To Prove $S = E$.

Proof. SUG. 1. The surface of the hemisphere $A - BCC'B'$, or 360 spherical degrees, equals $\triangle S + \triangle M + \triangle N + \triangle P$, M, N, P, and S, denoting the number of spherical degrees in the respective triangles.

2. $\triangle S + \triangle M =$ lune B, $\triangle S + \triangle N =$ lune C, $\triangle S + \triangle P =$ lune A. Why?

3. Hence $S + M = 2B$, $S + N = 2C$, $S + P = 2A$, $\therefore 2S + 360 = 2(A + B + C)$. Why?

4. Whence $S = A + B + C - 180$, *i. e.*, the number of spherical degrees in $\triangle ABC$ equals the number of angular degrees in the triangle less 180°, *i. e.*, $S = E$.

Therefore—

766. Cor. I. *The ratio of a spherical triangle to the surface of its sphere is* $\frac{E}{720}$ *and its ratio to a tri-rectangular triangle is* $\frac{E}{90}$.

Note—The area of a spherical triangle can be obtained when the area of the sphere and the angles of the triangle are known.

98. The surface of a sphere equals 180 square inches, the angles of a spherical triangle are respectively 76°, 98° and 46°. Find the area of the triangle.

Sug. $E = 40$. $\frac{40}{720}$ of 180 cu. ft. = 10 cu. ft.

767. Spherical Excess of a Spherical Polygon. The number of degrees by which the sum of the angles of a spherical polygon of n sides exceeds $(n-2)\ 180°$ is the *spherical excess* of the polygon.

98a. The angle of a lune is 72° and the area of the sphere is 95 square inches. Find the area of the lune.

Sug. By art. 762, $S = 2A$ sph. deg.
$= 2 \times 72$ sph. degrees.

99. The angle of a lune is 130° and the area of the sphere is 45 square yards. Find the number of square yards in the lune.

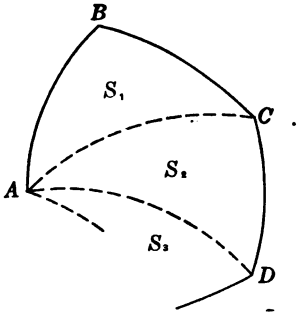
100. The angles of a triangle are 96°, 72° and 120°, and the surface of the sphere is 360 square inches. How many square inches in the surface of the triangle?

100a. In exercise 100, if the area of the sphere is 27 sq. ft., what is the area of the triangle.

100b. If a spherical triangle has an area of 16 sq. ft. with angles respectively 96°, 72° and 120°, what is the area of the sphere?

PROPOSITION XXXIII.

768. THEOREM. *The number of spherical degrees in a spherical polygon equals the number of angular degrees in its spherical excess.*



Given a spherical polygon $ABCD\ldots$, S denoting its area in spherical degrees and E its spherical excess.

To Prove $S = E$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Draw all possible diagonals from some one vertex, thus dividing the polygon into $(n-2)$ △. Denote their areas in spherical degrees by S_1, S_2, S_3, etc., and their respective spherical excesses by E_1, E_2, E_3, etc.

2. $S_1 = E_1$, $S_2 = E_2$, $S_3 = E_3$, etc. Why?

3. $E_1 + E_2 + E_3 + \ldots$
$= (\measuredangle \text{ of } \triangle S_1 - 180°) + (\measuredangle \text{ of } \triangle S_2 - 180°) + \ldots$
$= \measuredangle \text{ of } ABCD - (n-2)\ 180° = E.$

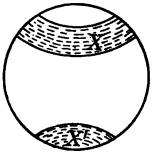
4. $S = S_1 + S_2 + S_3 + \ldots$
$= E_1 + E_2 + E_3 + \ldots = E.$

Therefore—

769. A ZONE. A portion of the surface of a sphere included between two parallel planes is a *zone*. The circles of the sphere formed by the bounding planes are the *bases* of the zone and the distance between them is the *altitude* of the zone.

770. SPHERICAL SEGMENT. A portion of a sphere included between two parallel planes is a *spherical segment*. The sections of the sphere formed by the two planes are the *bases* of the segment and the distance between the planes is the *altitude* of the segment.

In the figure X is a spherical segment. The spherical surface of a segment is a zone. If a portion of a sphere be cut off by a plane, this portion is a segment and its spherical surface is a zone, for they are included between the cutting plane and a tangent plane parallel to the cutting plane. In this case the segment and the zone have but one base each. Find illustrations of both kinds from geography.



771. If a semicircle be revolved about its diameter as an axis a spherical surface is generated. Any arc of the semicircle generates a zone.

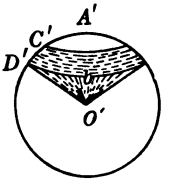
101. How many spherical degrees are there in a spherical triangle with angles of 200°, 140°, and 100°?

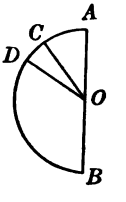
102. What part of the surface of a sphere is a spherical triangle with angles of 120°, 140°, and 160°?

103. A boiler is $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet in diameter and 18 feet long. It is penetrated by 48 3-inch cylindrical tubes. How many gallons does it hold?

772. SPHERICAL SECTOR. A portion of a sphere generated by the revolution of a circular sector about a diameter is a *spherical sector*.

It is important to form mental pictures of the different varieties of spherical sectors and describe them. For example, if the semi-circle ADB is revolved about the diameter AB, the circular sector AOC generates a spherical sector the surface of which consists of a zone of one base generated by the arc AC and a convex conical surface generated by the radius OC. The sector COD generates a spherical sector bounded by a zone of two bases, a convex conical surface generated by OD, and a concave conical surface generated by OC.





Generate many spherical sectors and describe them. Make many drawings to illustrate spherical sectors.

104. Is a hemisphere a spherical sector? Why? A spherical segment? Why?

105. Describe the sectors that have for their spherical surface the torrid zone, the N. frigid zone, and the S. temperate zone.

105a. Cut from an apple a portion to represent a spherical sector bounded by a zone of two bases and two concave conical surfaces.

106. Construct a semi-circle and in it a circular sector which, if revolved, will generate a spherical sector having two concave conical surfaces. Describe the zone.

107. Construct a circular sector which generates a spherical sector the surface of which consists of a concave conical surface, a plane surface, and a zone.

108. A pyramid with an altitude of $\frac{3}{16}$ feet is cut into two parts of equal volume by a plane parallel to the base. Find the distance of the cutting plane from the vertex.

109. A plane parallel to the base of a cone bisects the altitude. Compare the volumes of the two parts.

110. A circular water tank with a diameter of $10\frac{1}{2}$ feet is $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet deep. How many barrels will it hold? (Indicate operation and abbreviate by cancellation.)

111. A plane embracing the axis of a circle is perpendicular to the circle. If the arc of a circle is bisected by a plane embracing the axis, every point in the plane is equidistant from the extremities of the arc.

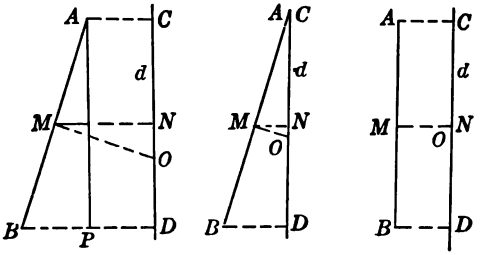
112. How many spherical degrees in a lune whose angle is 36°?

113. If the surface of a sphere contains 124 square feet, what is the area of a spherical triangle whose polar has sides of 83°, 97° and 40°?

114. A spherical triangle contains $\frac{1}{6}$ the surface of a sphere. Two of its angles are 120° and 72°. Find the other angle.

PROPOSITION XXXIV.

773. THEOREM. *The area of the surface generated by the revolution of a straight line segment about an axis in its plane but not crossing the axis, is equal to the product of the projection of the segment upon the axis and the circumference of a circle the radius of which is a perpendicular erected at the mid-point of the segment and terminated by the axis.*



Given axis d with a line segment AB in the same plane as d, but not crossing it, CD the projection of AB on the axis, M the mid-point of AB, MO a perpendicular to AB at M terminated by the axis at O and S the area of the surface generated by the revolution of AB about the axis.

To Prove $S = 2\pi \times MO \times CD$.

Proof. CASE I. AB oblique to CD not meeting it.

SUG. 1. Draw $MN \perp CD$, join A and C, B and D, draw $AP \parallel CD$. AC and BD are $\perp CD$. Why?

2. $S = 2\pi \times MN \times AB$. Why?

3. $\triangle ABP \sim \triangle OMN$. Why?

$\therefore AB \times MN = CD \times MO$. Why?

4. $\therefore S = 2\pi \times MO \times CD$.

CASE II. When AB meets CD.

SUG. Follow the plan of Case I.

CASE III. When $AB \parallel CD$.

Proof. Left to the pupil.

Therefore—

774. POSTULATE. *If half of a regular polygon be inscribed in a semi-circle and the number of sides be indefinitely increased, and if the semi-circle be revolved about its diameter the surface generated by the semi-polygon is a variable which approaches the sphere generated by the semi-circle as its limit and the apothem of the polygon approaches the radius of the sphere as its limit.* § 408.

115. The radius of the base of a right circular cone is 5 inches its volume 31 cubic inches and the number of square inches in the area of its convex surface is equal to the number of cubic inches in the volume of the cone. What is its altitude and its slant height?

116. Determine the locus of the center of a sphere with given radius, such that

(*a*) Its surface passes through a given point.

(*b*) It is tangent to a given plane.

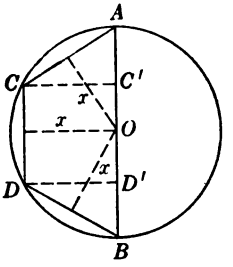
(*c*) It is tangent to a given sect.

(*d*) It is tangent to a given sphere.

PROPOSITION XXXV.

775. THEOREM. *The area of a sphere is equal to the product of its diameter and a great circle.*

Given a sphere O generated by the revolution of the semi-circle $ACDB$, its surface denoted by S, its radius by r.



To Prove $S = 2\,\pi\,r \times 2\,r$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Divide arc $ACDB$ into equal parts and draw the chords forming the regular semi-polygon $ACDB$. Draw the projections of the chords upon the diameter AB represented by AC', $C'D'$... Draw the apothem x of the polygon to each chord.

2. The surface generated by AC equals $2\,\pi \times AC' \times x$. Why? What is the surface generated by CD? By DB?

3. If S' be the surface generated by the semi-polygon, then $S' = 2\,\pi \times AB \times x$. Why?

4. If the number of sides be indefinitely increased, then $S' \doteq S$, $x \doteq r$, $2\,\pi\,AB \doteq 2\,\pi\,AB \times r$. $\therefore\ S = 2\,\pi\,r \times 2\,r$. Why?

Therefore—

776. Cor. I. *The surface of a sphere equals* $4\pi r^2$ *or* πd^2.

777. Cor. II. *The area of the surface of a sphere equals that of four great circles.*

778. Cor. III. *The area of the surface of a sphere equals that of a circle with a radius equal to the diameter of the sphere.*

779. Cor. IV. *The surfaces of two spheres have the same ratio as the squares of their radii or the squares of their diameters.*

780. Cor. V. *The area of a spherical degree is* $\frac{4\pi r^2}{720}$.

781. Cor. VI. *The area of a spherical triangle is* $\frac{4\pi r^2 \times E}{720}$, *in which E is the spherical excess of the triangle.*

782. Cor. VII. *The area of a spherical polygon is* $\frac{4\pi r^2 \times E}{720}$, *in which E is the spherical excess of the polygon.*

783. Cor. VIII. *The area of a zone is* $2\pi r \times h$, *in which h is the altitude of the zone.*

Sug. Demonstrate according to the method of § 775, using an arc less than a semi-circle.

784. Cor. IX. *Zones on the same sphere or on equal spheres are proportional to their altitudes.*

785. POSTULATE. *If a polyhedron be circumscribed about a sphere and the number of its sides be indefinitely increased in such a manner that the areas of each of the faces of the polyhedron are at the same time indefinitely decreased, the surface of the polyhedron is a variable which approaches the surface of the sphere as its limit and the volume of the polyhedron is a variable which approaches the volume of the sphere as its limit.*

786. SPHERICAL PYRAMID. A solid bounded by a spherical polygon and the polyhedral angle which it subtends at the center of the sphere is a *spherical pyramid.* Its *vertex* is the center of the sphere and its *base* is the spherical polygon.

117. What part of a spherical surface is a spherical triangle each angle of which is 90°? How many spherical degrees in such a triangle?

118. The radius of a sphere is 10 feet and the angles of a spherical triangle are 95°, 117°, and 92°. What is the area of the triangle?

119. What is the area of the earth's surface, assuming the earth to be a sphere with a diameter of 7,912 miles?

120. A sphere can be inscribed in a cube.

121 How many square feet in a spherical triangle whose angles are respectively 80°, 75° and 90°, upon a sphere the diameter of which is 14 feet.

122. What is the locus of the vertex of a pyramid having a fixed volume and a fixed base?

PROPOSITION XXXVI.

787. THEOREM. *The volume of a sphere is equal to the area of its surface multiplied by one-third its radius.*

Given a sphere, denoting its volume by V, its surface by S, and its radius by r.

To Prove $V = \frac{1}{3} r \times S$.

Proof. SUG. 1. Circumscribe a polyhedron about the sphere and join each vertex to the center. Each face forms the base of a pyramid, the edges of which are the lines from its vertices to the center. What is the altitude of each pyramid?

2. What is the volume of each pyramid? What is the volume of the polyhedron?

3. Apply the limiting process of §785.

Therefore—

788. COR. I. *The volume of a sphere is* $\frac{4}{3} \pi r^3$ (776), *r being the radius, or* $\frac{1}{6} \pi D^3$.

789. COR. II. *The volumes of two spheres have the same ratio as the cubes of their radii and the cubes of their diameters.*

790. COR. III. *The volume of a spherical sector is equal to the product of the area of its zone and one-third the radius of the sphere, i. e.,* $\frac{2}{3} \pi r^2 h$.

SUG. Base a demonstration upon the method of § 787.

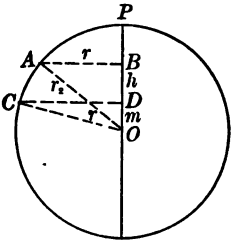
791. Cor. IV. *The volume of a spherical pyramid equals the product of the area of its base and one-third the radius of the sphere, i. e.,* $\frac{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3 E}{720}$.

Sug. 1. Make a demonstration based on the method of § 787.

2. $V = \frac{1}{3} r \times B = \frac{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3 \times E}{720}$.

PROPOSITION XXXVII.

792. Problem. *To find the volume of a spherical segment.*



Given a spherical segment generated by the revolution of arc AC about the diameter OP, r_1 and r_2 denoting the radii of its respective bases, h its altitude, r the radius of the sphere, and V the volume of the segment.

Case I. **To Find** V in terms of r_1, r_2, and h, when both bases are on the same side of the center.

Sug. 1. Let m represent OD, the distance from the center to the nearest base, and let V_1, V_2, V_3 denote the volumes generated by the triangles OAB, OCD, and the sector COA respectively.

2. $V = V_2 + V_1 - V_3$. Why?

$= \frac{2}{3}\pi r^2 h + \frac{1}{3}\pi r_1^2(m+h) - \frac{1}{3}\pi r_2^2 m$

$= \frac{1}{3}\pi\left[2r^2 h + (r^2 - (m+h)^2(m+h) - (r^2 - m^2)m\right]$,

which by expanding and removing parentheses becomes

$= \frac{1}{3}\pi\left[3r^2 - 3m^2 - 3hm - h^2\right] h$

$= \pi h\left[r^2 - m^2 - hm - \frac{1}{3}h^2\right]$

$= \frac{1}{2}\pi h\left[r^2 - m^2 - 2hm - \frac{2}{3}h^2 + r^2 - m^2\right]$.

3. In this last expression put the first $r^2 - m^2$ equal to r_2^2 (Auth.) and the second one equal to $r_1^2 + 2hm + h^2$, for

$r^2 - m^2 = r_1^2 + (h+m)^2 - m^2$.

4. $\therefore V = \frac{1}{2}h\left[\pi r_2^2 + \pi r_1^2\right] + \frac{1}{6}\pi h^3$.

Therefore—

The volume of a spherical segment equals one-half the product of its altitude and the sum of the areas of its bases increased by the volume of a sphere with a diameter equal to the altitude of the segment.

CASE II. When the center is between the bases.

SUG. Adapt the work of Case I to this case.

CASE III. When the segment has but one base.

SUG. Adapt the work of Case I to this Case by letting r_1 be zero. What term will vanish from the final formula? Translate the formula into words.

Use $3\frac{1}{7}$ for π in the following exercise:

123. Given a sphere 20 feet in diameter. Find the volume of a segment, the radii of the bases being 6 and 8 feet respectively.

124. Given a sphere 20 feet in diameter. Find the volume of a segment with one base having a radius of 8 feet.

125. A 4 inch hole is bored through the center of a sphere 10 inches in diameter. How much of the volume of the sphere is cut away?

126. Find the volume of a spherical sector having a zone with an altitude of 10 inches on a sphere with a radius of 20 inches.

127. Find the volume and area of a sphere 40 inches in diameter.

128. A sphere is cut by parallel planes so that the diameter is divided into ten equal parts. Compare the areas of the zones and also the volumes of the spherical sectors the spherical surfaces of which are the respective zones.

129. If the average specific gravity of the earth is 5.6, what is its weight in tons?

130. Find the angles of an equiangular spherical triangle, the surface being $\frac{1}{12}$ that of a sphere.

131. The radius of a sphere is 3 inches and the area of a spherical triangle ABC on the sphere is 12 square inches. The angles A and B are 140° and 115° respectively. Find $\angle C$.

132. The dimensions of a rectangular parallelopiped are 3 feet, 4 feet, and 12 feet. Find the length of a great circle of the circumscribing sphere.

133. Assume the diameters of the earth and moon to be 8,000 and 2,000 miles respectively. What is the ratio of the volumes.

134. A triangle on a 12 inch globe has angles of 140°, 119°, and 196°. Compute the area.

135. The angles of a pentagonal spherical pyramid are 147°, 96°, 120°, 142°, and 87°, and the diameter of the sphere is 20 inches. Find the area of the base and the volume of the pyramid.

136. Prove that the volume of a portion of a sphere included by the planes of two great circles and the intercepted lune is to the volume of the sphere as the angle of the lune is to 4 right angles. Such a solid is a *wedge* or *ungula*. The lune is its *base*.

137. A cone of revolution and a sphere are inscribed in a cylinder of revolution. Compare the volumes of the three solids.

138. If the area of the convex surface of a right circular cone is twice the area of its base, prove that the slant height of the cone is equal to the diameter of the base.

139. If the specific gravity of an iron ball 10 inches in diameter is 8.1, what is its weight?

140. An iron kettle in the shape of a hemisphere has a diameter of $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet. How many gallons does it hold when full?

141. How many gallons (Ex. 140) when filled to the depth of 10 inches?

142. Two balls are of the same material. One, weighing 12 pounds, has a diameter equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ that of the other. What is the weight of the second ball?

143. Determine the locus of a point which is

(*a*) at a given distance from a fixed point.

(*b*) At given distances from two fixed points.

(*c*) Equally distant from two parallel planes and at a fixed distance from a given point.

(*d*) Equally distant from two points and at a given distance from a third point.

144. Make up exercises involving loci which are the intersections of other loci.

145. Find the center of a sphere with a given radius, such that

(*a*) Its surface passes through three given points.

(*b*) It is tangent to a given plane and its surface passes through two given points.

(*c*) It is tangent to two given planes and its surface passes through a given point.

(*d*) It is tangent to three given planes.

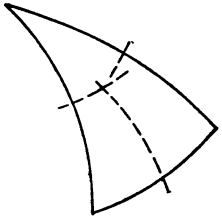
(*e*) It is tangent to a given sphere, to a given plane, and its surface passes through a given point.

(*f*) It is tangent to a given line, a given plane, and a given sphere.

(*g*) Make other exercises in this group.

146. Find the pole of a circle determined by three points on the surface of a sphere.

SUG. It can be done in a manner similar to that by which the center of a circle is determined by three points in a plane.



147. The diameter of a sphere is equal to the altitude of a cone of revolution and of a cylinder of revolution, the radii of the three solids being the same. Prove that the volumes of the cone, sphere, and cylinder are proportional to 1, 2, 3 respectively.

148. An orange, $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter, pulp measure, sells at 50 cents a dozen. One 3 inch in diameter sells at 40 cents. Which is the better one to buy if the quality is the same? If the larger orange is worth 50 cents, what is the smaller one worth?

149. If a 3 inch orange sells for 36 cents, what is the real value of a 4 inch orange of same quality?

REVIEW.

793. State the formula for:

1. The volume of a cone of revolution.
2. The volume of a cylinder of revolution.
3. The volume of a frustum of a cone of revolution.
4. The lateral area of the above three solids.
5. The area of a sphere.
6. The area of a spherical triangle.
7. The area of a spherical polygon of n sides.
8. The volume of a sphere.
9. The area of a zone.
10. The volume of a spherical sector.
11. The volume of a spherical segment.
12. The volume of a spherical pyramid.
13. The volume of an ungula.

INDEX

	Page
Abbreviations	22-23
Addition in proportion	139
Alternate exterior angles	51
Alternate interior angles	51
Alternation	138
Altitude of cone	410
" of cylinder	399
" of frustum of cone	411
" of frustum of pyramid	375
" of parallelogram	73
" of prism	350
" of pyramid	374
" of spherical segment	463
" or trapezoid	73
" of triangle	65
" of zone	463
Angle	13
" acute	16
" at center of regular polygon	251
" at center of circle	102
" cosine of	163
" dihedial	321
" exterior	57
" horizontal	164
" inscribed in circle	118
" inscribed in segment of circle	118
" oblique	16
" obtuse	16
" of depression	164
" of elevation	164
" of line with plane	334
" of lune	455
" of two arcs	438
" opposite interior	57
" polyhedral	336
" reflex	16
" right	15
" sides of	13
" sine of	162
" spherical	438
" straight	15
" tangent of	163
Angle tetrahedral	336
" trihedral	336
" turning a line through	13
" vertex	30
" vertex of	13
" vertical	164
Angles, addition of	14
" adjacent	14
" alternate exterior	51
" alternate interior	51
" conjugate	17
" complementary	16
" equal	13
" exterior with transversal	51
" homologous	148-391
" interior with transversal	51
" oblique	16
" subtraction of	13
" supplementary	16
" vertical	19, 164
Antecedents	136
Apothem	251
Arc	12, 101
" degree of	169
" major	101
" minor	101
Archimedes	271
Area of surface	221
Axiom	20
Axioms, list of	21
Axis of circle of sphere	428
" of circular cone	410
" of circular cylinder	399
Base of cone	410
" of isosceles triangle	30
" of pyramid	374
" of spherical pyramid	470
" of spherical sector	464
Bases of cylinder	399
" of frustum of cone	411
" of frustum of pyramid	375
" of parallelogram	73

Page

Bases of prism 350
" of spherical segment.463
" of trapezoid 73
" of zone 463
Bisector 20
" perpendicular 38
Bodies, the three round....399
Center of circle 12, 101
" of regular polygon ...251
" of sphere 425
Central angle of circle.....102
" of polygon 251
Chord 101
Circle 12, 101
" arc of 12, 101
" center of 12, 101
" chord of 101
" circumference of.....101
" circumscribed 118
" diameter of.....101
" great, of sphere.....427
" inscribed 118
" length of 101
" radius of 12, 101
" sector of 118
" segment of 118
" semicircle 101
" small, of sphere.....427
Circles, tangent 114
Circumference 101
Commensurable 133
Complements 16
Composition 139
" and division 140
Conclusion 40
Concurrent lines 94
Conjugate angles 17
Cone 410
" altitude of 410
" axis of 410
" base of 410
" circular 410
" circular, axis of 410
" circumscribed about pyramid 415
" element of 410
" frustum of 411

Page

Cone inscribed in pyramid..415
" lateral surface of 410
" oblique 411
" of revolution 411
" right 410
" slant height 411
" tangent to 411
" truncated 411
" vertex of.....410
Cones similar 411
Congruent figures 30
Conical surface 410
" closed 410
" directrix of 410
" element of 410
" generatrix of 410
" nappes of 410
" vertex of 410
Consequents 136
Constant 276
Continued proportion 146
Continuity, principle of....177
Converse of a theorem.... 55
Corollary 20
Cosine of angle 163
Cube 357
Cylinder 399
" altitude of 399
" base of 399
" circular 399
" circular, axis of 399
" circumscribed about prism 404
" element of 399
" inscribed in prism....404
" lateral surface of 399
" oblique 400
" of revolution 400
" right 400
" right section of.....399
" tangents to 400
Cylinders of revolution, similar 400
cylindrical surface 399
" closed 399
" directrix of 399
" element of 399

Page

Cylindrical surface generatrix of.....399
Decagon 256
Degree, angular 15
" of arc 169
" spherical 456, 459
Demonstration 40
Depression, angle of 164
Diagonal of polygon 73
" of polyhedron 73
" of quadrilateral 73
Diameter of circle 101
" of parallelogram 73
" of sphere 425
" of trapezoid 73
Dihedral angle 321
" edge of 321
" faces of 321
" measure of 325
" plane angle of 321
" right 325
Dihedral angles, acute 325
" adjacent 325
" equal 322
" obtuse 325
" vertical 325
Dimensions 223, 364
Directrix of conical surface.410
" of cylindrical surface.399
Distance between two parallel lines 74
" between two parallel planes 316
" between two points... 38
" from point to line.... 65
" from point to plane...298
" on surface of sphere..429
" polar, of great circle..430
" polar, of small circle.430
Division 140
Dodecahedron 349
Element of conical surface..410
" of cylindrical surface.399
Elevation, angle of 164
Equal figures 30
Equilateral triangle 29
Excess, spherical 455

Page

Exterior angle 57
" of transversal 51
" of triangle 57
External division 143
External tangent 210
Extreme and mean ratio..189
Extremes 136
Faces of dihedral angle....321
" of polyhedral angle ..349
" of polyhedron 349
Figure, geometrical 10
" plane 12
" rectilinear 12
Fourth proportional 141
Frustum of cone 411
" altitude of.....411
" bases of 411
" slant height of 411
Frustum of Pyramid 375
" altitude of 375
" bases of 375
" slant height of 375
Generatrix of conical surface 410
" of cylindrical surface.399
Geometric figures 10
" solid 9
Geometry plane 13
" solid 289
Harmonic division 145
Heptagon 84
Hexagon 84
Hexahedron 349
Homologous angles ..148, 391
" faces 391
" lines 391
" sides 148, 391
Hypotenuse 46
Hypothesis 40
Incommensurable 134
" magnitudes 134, 275
" numbers 275
" ratio 134, 275
Icosahedron 349
Inscribed angle, in circle...118
" angle, in segment.....118

Page

Interior angles of transversal 51
Internal division 143
Internal tangent 210
Intersection of planes.....290
Inversion 139
Isosceles triangle 29
" base of 30
Limit 277
Limits, theorem of 278
Line 9
" broken 12
" curved 12
" divided externally ...143
" divided harmonically..145
" divided in extreme and mean ratio 189
" divided internally 143
" foot of 294
" oblique to plane 294
" parallel to plane 311
" perpendicular to plane.294
" sect of 11
" segment of 11
" straight 10
Lines, concurrent 94
" oblique 20
" perpendicular 20
" parallel 49
Locus 88, 89, 302
Lune 455
" angle of 455
Major arc of circle 101
Magnitude 131
Magnitudes 10, 131
" commensurable 133
" incommensurable 134
Mean and extreme ratio...189
" proportion 184
" proportional 184
Means 136
Measure, to 131
" numerical 131
Measurement 221
Median of triangle 56, 65
Minor arc of circle 101
Minute 15

Page

Nappes of conical surface..410
Negative quantities 143
N-gon 84
Numerical measure.....131
Oblique angles 16
" lines 20
Obtuse triangle 30
Octagon 84
Octahedron 349
Opposite interior angles.... 57
Parallel lines 49
" planes 311
Parallelogram 72
" altitude of 73
" bases of 73
" diameter of 73
Parallelograms classified .. 72
Parallelopiped 357
" dimensions of.....364
" rectangular 357
" right 357
Pentagon 84
Perigon 14
Perimeter of triangle 29
Perpendicular bisector 38
" lines 20
" planes 325
Physical solid..... 9
Pi π 270-271
Plane 12
" embraces line 289
" figure 12
" determined 290
Planes, parallel 311
" perpendicular 325
Polar distance of circle 430
" of triangle 443
" triangles 445
Pole 428
Polygon 12
" angle at center of regular 251
" apothem of regular ..251
" center of regular.....251
" circumscribed 118
" concave 84
" convex 84

Page

Polygon diagonal of 73
" equiangular 84
" equilateral 84
" inscribed 118
" radius of regular.....251
" regular 84, 249
" spherical 441
Polygons classified 84
" mutually equiangular. 84
" mutually equilateral.. 84
" similar 148
Polyhedral angle 336
" convex 336
" edges of 336
" face angles of.....336
" faces of 336
" tetrahedral 336
" trihedral 336
" vertex of.....336
Polyhedral angles classified.336
" congruent 337
" symmetrical 337
" vertical 347
Polyhedrals equal 449
Polyhedron 349
" base of 349
" circumscribed 438
" convex 350
" diagonal of 349
" edges of 349
" faces of 349
" inscribed in sphere....438
" regular 395
" section of 349
" vertices of 349
" volume of 357
Polyhedrons classified 349
" similar 391
Postulate 20
Postulates 22, 49, 103
Prism 350
" altitude of 350
" bases of 350
" circumscribed about cylinder 404
" circumscribed about pyramid 381

Page

Prism inscribed in cylinder .404
" inscribed in pyramid..381
" lateral area of.....353
" lateral edges of.....350
" lateral faces of.....350
" oblique 351
" quadrangular 350
" regular 351
" right 351
" right section of.....350
" triangular 350
" truncated 355
Problem 20
Proof 20, 40
Projection of line on plane.307
" of point on line.....196
" of point on plane.....307
" of sect on line.....196
Proportion 134
" mean 184
" terms of 134
Proportional, fourth 141
" mean 184
" third 184
Proposition 20
Pyramid 374
" altitude of 374
" basal edges of.....374
" base of 374
" circumscribed about cone 415
" frustum of 375
" inscribed in cone.....415
" lateral edges of 374
" lateral faces of.....374
" pentagonal 374
" quadrangular 374
" regular 374
" right 380
" slant height of regular.374
" spherical 470
" triangular 374
" truncated 375
" vertex of.....374
Pyramids classified 374
Pythagoras 239
Quadrilateral 72

Page

Quadrilaterals classified ... 72
Quantity 131
Radius of circle 101
" regular polygon 251
" of sphere.....425
Ratio 132
" extreme and mean...189
" of similitude 148
Ray 11
Rectangle 72
Rectilinear figures 12
Regular polygon 249
Rhomboid 72
Rhombus 72
Right section of cylinder ..399
" of prism 350
" triangle 29
Scalene triangle 29
Secant line 51, 102
Second 15
Sect 11
Sector of circle 118
" of sphere 464
Segment of circle 118
" of line 11
Segments added 11
" equal 11
" subtracted 11
Semicircle 101
Similar cones of revolution.411
" cylinders of revolution.400
" polygons 148
" polyhedrons 391
Similitude, ratio of.....148
Sine of angle 162
Slant height of cone 411
" of frustum of cone...411
" of frustum of pyramid.375
" of regular pyramid...374
Solid 9
Solid, geometric 9
" geometry 289
" physical 9
Sphere 425
" axis of circle of 428
" center of 425

Page

Sphere circumscribed about polyhedron 438
" diameter of 425
" distance on 429
" great circle of 427
" inscribed in polyhedron 438
" poles of circle of.....428
" radius of.....425
" small circle of 427
" surface of.....425
" tangent to 425
Spherical angle 438
" degree 456
" excess of triangle 455
" excess of polygon....461
Spherical polygon 441
" angles of 441
" concave 442
" convex 442
" diagonal of.....441
" sides of 441
" vertices of 441
Spherical polygons classified.442
" opposite 443
" vertical 443
Spherical pyramid 470
" base of 470
" vertex of.....470
Spherical sector 464
" base of.....464
Spherical segment 463
" altitude of 463
" bases of 463
Spherical triangle 442
" tri-rectangular 445
Spherical triangles symmetrical 442
Square 72
Straight angle 15
" line 10
Subtends 102
Subtraction 140
Supplement of angle 16
Surface 9
" Conical 410
" cylindrical 399

	Page
Surface measurement of	221
" plane	12
" unit of	221
Symbols	22-23
Tangent of angle	163
" circles	114
" external	210
" internal	210
" line to circle	114
" line to cone	411
" line to cylinder	400
" line to sphere	425
" plane to cone	411
" plane to cylinder	400
" plane to sphere	425
" spheres	425
Terms of proportion	134
Tetrahedral angle	336
Tetrahedron	349
Theorem	20
Theory of limits	278
Third proportional	184
Transversal	51
Trapezium	72
Trapezoid	72
" altitude of	73
" bases of	73
" diameter of	73
" isosceles	72
Triangle	29
" acute	30
" altitudes of	65
" angles of	29
" base of	30
" classifications of	29-30
" equiangular	30
" equilateral	29
Triangle isosceles	29
" medians of	65
" obtuse	30
" perimeter of	29
" polar of	443
" right	30
" scalene	29
" sides of	29
" spherical	442
" vertex angle of	30
" vertex of	30
Trigonometric relations	161
Trihedral angle	336
" isosceles	336
" trirectangular	336
Truncated prism	355
Truncated pyramid	375
Unit of measure	131
" of angle	15
" of arc	169
" of spherical surface	456, 459
" of surface	221
" of volume	357
Variable	277
" limit of	277
Vertical angles	19
Vertex of angle	13
" of cone	410
" of polyhedral angle	336
" of pyramid	374
" of spherical pyramid	470
" of triangle	30
Zone	463
" altitude of	463
" bases of	463